



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>









# DAR                  IENT

AND

## HOW STANLEY FOUND EMIN PASHA.

LETE HISTORY OF ALL THE GREAT EXPLORATIONS AND  
DISCOVERIES IN AFRICA, FROM THE EARLIEST  
AGES TO THE PRESENT TIME.

INCLUDING A FULL, AUTHENTIC AND THRILLING ACCOUNT OF

## STANLEY'S FAMOUS RELIEF OF EMIN PASHA.

REplete with astounding incidents, wonderful adventures,  
mysterious providences, grand achievements, and glorious  
deeds, as represented in the devoted lives and splendid  
careers of such brilliant characters as

**HENRY M. STANLEY, EMIN PASHA, GEN. (CHINESE) GORDON,**

**And all the other Great Travellers, Hunters and Explorers, who, for More Than One Thousand Years, have made Africa a Land of Wonders by their Heroism and Unparalleled Daring.**

**COVERING THE WHOLE HISTORY OF AFRICAN EXPLORATION AND DISCOVERY.**

*ENLIVENED WITH STORIES OF MARVELLOUS HUNTS AND WONDERFUL  
ADVENTURES AMONG WILD ANIMALS, FEROCIOUS REPTILES,  
AND CURIOUS AND SAVAGE RACES OF PEOPLE  
WHO INHABIT THE DARK CONTINENT.*

BY J. W. BUEL,

THE FAMOUS AUTHOR OF

"The Beautiful Story," "The Living World," "The Story of Man," "Sea and Land," "The World's Wonders,"  
"Exile Life in Siberia." Etc.

**Illustrated with 500 of the Grandest, Most Beautiful and Wonderful Engravings**

AND

**MAGNIFICENT COLORED PLATES.**

**PUBLISHED AND MANUFACTURED BY**

**HISTORICAL PUBLISHING COMPANY.**

PHILADELPHIA, PA. ST. LOUIS, MO.

~~Al-105.89~~  
✓ 1.PG 602

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
GIFT OF  
EDWIN R. FAIRCHILD  
JULY 12, 1924

✓

COPYRIGHT, 1889, BY H. S. SMITH.  
(ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.)

**\*\* The illustrations in this work being from original drawings, and protected by copyright, their reproduction in any form is unlawful, and notice is hereby given that persons guilty of infringing the copyright thereof will be prosecuted.**

RELIGION and science, mystery and fact, ambition and disappointment, grandeur and ruin—all the antitheses of human aspiration and realization—find remarkable example in the history of that wondrous country surnamed the DARK CONTINENT. Mystery has, for centuries, hung above it like a gruesome pall, the wild riot of a boundless superstition has hovered over its strange people until the world has whispered the very name with a feeling of dread and given it that regard which attaches only to ghostly and ghastly things of imperious fancy. But dark as has been the mantle of dread which enveloped during the long centuries, Africa has at last been revealed, through the light of bold exploration, and now meets our scrutiny with the interest of a newly discovered world.

The restless and insatiable ambition of the adventurous, the longing of the scientist, the greed of the avaricious, the mercy of the philanthropist, have at length triumphed over the obstacles which nature and the evil and retarding of superstition so long opposed to successful invasion, and behold, a panorama of a practically new continent with all its secrets disclosed! absorbing popular interest in African exploration, which has been at abeyance for fifty years, and which finds emphasis in Stanley's return from his last and most perilous expedition, stimulates afresh a demand for a more complete knowledge of that great natural division of our globe. This desire springs, not from recent events—these serving rather as a culmination of public curiosity—the creation of a new interest—for during the past century a hundred times has the name of Africa transpired to focus international consideration of the DARK CON-

The wonderful labors of Livingstone quickened missionary enterprise, and led to the establishment of stations all over the country; prosperity of the Dutch and English settlements in South Africa, followed by a development of gold and diamond mines, gave fresh impetus to immigration into that region; the Sultan of Zanzibar, by assuming sovereignty over a large portion of the east coast, and encouraging trade with tribes of the interior, has been the prime means of opening a highway to the great lakes. But more than these have been the civilizing effects following Stanley's first journey across the Continent; for by this successful expedition was determined the navigableness of the Congo river and the inconceivably rich region that it drained, as well as the valuable products of the native woods and mines. By these discoveries an incentive for opening trade with the interior was created, nations became competitors for the fruits of this newly opened field, and enterprise in all its phases at once entered the list for commercial gain. In consequence of this friendly rivalry, lines of steamers were placed in service on the Congo, railroad lines projected, and to intensify the ambitious spirit of those attacking the barbarous regions of West Africa, the German Government has entered the eastern districts with equal activity and laid the survey of a railway line from Mombossa to the central lakes.

Another promoting cause, almost equal to the preceding, is to be found in military events that have made the Soudan a centre of marked interest for the past twenty years. When slavery ceased to exist as an institution in America when the serfs were manumitted in Russia, and a scheme for liberation of the slaves in Brazil was approved and adopted by that government, all the civilized world had come to an appreciation of the wrongs and evils of human bondage. The last precedent and example was removed, and there was now a universal sympathy among civilized nations in favor of destroying slavery in every part of the world. In Africa alone the horrors of kidnapping prevailed, and in no countries except Egypt, Arabia and Turkey, was, and is, human bondage encouraged or tolerated. The pressure of a foreign demand for its suppression forced Egypt to at least assume the mask of hostility to slavery and this pretence has had the one most beneficial effect of concentrating international interest, looking towards the destruction of this great human curse. It is from this pretence, assuming aggressive activity through efficient Christian leaders, that the story of Chinese Gordon and Emin Pasha, representing as they did a lukewarm government, becomes so thrillingly interesting. The tradi-

fate of Gordon, and the unspeakable perils, sufferings and heroic sacrifices of Emin, have re-enforced the world's horror at the frightful abuse of Turkish and Arabic power in the Soudan, in which the savagery of the semi-civilized exceeds immeasurably that of the lowest barbarians. This depravity, that is working such inconceivable cruelty, in the torture and enslavement of millions, and the destruction by lash, sword and knife, and the impoverishment of millions of others, has nerved the arm of European nations to bring a swift punishment upon the despoilers of the poor Africans. When armies from the north shall be sent as a retribution, to wreak vengeance upon the kidnappers and slave traders in Egypt and the Equatorial Provinces, columns of emigrants will bring up the rear, and a wave of civilization will thus overspread that now miserable country, to its everlasting glory.

These several mighty influences, operating conjunctively, or to one general end, and the necessity for an outlet that will relieve the congested populations of Europe and China, serve to concentrate public attention upon Africa. Recognizing this pregnant fact, and comprehending the situation of present effort towards the reclamation of the DARK CONTINENT, I have given my abilities herein towards furnishing such a history of Africa as will satisfy not only those who find pleasure in reading the thrilling exploits of great explorers, but also those who desire reliable information respecting the climatic and physical features of the continent, and its soil, products, advantages for agriculture, mining and manufacture. To enlarge the interest which now centres chiefly around Stanley and Emin Pasha, I have undertaken also to give the evidences upon which rest a belief that Africa was, in a prehistoric period, a continent of civilization and human culture, and have introduced such accounts as are recoverable from the musty past, of the powerful and inconceivably rich kingdoms into which the country was once divided, and of which relics are still observable in ruins, manners, traditions, inscriptions, and excavations that reveal abandoned mines, besides allusions made by ancient poets, philosophers and geographers, who at least intimate a knowledge of the interior regions of the country.

Following a history of ancient Africa, I have sought to present a summary of the principal expeditions and individual explorers that have entered the continent during the past two hundred years, together with results of their labors. By so doing I have been able to follow the advancing lines of conquest and reclamation, in settlements along the coast and a gradual extension towards

the mid-interior. Not alone this, but the record of discovery in Africa is made complete, its rivers, lakes, mountains, plains and valleys; its tribes, their superstitions, customs and savagery; its animals, reptiles, great birds and monstrosities; its products of gold, ivory, fine woods, and singular samples of ingenious workmanship of the natives; its grains, grasses and domestic herds.

All the facts which I have herein introduced are made to serve as preliminary to the culmination of that great and successful effort which this book is intended no less to describe than to celebrate. The information here given is necessary to a complete understanding of the objects of Emin Pasha's services in Equatorial Africa and the causes which prompted the dispatch of Stanley's expedition to his relief. It also enables the reader to comprehend the perils that attend travel in that country, and also its pleasures, for excursions therein are not entirely without days of rare delight and intense enjoyment, especially to those of adventurous dispositions.

While the geography of Africa is not yet thoroughly known, and there remain several extensive regions in which explorers have not entered, still, no future expedition, unless of a military nature, is likely to excite such popular interest as that from which Stanley and Emin returned in December, 1889. With the subsidence of that applause which hails a victor, more serious matters are likely to engage the European Powers in their relations to Africa, and an army will most likely compose coming expeditions, that will invade the country, not for discovery, but for conquest, and a redemption of the slave-cursed continent to the beneficent purposes of civilization.

A handwritten signature in dark ink, reading "J. M. Buell". The signature is written in a cursive style with a large, flowing initial "J" and "M".









## CHAPTER I.

**Africa of the Ancients**—Her former magnificence—The cradle of civilization—Ruins of great cities on the Nile—The skeleton of greatness—The ancient kingdom of Sofala—Wonderful remains—A writing that no living person can decipher—Evidences of a vanquished race—The mysterious Prester John—From whence came Solomon's riches?—The country of Ophir located—The surprising land of gold ivory, peacocks and almag trees—A history of the Ophir mines—Enormous number of elephants, . . .

PAGE

23-42

## CHAPTER II.

**A History of Africa**—Why the country has been so long neglected—Whence is derived the name *Africa*—References by ancient poets—Strange beliefs respecting Africa—Astounding legends—A tribe born with a single leg, whose progress is by hopping—Feet that serve as a sun-shade—Headless men—A paradise—Expeditions of discovery—Excursions of the Phoenicians—Crucified for failing to circumnavigate the continent—First expedition to the deserts—In the land of dwarfs—Portuguese conquests on the coast—Finding the route to India—Da Gama's discoveries—Was Africa well known to the ancients?—Maps of Africa many hundred years old—A land of rivers—John Ogilby's map—All the lakes, rivers, towns and provinces well known hundreds of years ago—The source of the Nile long ago known—An ancient map compared with the latest—The wonderful city of Timbuctoo—Rivers of the Sahara Desert—Murder of Colonel Platters, . . .

45-56

## CHAPTER III.

**Arabian Discoveries in Central Africa**—Rise of Mohammedanism—War of Dynasties—Compelled to flee to the desert—Origin of the *Fellahs*—A golden throne—Slaughter of defenceless natives—The ancient kingdom of Bornu—Splendor of Timbuctoo—Efforts to penetrate Africa from the west—Prince Agave—Mystery of his person—Discovery of a Christian empire—Covilham in Abyssinia—Conquest of Timbuctoo—Murder of Captain Thompson—Seized by a crocodile—Stebb's ascent of the Niger—The French in Africa—Establishment of the first coast settlements—Mungo Park's travels—Commits suicide—Discovery of the Niger's course—A cruel scene—Drinking poison—Lander's discoveries—His death from an arrow wound—Davidson's expedition—Murdered by Arabs—Richardson's expedition—His death—Barth's explorations—Death of Overweg—Relief expeditions—Execution of Vogel—Wreck of the *Medusa*—A tale of horrible suffering—Cannibalism—Riot, murder and suicide—Ten saved out of 150—The story of a raft, . . .

57-77

## CONTENTS.

### CHAPTER IV.

**Africa**—Marco Polo's travels on the east coast—Columbus' reliance in  
ing Christians—A wonderful land—Astounding stories about animal life in  
uncies—Hanno's tales—Chariot of the gods—Witchcrafts of the Africans  
hants—A wonderful boar—Hideous men—Cats with human faces—The  
and dwarfs—Astounding stories—Gorillas—African Amazons—The won-  
are not permitted, . . . . . 76-90

### CHAPTER V.

**Africa**—Travels of M. le Vaillant—Lichtenstein's discoveries—The first  
plorations in South Africa—Advent of the hunters—Wild sports—Harris,  
Andersson's discoveries—Bain's and Chapman's expedition—TRAVELS OF  
as a missionary—Joins Oswell and Murray—Discovery of Lake N'gami—  
Discovery of the Zambesi River—Converting the natives and founding  
erful Victoria Falls—Arrival at Mauritius. . . . . 91-100

### CHAPTER VI.

**nd Death**—Arrival at Quilimane—Discovery of Nyassa Lake—Cruelty of  
g the Zambesi—Elephants, hippopotami and alligators—Fate of the  
Mrs. Livingstone—Exploration of Lake Nyassa—Return to Quilimane—  
r's THIRD EXPEDITION—A search for the Nile's source—The horrors of  
'anganyika Lake—Casembe's kingdom—Chopping off the hands of his  
Bangweolo—At Ujiji—Arabs murdering the natives—A long journey—  
th Stanley—Travels with Stanley—The parting—Renews his explorations  
Livingstone, . . . . . 101-117

### CHAPTER VII.

**lens**—Travels of James Bruce—His discoveries of ancient kingdoms—His  
e—Expedition of Werne—Burton's East Africa—His fitness for African  
lecca—Off for the African lakes—In contact with a wizard—The murder  
and more dreaded superstitions—Discovery of Tanganyika Lake—Visit  
iores—Water antelopes—A wonderful island—Tanganyika Lake known  
tact with cannibals—The Rusizi River—Speke's discovery of the Nile's  
The value of Burton's discoveries—His observations on the slave trade, . . . 118-135

### CHAPTER VIII.

—Assisted by the Royal Geographical Society—Joined by Captain Grant—  
Capture of a Spanish slaver—The journey from Zanzibar begun—A rhino-  
—Tossed by a buffalo—Thrilling adventure—Between two fires—Meeting  
o King Rumanika—The fatted wives of the king—A grandly successful  
eros' thrust—Shooting three rhinoceri—The court of M'tesa—Horrible  
nd how it was kept replenished—Entertained by the king—Espousal of  
sacrificing a child—On the shores of Victoria Lake—Trouble with the  
—Execution of four women—Beliefs respecting the whites—Exasperating  
floating down the Kafue River—The Wanyoro people—False report of a  
a party of slave hunters—Arrival at Gondokoro—Return to England—  
. . . . . 136-153

### CHAPTER IX.

**Source**—Preparation for his journey—Accompanied by his wife—Pushing  
of John Schmidt—Adventure with a hippopotamus—Tribes living along  
the slave traders—A mutiny—Meeting between Baker, Speke and Grant

—A second mutiny—An elephant hunt—Exciting sport—Narrow escape from a wounded bull—More hunting—Charged by a wild boar—A devilish guard—Discovery of the Albert N'yanza—Return to England—Awarded the Victoria medal, . . . . . 159-164

CHAPTER X.

**Baker's Efforts to Suppress the Slave Trade**—In service to the Khedive—The appointment of the expedition—A fleet of boats—The trip to Gondokoro—Man seized by a crocodile—Attacked by a hippopotamus—Shooting game and liberating slaves—Building a town—The Shillook tribe—Hippopotamus kills a sheik—Capture of a slaver vessel—A fight with the Baris—Terrible adventure with a crocodile—A sailor's arm bitten off by a crocodile—Shooting elephants across the river—Off for the Albert N'yanza—Provoking difficulties—A lively dance of naked Venuses—Effects of music on the natives—Desolating effects of war—News from Kabba Rega and M'tesa—Hunting antelopes—A visit from Kabba Rega—Uncle Rionga—Roasting people over slow fires—Ceremonies over the body of a dead king—Breaking the bones and burying victims alive—The value of female slaves—Blessed is the father who has many girls—Baker's men poisoned—Treachery of Kabba Rega—Baker attacked—Cutting his way through to Foweira—An awful march—Meeting with Rionga—Ceremony of blood brotherhood—The Makkarika cannibals—March to Fatiko—Atrocities of the cannibals—Defeat of Abou Saoud—A grand hunt for noble game—Thrilling scene—The prairie on fire—Flight of royal game—Exciting adventure with a lioness—End of the expedition, and its results, . . . . . 168-198

CHAPTER XI.

**Henry M. Stanley**—His search for Livingstone—A sketch of his life—An inmate of a poor-house—His fortune in America—The English war with King Theodore—Murder of Consul Plowden—Storming of Magdala—Suicide of the king—Stanley's services in the East—Outfitting an Expedition at Zanzibar—Departure for Central Africa—Haunts of hippopotami—A hard march—Wading turbid streams—Jungles, slaves and African belles—Tidings of Livingstone—A walled and castellated city—The Sultana of Simbamwenni—The Sultana's revenge—A terrible swamp—Effects of drunkenness—An imposing entrance into Ugogo—Application of the whip—A moment of dread—Sunshine after the storm—Arrival at Unyanyembe—A whiff of ammonia by an untutored chief—A land abounding with game—Leopard attacks a donkey—A savage boar and ravenous crocodile—Arrival at Ujiji—Meeting with Livingstone—A champagne dinner—Challenged by an elephant—Parting between Livingstone and Stanley—Home again and honored by the Queen of England, . . . . . 199-226

CHAPTER XII.

**Burial of Livingstone, and Stanley's Second Expedition**—Joint enterprise of the *Herald* and London *Telegraph*—Equipment of the expedition—Search for the Nile's source—Circumnavigating Victoria Lake—A procession of hippopotami and crocodiles—The enchanted cave—Look out for an attack!—The fight!—A messenger from King M'tesa—An imposing reception—Spectacle of the king's troops—The savagery of M'tesa—Effects of Moalem teachings—A sham battle, in which several are killed—A bloody fight with natives—Killing five men at four shots—Attacked by hippopotami—An hour of triumph—A seance with King Lukongeh—Wonderful superstitions—Another battle—Return to M'tesa's capital—War declared—Movement of M'tesa's great army—A wondrous spectacle—A naval battle—The wizards of war—Defeat of M'tesa's navy—Stanley's dreadful war-boat—End of the war—Stanley leaves M'tesa's kingdom—Return to Ujiji—Among the cannibals—Dwarfs and boa-constrictors—Engagement of Tipo Tib—Direful predictions—The strange people of Uregga—Sounding the Lualaba River—A village of skulls—Horrible evidences of cannibalism—Dangers line the way—Capture of a dwarf—Parting with Tipo Tib—In the toils of a boa-constrictor—Drowning of Kalulu and Frank Pocock—Shooting cataracts—A starving expedition—Arrival at Embomma—Return to England—**STANLEY'S THIRD EXPEDITION**—Up the Congo—In conflict with M. De Brazza—Surmounting enormous difficulties—M. De Brazza's treaty with the tribes—Establishment of the Congo Free State—Results of Stanley's Congo expedition, . . . . . 227-273

## CHAPTER XIII.

**Chinese Gordon**—Life Sketch of a remarkable man—From a family of warriors—His services in the Crimea—A visit to the Far East—The war in China—A great Chinese prophet—The Taiping rebellion—The Heavenly King—Two American adventurers—Ever-victorious army—The attack on Shanghai—Death of Ward—Defeat of Holland—Gordon in command of the Imperialist forces—Siege of Taitan—Horrible tortures—Investment of Soochow—A hellish night—Desertion of Chinese generals—Murder of the deserting generals—Gordon's anger—He is rewarded by the Emperor—Starvation of the peasantry—Forced to eat the dead—The storming of Kintang—Blowing up the gates—Fall of Chanchu-fu—Tragic end of the false prophet—Murder of his hundred wives—A man of inconceivable cruelty—End of the war, . . . . . 274-294

## CHAPTER XIV.

**Gordon in the Soudan**—His welcome to England—Employed by the Khedive—Suppression of the slave trade urged—Insincerity of the Khedive—Off for Central Africa—En route for Khartoum—Adventures along the Nile—Crocodiles and hippopotami—Among the Dinkas—The man-hunters of Fashoda—Arrest of a slaver—Opening a route to the lake regions—Fighting all along the line—Dethronement of Kabba Rega—Shooting hippopotami—Guarding against assault—The killing of Linant—Shooting a wizard—An insult from the Khedive—Commendation—On Lake Victoria—Stampeded by elephants—Tossed to his death, . . . . . 295-310

## CHAPTER XV.

**Gordon's Second Expedition**—Affairs in Bulgaria—Two calls for Gordon's services—Re-engagement by the Khedive—Ending a war in Abyssinia—Battles between rival rulers—Remarkable diplomacy—Off again for Khartoum—Perils en route—Killing the camel-drivers—Gordon's epigrammatic speech—His great generosity—Disbanding the Bashi-Bazouks—Services in Khartoum—Battle with the Leopards—A wondrous march—Treachery of Suleiman—A terrible storm—Rapid action, but days of torment—Gordon's tag-rags—A triangular dispute—Breaking up a thieves' den—The horrors of slavery—Human misery in its extremity—Playing it smart on an ambitious young slave dealer—Called to Cairo—Gordon refuses to become a corrupt tool for the Khedive—Back again to Khartoum—Execution of Suleiman—Resignation of Gordon—Gessi rewarded, . . . . . 311-325

## CHAPTER XVI.

**Gordon's Last Expedition**—Gordon the hero—He longs for rest—A visit to China—His services in preventing war between China and Russia—Return to England—Invited to the Belgian Court—Meeting with Stanley—At the tomb of his great lieutenant—Sent to subdue the Boers of South Africa—A visit to the Holy Land—Gordon's researches in and about Jerusalem—Governor-General of the Soudan—The false prophet—His insurrection in the Soudan—His claims to Messianic power and purpose—Descriptions of the Mahdi—His spiritual leaders—Fanatic zeal of his followers—Battles with the dervishes—The fall of El Obeid—Charging the Remingtons—Annihilation of Hicks's army—The last message—England aroused—Gordon sent to relieve Khartoum—Negotiations with the Mahdi—Horrible scenes of oppression—Gordon hailed as a saviour—The cry for help—The Mahdi again in the saddle—Gordon in peril—His coolness and sagacity—Defeated at Heliyyeh—Treachery of his officers—Two of them shot—The siege of Khartoum—A desperate defence—Trying to save his people—The spirit of insubordination—Gordon's tragic death—Abandoned by his government—An o'er sad tale, . . . . . 326-350

## CHAPTER XVII.

**Labors of Emin Pasha**—Life of an enigmatic man—His professional career—Not mentioned in Gordon's writings—Emin joins Gordon in the Soudan—His eminent services—On a dangerous mission to Uganda—Success of his undertaking—Makes a treaty with Kabba Rega—Appointed Governor-General of the Equatorial Provinces—Condition of his territory—His administration—His capital at





Lado—Emin's soldier's and their duties—Native tribes of the Soudan—Why they are so hostile—Characteristics and customs of the various tribes—Agriculture and stock-raising—Farmer's pests—Hippopotami and birds—Dress of the natives—Nakedness without shame—Beautiful women of the Madi tribe—Weapons—Savage beasts—Savagery of the crocodile—Thrilling experiences—Kingdoms of Unyoro and Uganda—The Cojoor priests—Burning at the stake—Mwanga, the successor of M'tesa—Kabba Rega—The situation of Emin Pasha—Effects of the Mahdi rebellion—Cut off from civilization—Emin's appeal for help—Escape of Dr. Junker—A dreadful fire—Discovery of the Kubik River—Rebuilding of Wadelai—Stanley to the Relief of Emin—Other relief expeditions—Wissmann's journeys and explorations—Three times across the continent—Wissmann's several expeditions and discoveries—In search of Stanley—Massacre of Dr. Peters—Return of Stanley and Emin—An accident to Emin . . . . . 351-381

CHAPTER XVIII.

**Stanley's Expedition for the Relief of Emin Pasha**—Great results—England aroused—Effect of Gordon's fate—Sir Wm. McKinnon—The Relief Committee—A call for Stanley—Honors to Stanley—A magnificent testimonial—Equipment of the expedition—Stanley's automatic gun—Departure for Africa—Discussion between Stanley, Junker and Schweinfurth—A visit with Junker and Schweinfurth—Off for Zanzibar—Engagement of Tipo Tib—The trip around Cape Good Hope—Arrangements for transporting the expedition up the Congo—Why Stanley chose the Congo route—The dangers of the route to Uganda—The great war in Uganda—Mwanga's efforts to recover his throne—Christians and Arabs in conflict—Attack on Kalema's army—The Christians again victorious—Execution of native leaders—Burning his brothers, sisters and children—A defeat—Mwanga's new following—Burned at the stake—Advices of Stanley's coming—Battle of Murchison Bay—A letter from King Mwanga—Other reasons for selecting the Congo route—The procession up the Congo—Stanley's boats—Tipo Tib and his harem—His contract with Stanley—Appearance of Tipo's wives—Amours and flirtations . . . . 382-408

CHAPTER XIX.

**The Voyage up the Congo**—Wooding up—Congo Stations—Station of Lukunga—Superstitions of the natives—Ward's description of an N'Ganga N'Kissi—Witchcraft—Finding the devil—The outfit of a wizard—Drinking poison—How Ward met Stanley—Turning back to Central Africa—An interesting letter—An imposing cavalcade—Tipo Tib and his forty-two wives—A wink and a gentle stroke . . . 409-409

CHAPTER XX.

**The Trip to Bolobo**—Changes since Stanley's last visit—Arab and Zanzibarian immigration—Stanley assisted by the missionaries—Festivities of Tipo Tib's wives—How the steamers were loaded—Scenery and grandeur of the Congo—The grandest of all rivers—Country of the Ba-yanzi tribe—Musical instruments—Singular manner of dressing the hair—Adventurous incidents of the voyage—Minstrelsy and pretty women—Tipo Tib's narrow escape from a crocodile—Bolobo Station—A cluster of fifteen villages—The Ba-teke musicians—Strange superstitions—A bird of ill-omen—Ceremonies of the N'Kimba tribe—A kind of Free-Masonry—Circumcision—A grand cavalcade—Stanley Falls—Tipo Tib's raids—Why Stanley contracted with Tipo Tib—Tipo's treachery . . . . . 410-428

CHAPTER XXI.

**The Entrenched Camp at Yambuya**—Stanley divides his command—Leads the advance on the march to relieve Emin—Sad reflections—The parting—Bartelot and the rear column—The country about Yambuya—Game of the region—A hunt—In pursuit of a rhinoceros—The rhinoceros in pursuit of the hunters—Adventure with a buffalo—A cow shot and a bull wounded—A dash at the stricken game—Bartelot tossed on the horns of a buffalo—His injuries very serious—Borne back to camp on a litter—An elephant bagged—Bonny's nerve—A king of the forest falls before his aim—A mad rush for elephant meat . . . . . 426-435

## CHAPTER XXII.

**Affairs Grew Desperate at Yambuya Camp**—The wearying longing of an endless waiting—treachery—A slaughter of the natives—Horrible atrocities of the Arab raiders—Pickling—Punishment of insubordinates—Retribution on the raiders—Eating their enemies—Ward to the coast—Singular fatality—Cannibalism on the Congo—A visit to a cannibal camp—of bodies are prepared and eaten—Disgusting sights—Pitiable sights in camp—Slow threats against Barttelot's life—Fears for Stanley's safety—Efforts to hire carriers—Barttelot to go in search of Stanley—A mutiny in camp—Assassination of Barttelot—Abandonment of Yambuya camp—Death of Jameson—Bonny left in command—Removal of the camp to

## CHAPTER XXIII.

**News from Stanley and Emin**—A letter from Casati—He tells of the indignities put upon him—An order for Casati's execution—Rescued by Emin—Suicide of Casati's companion—Tipu of Kabba Rega—A letter from Stanley to Tipu Tib—The latter refuses to fulfil his contract—instructions to Barttelot—Two letters that were intercepted—Rehearsing the privations of the march—Fighting his way—The men starving and dropping from sickness—Hew through the forest—Bad boatmen—Stanley's letters to Barttelot—Rehearsing the perils of—A sad story of suffering and death—Slavery to the Manyema—Anxieties . . . . .

## CHAPTER XXIV.

**Stanley's Description of His Journey**—A previously untrodden way—Wonderful superstitions—Alakere dwarfs—Men with tails and four eyes—Kabba Rega's fears—Stanley's story of his first conflict with the natives—In the wilderness—More fighting—Death and desertion—march—Ravages by Arabs and elephants—Punishment of offenders—Food at last—View in promise—Gathering for a fight—Alarum of the war-drums—Work of the sharpshooters—the N'yanza—A night attack—Inhospitableness of the natives—Retreat back to Ibwin review—A letter from Emin—Jephson dispatched to join Emin—Meeting with Emin—Bodo—Sad news—Mr. Stanley's surprise and grief—A deplorable situation—Stanley receives of Barttelot's death—Important discoveries—Ruewenzori, the snowy peak—Emin Pasha's argument with Emin—Disappointments . . . . .

## CHAPTER XXV.

**Stanley's Reply to his Critics**—The venom of jealousy—Mr. Mackay, the missionary—Stanley of faith—The relief of Emin Pasha explained—True purposes of the expedition—Stanley's conditions—Stanley's cold meeting with Emin—The contract with Tipu Tib—Tipu Tib's pre-raid the Congo stations—The appointment of Barttelot—Barttelot's quick temper—Other 1 of Stanley's—Circumstances leading to Barttelot's death—Stanley's instructions to Barttelot's unreliability—Misrepresentations about cannibalism—Punishment of insubordinates—blood . . . . .

## CHAPTER XXVI.

**Adventures on the Route**—Stanley's studies of the natives—Cruel devices of the natives—Ward the feet by concealed skewers—Insects that make life on the Congo unbearable—Mists of the—Poisoned arrows—How the poison is made—Agriculture on the Congo—Exciting sport—Aruwimi—Hippopotami, monkeys and crocodiles—Mohammedans eating hippopotami flesh—dispensation—A hippopotamus adventure—Lieut. Stairs in danger—Attacked by a wounded hippopotamus—Stanley to the rescue—Among the crocodiles—The snake-eaters—How the crocodile—Crocodile traps—The Wambutti dwarfs—Some fearful stories—Appearance and customs of the dwarfs—Cannibalism—Affection exhibited by a bereaved mother—Disposition of the Dwarfs—The Quimbandes—Habits and appearance—A tribe with tails—Scared by a camera—Singular customs of the M'teita tribe—Their customs and hospitality . . . . .



# CONTENTS.

27

## CHAPTER XXVII.

**The approach to Albert Lake**—A scramble for a sardine box—Weakened by hunger—"Cheer up, boys!" A park-like country—Purpose of the Maxim gun—A big hunt—Charge of a mad buffalo—Look out for the rhinoceros!—A dash through the carriers—A dreadfully scared company—A bath in the lake—Return to the Aruwimi camp—Deplorable condition of the rear column—Small-pox and other sufferings—Relief after a long siege of starvation—A capture of Dwaris natives—Again on the brink of starvation—Calling a council—Search for the missing—Letters from Jephson—Jephson and Emin prisoners of the Mahdi—The victorious Mahdi—The situation very serious—Release of Emin, but sad forebodings—Stanley's reply to Jephson—Fascinated by the Soudan—Stanley's warnings—Arrival of Jephson—A courier from Emin . . . . . 520-539

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

**Discoveries which Excite the World's Applause**—Stanley's feeling towards Emin—Rehearsing the perils of his march—The Mayuemas and the slave traders—Wonderful discoveries—The Ruewenzori snowy range—Salt lakes—A geographical review—Correcting mistakes of the former explorers—Extent of Albert Lake—Views about Albert Lake and Mt. Ruewenzori—Mistakes of Baker—New sources of the Nile—Disappointments crowd fast on one another—Dangerous position of Jephson and Emin—Invasion of the Mahdists—Indecision of Emin—A lion hunt—Scarcity of lions in West Africa—The game located—A night station in a tree—Approach of three lions—A magnificent moonlight scene—Two lions wounded—Twenty shots required to bag the game—A savage struggle with death—Carrying a lion's head as a trophy . . . . . 540-550

## CHAPTER XXIX.

**A Great Hunt**—Shooting hippopotami on Albert Lake—An elephant hunt—A terrifying spectacle—A vast sea of grass—Flanking the herd—Stanley selects a great tusker—Retreat of the wounded elephant—The pursuit—Another shot—Furious charge of the elephant—Narrow escape of Stanley—Death of the monarch—Vast elephant herds in the Congo region—Tippo Tib's vast stores of ivory—Value of the ivory annually collected—200,000 elephants—Other rich products—Preparing to return to Zanzibar—Vigorous measures for suppressing a conspiracy—Number and kinds of people composing the returning caravan . . . . . 551-558

## CHAPTER XXX.

**The March to the Sea**—Justice to Emin—A letter from Emin—Another letter from Stanley—The lofty Ruewenzori range—A fight—A delusion—A brush with the Warasura—Scaling the mountain—A vast sea of salt—The caravan stricken with fever—A land desolated by pillage—A tradition of the Snow King—Fields of rich promise—Descriptions of the tribes—Remarkable vicissitudes . . . . . 559-568

## CHAPTER XXXI.

**End of the Journey**—The return route—Expert tree-climbers—Why they made their habitations in trees—Shooting an eagle by magic—A funny scene—A singular annual custom—The Wahuma chief and his wives—Incidents of the march—Dying on the way—An accident from exploding shells—Enraged natives—Emin Pasha's daughter—A Hebrew turned Mohammedan—News of Stanley's return—Dying in hammocks—Evil reports—A meeting between Stanley and Wissmann—The mirth that a snake produced—Jephson's wild ride—Arrival at Bagamoyo—Magnificent reception accorded the explorers—A champagne banquet—An accident to Emin Pasha—His fall from a high balcony and dangerous hurt—Honors to Stanley—Banqueted, toasted and feted by distinguished people—Honored by the Khedive—His visit to Cairo . . . . . 569-580

Peculiar African Warfare, . . . . .	PAGE 34
Beside Afric's Ruins, . . . . .	37
Market Scene in Sofala in 1895, . . . . .	39
Fort at Sofala, . . . . .	40
Gold Mining Region of Sofala, . . . . .	41
Foot Illustration, . . . . .	42
Agriculture in Africa, . . . . .	44
African Elephants, . . . . .	46
Melinde, . . . . .	47
Map of Ancient Africa (Ogilby's, 1670), . . . . .	49
Falls of the Nile, . . . . .	50
Cataract of the Nile, . . . . .	51
On the Borders of the Atlas Mountains, . . . . .	53
Assassination of Col. Flatters, . . . . .	55
Foot Illustration, . . . . .	56
A Fellah's Family, . . . . .	58
Arabs Hunting Unarmed Negroes, . . . . .	59
Crocodile Seizing the Negro Guide, . . . . .	61
Stibb's Ascent of the Niger, . . . . .	63
French Fort in Africa, . . . . .	64
Victims of Portuguese Slave Hunters, . . . . .	66
Lander's Journey down the Niger, . . . . .	67
Dr. Davidson Prescribing for the Sick, . . . . .	68
Before the King of Timbuctoo, . . . . .	70
On the Shores of Lake Tchad, . . . . .	72
Wreck of the Medusa, . . . . .	74
Tigers before their Lair, . . . . .	76
King of African Beasts, . . . . .	76
Foot Illustration, . . . . .	77
Mode of Travel in Northern Africa, . . . . .	79
Along the Banks of the Cerné, . . . . .	81
Dog-Headed Monkey of Senegal, . . . . .	82
Legendary Roc, . . . . .	84
Gorillas, . . . . .	88
A Battle with African Amazons, . . . . .	90
Caffres of South Africa, . . . . .	92
Anderson's Visit to a Bechuana Village, . . . . .	94
Facing a Stampede of Buffaloes, . . . . .	95

Dr. Livingstone, . . . . .
Makoloko, . . . . .
The Zambesi River, . . . . .
A Makoloko Village, . . . . .
Reception by a Native King, . . . . .
Discovery of Lake Nyassa, . . . . .
Livingstone at Shupanga, . . . . .
Dead Bodies of Slaves in the Shire
The Sultan of Zanzibar, . . . . .
Arabs Murdering Exhausted Slave
Reception of the Arab's Bride, . . . . .
The Slave Gang, . . . . .
Arabs Massacring Manycumas, . . . . .
The March Through Casembe's C
Livingstone Beset by Hostiles, . . . . .
Livingstone's Last March, . . . . .
Death of Livingstone, . . . . .
Styles of Head Dress, . . . . .
Bruce Among the Abyssinians, . . . . .
African Prophets, . . . . .
Burton's March into Central Africa
The Murder of M. Maizan, . . . . .
Leopard Killing one of Burton's S
Water Antelopes, . . . . .
Market Scene in Ujiji, . . . . .
Fleeing from the Flames, . . . . .
Capt. Speke and his Body-guard,
An Arab Slave Master, . . . . .
Speke and Grant's Soldiers, . . . . .
Execution of a Slaver's Crew, . . . . .
A Rhinoceros Hunt, . . . . .
A Toss into the Air, . . . . .
A Buffalo Turns Hunter, . . . . .
Nature in the Jungle, . . . . .
Speke before King Rumanika, . . . . .
A Wuhuma Village, . . . . .
M'tesa's Cruelty to his Attendants,
Grant on his Way to Uganda, . . . . .

A Levee in Uganda, . . . . .	PAGE 150	Stanley Attacked by Savage Islanders, . . . . .	PAGE 238
Speke's Boat Crew Alarmed, . . . . .	152	Along the Shores of Lake Victoria, . . . . .	239
Speke Circumnavigating Lake Victoria, . . . . .	153	Stanley's Camp at Kagehyi, . . . . .	241
The Savage Tree-dwellers of Unyoro, . . . . .	154	M'tesa's Army on the March, . . . . .	243
Speke's Last Conference with Kamrasi, . . . . .	155	M'tesa's War Canoes, . . . . .	245
Saving the Life of a Servant, . . . . .	156	A Great Naval Battle, . . . . .	246
Buffalo Hunting in the Mahdi Country, . . . . .	157	M'tesa's Warriors after the Battle, . . . . .	248
A Buffalo Killing Baker's Arms-bearer, . . . . .	160	Mirambo, the Great African Chief, . . . . .	250
A Shir Village, . . . . .	161	The Bride of the Nile, . . . . .	252
Baker Quelling the Mutiny, . . . . .	162	Village of Mwana Mambo, . . . . .	253
Disgusting Scene over an Elephant's Carcass, . . . . .	164	Leopard Hunters of Uregga, . . . . .	254
Dispatching a Vicious Boar, . . . . .	165	Encounter with a Boa Constrictor, . . . . .	256
Baker's Satanic Guard at the Feast, . . . . .	166	A Village in Uregga, . . . . .	258
Horrors of the Slave Trade, . . . . .	169	Fighting Their Way through Cannibals, . . . . .	259
Sir Samuel Baker and his Staff, . . . . .	171	Street in a Cannibal Village, . . . . .	260
Crocodile Carrying off one of Baker's Men, . . . . .	172	Reptile King of the Jungle, . . . . .	261
Shilook Women Pounding Maize, . . . . .	173	Killing a Boa, . . . . .	262
A Bari Village, . . . . .	174	Shooting the Cataracts, . . . . .	263
Crocodile Seizing a Sailor, . . . . .	176	Stanley's Starving People, . . . . .	265
Shooting Elephants across the River, . . . . .	178	Cutting a Passage around the Cataracts, . . . . .	267
A Typical Savage Chief, . . . . .	180	Wonderful Bridge across the Gordon Bennett River, . . . . .	269
Baker's Camp at Fatiko, . . . . .	181	De Brazza Concluding a Treaty with the Natives, . . . . .	270
Scene in the Game Country, . . . . .	182	Stanley's Interview with Gaman Kono, . . . . .	271
Baker's Audience with Kabba Rega, . . . . .	183	Malamine Receiving Orders from M. De Brazza, . . . . .	272
Farmers of Unyoro, . . . . .	184	Chinese Gordon, . . . . .	275
The Funeral Dance, . . . . .	185	Soldiers of the Imperial Army, . . . . .	277
The Escape from Bondage, . . . . .	187	Taiiping Rebels Committing Atrocities, . . . . .	279
The Fight in the Grass, . . . . .	188	Death of Ward, . . . . .	281
Rionga, King of Unyoro, . . . . .	190	Preparing a Prisoner for Torture, . . . . .	283
Baker exchanging Blood with Rionga, . . . . .	192	Fighting His Way up the Yangtze, . . . . .	284
Beating up Game by Firing the Grass, . . . . .	193	After the Battle, . . . . .	286
Boars in the Net, . . . . .	194	Gordon's Audience with the Taiiping Rebels, . . . . .	288
Adventure with a Lioness, . . . . .	196	Execution of the Deserting Generals, . . . . .	289
Arrival of Envoys from M'tesa, . . . . .	197	Storming of Kintang, . . . . .	291
Henry M. Stanley in 1876, . . . . .	200	Beheading the Prisoners, . . . . .	292
Murder of Consul Plowden by King Theodore, . . . . .	201	Gordon before the Emperor, . . . . .	293
Suicide of King Theodore, . . . . .	203	Tail Piece, . . . . .	294
Engaging Porters at Bagamoyo, . . . . .	206	Gordon's Infantry Escort, . . . . .	296
Affectionate Curiosity of Rosoko Women, . . . . .	207	Gordon Reviewing His Troops at Khartoum, . . . . .	297
A Belle of Kisemo, . . . . .	208	Scene along the Nile, . . . . .	298
City of Simbsamwenni, . . . . .	210	A Sportive Hippopotamus, . . . . .	299
Stanley Crossing the Inundated Savannah, . . . . .	212	The Fort at Gondokoro, . . . . .	301
Marching into Ugogo, . . . . .	214	Col. Long's Reception by the King of Uganda, . . . . .	302
Impertinent Curiosity of the Wagogo, . . . . .	216	The Soudanese's Love, . . . . .	303
The Chief Teaching His Subjects Manners, . . . . .	218	The Station at Duffili, . . . . .	304
Only a Whiff of Ammonia, . . . . .	219	Harassments along the Nile, . . . . .	305
A Glorious Hunt, . . . . .	220	Indignities to the Head of Linant, . . . . .	306
A Boar! A Boar! . . . . .	221	Kabba Rega's Fetiches, . . . . .	308
Stanley's First Sight of Lake Tanganyika, . . . . .	222	Tossed to His Death, . . . . .	309
Stanley's Meeting with Livingstone, . . . . .	225	Reception of Gordon by the Prince of Bogo, . . . . .	312
Stanley and Livingstone on the Shores of Tanganyika, . . . . .	226	Murder of the Camel Driver, . . . . .	314
Livingstone's Grave in Westminster Abbey, . . . . .	228	Seeking a Friendship with the Natives, . . . . .	315
Stanley's Dogs in the Village of Kagehyi, . . . . .	229	Sebehr Pasha, the Slave King, . . . . .	316
Village of Igusa, . . . . .	230	Caught in a Terrific Storm, . . . . .	317
Stanley Circumnavigating Victoria Lake, . . . . .	231	Treating with the Leopards, . . . . .	319
Magassa Inviting Stanley to M'tesa's Court, . . . . .	233	Murdering Slaves, . . . . .	321
Reception of Stanley by M'tesa, . . . . .	234	Bringing Slaves to the Shaka Market, . . . . .	322
M'tesa's Capital and Palace, . . . . .	236	Buying Slaves in the Shaka Market, . . . . .	323

Track of the Slaves, . . . . .	PAGE 324	Mwanga's Camp on Bulinguye Island, . . . . .	PAGE 394
Return, after the Death of Suleiman, . . . . .	325	Domestic Scene in Ukumbi, . . . . .	395
Waterspouts in the Indian Ocean, . . . . .	327	Uganda Mohammedans at Prayer, . . . . .	396
Among the Boers, . . . . .	328	Agriculture in the Muta Nziga District, . . . . .	397
The Mahdi and His Fakis, . . . . .	329	Reception of Stanley by Uganda Chief, . . . . .	399
Meeting of Emin Pasha and Stanley, . . . . .	331	Disposition of the Dead by Boma Villagers, . . . . .	400
A Dongowalis Woman, . . . . .	332	Attacked by a Leopard, . . . . .	401
Village of Gebel Geon, . . . . .	334	Tail Piece, . . . . .	402
Retreat of the Mahdists, . . . . .	335	Lakunga Station, . . . . .	404
Hicks Pasha's Tag-rags, . . . . .	337	The N'Ganga Locating the Devil, . . . . .	406
Hicks Pasha's Last Rally, . . . . .	338	The Assyrian and his Two Wives, . . . . .	407
Attack on Tokar, . . . . .	340	The Fallen Monarch beset by Hyenas, Jackals, Vultures, and Lions, . . . . .	408
Victims of the Slave Traders, . . . . .	341	Tail Piece, . . . . .	409
Dance in Honor of Gordon, . . . . .	342	Natives of Kasonge Weaving, . . . . .	411
Gordon Counselling with his Generals, . . . . .	343	Tipo Tib's Harem <i>en voyage</i> , . . . . .	412
The Battle at Halfiyeh, . . . . .	345	Ba-Yanzi Musicians, . . . . .	413
A Skirmish between Outposts, . . . . .	346	An Excess of Sport, . . . . .	415
Khartoum during the Siege, . . . . .	347	Tipo Tib's Adventure with a Crocodile, . . . . .	416
Headquarters of the Mahdi, . . . . .	348	Sketches in and about Bololo and Stanley Falls, . . . . .	418
Murder of Gordon's Body Servant, . . . . .	349	Man and Woman of the N'Kimba Tribe, . . . . .	420
Emin Pasha, . . . . .	352	Stanley's March from Kasonge, . . . . .	422
A Uganda Village, . . . . .	353	Travelling by Canoe on the Upper Congo, . . . . .	423
Emin and His Escort, . . . . .	354	A Batoka Feast of Banana Beer, . . . . .	426
Emin Hailed by Ungoro Warriors, . . . . .	355	Fort Yambuya, . . . . .	427
Lado, Capital of the Equatorial Provinces, . . . . .	356	Major Ed. M. Barttelot, . . . . .	429
Emin's Irregulars, . . . . .	357	A Sudden Change of Base, . . . . .	430
Station at Kirri, . . . . .	358	Barttelot's Adventure with a Buffalo, . . . . .	431
Cattle of the Nile Region, . . . . .	359	African Buffalo, . . . . .	432
Cave-dwellers along the Nile, . . . . .	360	A Steady Hand at a Supreme Moment, . . . . .	434
Defending the Grain Fields, . . . . .	361	Dividing the Elephant, . . . . .	435
A Visit to the Savage King, . . . . .	362	Destroying Villages and Taking Slaves, . . . . .	437
The Demon Dance of the Bari, . . . . .	362	Advancing to Raid a Native Village, . . . . .	438
Savagery of the Crocodile, . . . . .	363	An Ivory Trader, . . . . .	439
Stalked by a Leopard, . . . . .	364	The Walls of Nassibu's Camp, . . . . .	440
Native Blacksmiths, . . . . .	365	In Nassibu's Camp, . . . . .	441
Attacked by a Crocodile, . . . . .	366	Sketches on the Congo and Aruwimi Rivers, . . . . .	442
Burning a Cojoor, . . . . .	367	Members of the Rear Column, . . . . .	443
Map of Region in which Gordon Operated, . . . . .	368	Taking it Easy, . . . . .	444
Conferring Title of Pasha on Emin, . . . . .	369	Bungari, . . . . .	445
Industries Inaugurated by Emin, . . . . .	370	The Killing of Barttelot, . . . . .	446
Fighting the Great Fire, . . . . .	372	Punishment of Petty Insubordinates, . . . . .	447
Map of Emin's Equatorial Provinces, . . . . .	373	Son and Daughter of Kabba Rega, . . . . .	450
Waiting the Return of Stanley, . . . . .	374	Natives of Unyoro, . . . . .	451
Slaves Rebuilding Wadelai, . . . . .	375	Stanley in the Dark Continent, . . . . .	452
Major Charles Wissmann, . . . . .	376	Cutting a Road to the River, . . . . .	453
Natives along the Lulua River, . . . . .	378	Map, Stanley's Route, . . . . .	455
Wissmann Attacked by the Natives, . . . . .	380	Fight in Mazamboni's Country, . . . . .	457
Stanley to the Rescue of Emin, . . . . .	381	Natives of Ugarrowwa, . . . . .	458
H. M. Stanley, from a Photograph taken in 1887, . . . . .	383	Fort Bodo, . . . . .	460
Sir Wm. McKinnon, . . . . .	384	Warriors Challenging Stanley, . . . . .	461
Gold Casket Presented to Stanley, . . . . .	384	Natives of the Town of Futa, . . . . .	464
Stanley's Automatic Gun, . . . . .	385	An Alakere Village, . . . . .	465
En route for the Congo, . . . . .	387	Sharpening the Teeth, . . . . .	466
King Mwanga, . . . . .	390	Crossing an Affluent of the Aruwimi, . . . . .	467
Village of Busagala, . . . . .	391	On the Road to Kilinga-Longa's, . . . . .	469
Kalema Burns his Brothers and Sisters, and his own Children, . . . . .	392	A Meal in the Wilderness, . . . . .	470

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

Huts of Ibewiri Villagers, . . . . .	PAGE 471	A Dandy, . . . . .	
Whipping an Insubordinate, . . . . .	472	An M'teita Man	
Purchasing a Sight of King Mazamboni, . . . . .	473	Starvation Precl	
Ascending a Hill in a Storm, . . . . .	474	Stanley Enforcin	
Natives Forbidding a Passage, . . . . .	475	A Buffalo's Mad	
Arguing with a Chief, . . . . .	476	A Rhinoceros C	
Village of Ugarowwa, . . . . .	477	A Wild Rush in	
Natives of the Fort Bodo District, . . . . .	480	Fight at Avi Sibi	
Marching into Banalya, . . . . .	481	A Dwaris Villag	
Look Out for the Crocodile! . . . . .	483	Dwaris Women,	
Native Boatwomen of Kavalli, . . . . .	487	Dispersing a Par	
Interruption of the Pasha's Reverie, . . . . .	490	Torturing the M	
Landing of Emin Pasha and Captain Casati at Weke, . . . . .	491	The Courier Tal	
Tipo Tib's Captives being sent into Bondage, . . . . .	493	Along the Aruw	
One of Tipo Tib's Slave Gangs, . . . . .	494	Punishment of a	
Natives of the Bolobo District, . . . . .	495	Stanley's and Er	
Bartelot Enforcing Orders, . . . . .	497	The Kavalli Chi	
Slaves Marching into Stanley Falls, . . . . .	498	View on the Sen	
Dragging the Murderer to Execution, . . . . .	500	Stanley Bagging	
Mustering of the Hostiles, . . . . .	502	Buffalo Shooting	
Dwellings of Tribes below Nejambi Rapids, . . . . .	503	The Lion Hunt,	
Elevated Dwellings along the Aruwimi, . . . . .	504	Antelope Shootin	
A School of Hippopotami, . . . . .	505	Stanley Charged	
Blessing the Body of a Hippopotamus, . . . . .	506	Two-horned Afri	
Stair's Adventure with a Bull Hippopotamus, . . . . .	507	A Warasura Wai	
The Prison of Emin Pasha and Mr. Jephson at Duffili, . . . . .	508	A Wakonju Wor	
Novel Means of Killing Crocodiles, . . . . .	509	A Wahuma Ban	
A Crocodile Snare, . . . . .	510	A Tree Climber,	
A Dwarf Watch-tower, . . . . .	511	Plucking the Eag	
Dwarf Shooting Weaver-birds, . . . . .	512	Ceremony of Sea	
Adventures in the Dwarf Country, . . . . .	513	The Wahuma Ki	
Gathering Honey, . . . . .	513	Explosion of the	
Dwarfs' Manner of Disposing of their Dead, . . . . .	514	Natives Sending	
First Conflict with the Natives, . . . . .	515	Jephson's Adven	
Scared by Williams' Camera, . . . . .	516	The Expedition	
he Promised Land, . . . . .	517	Foot Illustration,	

ALSO, 26 SYMBOLIC INITIALS









# HEROES OF THE DARK CONTINENT.

## CHAPTER I.

### AFRICA OF THE ANCIENTS.

Of the many decided mysteries of geography, the unsolvable riddles that vex researchers in the fields of the earth, none appear so great as the African sphinx. This second largest natural division of land, lying most favorably under the fructifying influences of nature, blessed by the bounties of rich soil, variegated landscape, pleasing panoramas, delightful climate and wonderful productions, still remains under the ban of stagnation, if not primeval savagery. The many natural advantages which the country possessed over Europe and Asia were promptly recognized by the mother of civilization, who here set her cradle and rocked her offspring until it flourished into a vigorous manhood. Thus it was that Egypt became the parent of human advancement, and gave to the world the genius of substantial progress, which developed the highest intellectual faculties, builded magnificent cities, established museums of arts, set examples of human aggrandizement, produced surprising results in engineering, created sciences, and gave form to government and law. The modern world, with its wealth of ingenuity and rich attainment, pauses before every successive step to pay homage to that ancient country and to take example from the relics of its departed glory.

Though first to cast the plummet and sound the depths of human wisdom, Africa was likewise first to pause in her ambition, as if surfeited with the circumstance and pride of achievement, and dropping back, watched with indifferent regard the advance of other countries. The offspring of her institutions, the prodigies that gave her greatness, became like a tender vine too long exposed to a scorching sun, which withers after bearing the first season's fruit. Stopping in the advance, on the highway to a grander position among the nations, Africa lay down to a sleep from which she has not yet awakened. Other countries have profited from Africa's early example and pushed on, until in our day the first has become last, and now none are so dark with mystery, so wild with waste and wilderness, so wretched with savagery as she.



The new world, so young in the contest for supremacy, has risen with the vaulting ambition which distinguished ancient Africa, and now looks down with amazement at her dark sister across the sea; South America, with its over-teeming products that lie in almost insurmountable or impenetrable tangles, opposing every advance, has yet become a seat for the habitation of high and increasing intelligence. Australia has lifted her head above the disadvantages of her surroundings, and established herself among the great nations of the earth. Even the insulated portions of the globe, the islands of the high seas, where wild passions found a natural license in the circumscribed conditions of their environments; where savagery had no examples inspiring to a loftier position, and intellectual force could find so little nourishment—even these have discovered the germ of civilization and given it such careful cultivation that the fruit is ripening to their praise and glory. In short, all the world, save Africa alone, has joined the procession that marches, with ceaseless tread, towards a higher and grander eminence in human affairs, and are thus drawing nearer to that universal brotherhood which promises the flowering of a perfect civilization.

#### AFRICA'S FORMER GREATNESS.

It is not sufficient to say that the past glory of Africa was limited to Egypt, or to the northern coast, where Carthage, with her almost unexampled splendors, her enormous commerce and powerful army, ruled the world. From the ruins of the Nilotic cities, Thebes, Karnak, Memphis, Luxor, Heliopolis, etc., which are scattered so profusely along the river shores, and from the Grecian lays that so graphically and amorously describe the great Punic nation, we gain our chief impressions of Africa's ancient possessions; but the evidences are by no means wanting in proof of the claim that the country, though now so savage, was once thoroughly civilized, even its darkest portions affording testimony of having been occupied by peoples familiar with the arts and sciences. The explorations of our modern travellers, while beneficent in the highest degree to the present age, are but the rediscoveries of very anciently well-known towns, rivers, provinces and kingdoms.

Peoples rise and perish just as the arts flourish and expire. Nearly all our modern inventions are only recoveries of long-lost applications, and it may with truth be asserted that there is no country or land on the globe but has been occupied by a civilized people.

It is no disparagement to the bold spirits who have penetrated and explored the wilds of Africa at the cost of such suffering and treasure, to claim that they were but travellers over a once prominent but now obliterated highway. The results of their exploits are no less pronounced or beneficial, nor is the measure of their praise diminished because they performed a signal service which had once before been accomplished. As well detract from the heroism of a man who plunges into a cataract at the imminent peril of his own life to save that of a comrade, because some one before had done a like heroic act. The danger was none the less because having before been confronted.

Readers of history, and students of archeology, particularly, know that prior to the discovery of America by Columbus, there had long before existed in Mexico, Central America, and northern South America, a civilization that employed nearly all the sciences: mathematic, hydraulics, and a splendid system of engineering and architecture, astronomy, etc., which serve to distinguish the peoples of those countries as highly educated and refined. How they perished history fails to acquaint us. In Greenland, that now woefully desert and frigid country, we find ruins that tell a sad story of the desolation that overtook and destroyed the progressive and cultured people who once made that country their home. So we find like evidences of a vanquished civilization in all countries, though in Africa, excepting Egypt and the northern coast, these relics are less conspicuous, and in many places hardly distinguishable, notwithstanding they unquestionably exist.

#### RUINS OF ANCIENT MAGNIFICENCE.

Some few evidences do, however, exist, pointing directly toward a period in history when at least some portions of Africa, which are now distinguished for their barbarism, were ages ago the seats of enormous commerce and most probably the homes of an advanced people.

Sofala, now a small town on the east coast of Africa, on the Mozambique, is frequently mentioned by Marco Polo, who visited it in the thirteenth century. It was even at that early date a place of little importance, save as a commercial port for the Arab traffic. But long before that period it was the centre of a wondrously rich mining district whose wealth was fairly beyond computation.

The Portuguese Governor-General, in 1857, published a report concerning the former greatness of this region, in which, after speaking of the rich mines of gold, silver, copper, and iron found here, he states that the country was invaded by a warlike people called the Lindens, who wrought such ruin that no effort was ever afterwards made to re-open the mines or re-establish the government. But these mines still bear the names of their supposed discoverers, which are most probably the names of kings who have ruled the country.

In this same report it is stated that five hundred leagues from Sena, which was formerly the capital of the Portuguese dominions in east Africa, situated little more than two hundred miles north of Sofala, on the Zambesi, there are remains of large edifices which indicate that they were once inhabited by a powerful people, but by whom is not known. This report seems to confirm the statements of Barros, who, in describing the relics of a very ancient city called Zimboe, declares that about these ruins are the remains of a fort built of well-dressed stones having a cut surface of twelve feet in length and only a little less in height, in the joining of which no lime appears to have been used. In other words, the masonry is almost exactly like that which is found in the pyramid of Cheops. Over the door to this fort is an inscription which the most learned Arabs have not been able to decipher, nor has any one ever been able to determine the character of the writing.

Around the ruins of this fort are the remains of other constructions having bastions made of like large cut stones, and about the middle of all the ruins is found the wreck of what was evidently at one time a stone tower which must have been at least seventy-five feet in height. These ruins are called by the natives of the country *Zimboe*, which signifies a royal residence.

Barros is of the opinion that the country of Sofala, which no doubt once included Sena, of which indeed it may have been the capital, is the same as that spoken of by Ptolemy as Agyzimba. *Zimboe*, the name of the royal residence,

#### BESIDE AFRIC'S RUINS.

certainly offers some affinity to that of Agyzimba; and there is still the remnant of a once powerful nation, called the Zimbos, to be found on the banks of the Zambesi.

#### EVIDENCE OF A VANQUISHED RACE.

Covilham, a Portuguese navigator of the fifteenth century, born about 1415, being employed in a mission to the Barbary states, acquired a knowledge of the Arabic language, and was sent by his government to Abyssinia in quest of the mysterious Prester John. After first proceeding to Abyssinia he

made a voyage to the coast of Malabar, and from there returned in 1490 to Abyssinia, bringing letters addressed by John II., to the legendary Prester John. So great were his services considered that the king of Abyssinia, in his anxiety to retain his counsel, forcibly detained him at his court, where Covilham soon after married a wealthy Abyssinian woman and remained in the country until his death, early in the sixteenth century. Though he thus became an Abyssinian by forced adoption, he continued to interest himself in geographical and ethnological matters up to his death, and left a journal of great value, which fortunately fell into the possession of the English Geographical Society. In this journal are contained descriptions of the several India ports which he had visited, and, what was more instructive and interesting, that of the situation and richness of the mines of Sofala. In this journal he declares that the country was once very populous, containing many very rich and powerful cities. He also wrote a letter to the king of Portugal, exhorting him to make a passage round Africa, which he declared to be attended by little danger, and that the cape itself [Good Hope] was well known to the people of India. He accompanied this letter with a chart which he had received from a learned Moor in India, on which the cape and cities all around the coast were exactly represented.

These statements are confirmed by Bruce, and also by the Portuguese, who describe the state of the country when they first settled there (in 1505), representing the native princes as being pure Moors, and that their form of worship was the same as that of the Arabs; and that they lived, especially in the interior, in a more opulent and cultured manner.

#### FROM WHENCE CAME SOLOMON'S RICHES?

As the country of Ophir, abounding with gold, has long continued to be a subject of great dispute, it may be well to observe here that there are stronger reasons for believing it to have been Sofala, on the east coast of Africa, than for locating it in either Arabia, India or Peru. The Bible text (1 Kings ix. 26, 27, 28; x. 11, 12, 22,) reads:

"And king Solomon made a navy of ships in Ezion Geber, which is beside Eloth, on the shore of the Red Sea, in the land of Edom.

"And Hiram sent in the navy his servants, shipmen that had knowledge of the sea, with the servants of Solomon.

"And they came to Ophir, and fetched from thence gold, four hundred and twenty talents, and brought it to king Solomon."

"And the navy also of Hiram, that brought gold from Ophir, brought in from Ophir great plenty of almug trees, and precious stones.

"And the king made of the almug trees pillars for the house of the Lord, and for the king's house, harps also and psalteries for singers: there came no such almug trees, nor were seen unto this day."

"For the king had at sea a navy of Tharshish with the navy of Hiram: once in three years came the navy of Tharshish, bringing gold, and silver, ivory, and apes, and peacocks."

A HARBOR SCENE AT SOFALA IN 1904.

Writers who have entered upon this discussion usually maintain that the Ophir here spoken of is the Ofor situated on the eastern side of the Arabian peninsula, and that the gold was obtained from a small adjoining coast mentioned by Pliny as the Gold Coast.

It is not to be doubted that this region bears some gold, though certainly not in any considerable quantity, while we do know that it does not contain elephants, hence could not have produced ivory. Some pearls are also occasionally found along the coast, but never in such abundance as to have been an article of commerce. Nor does Arabia, in any part, contain peacocks or guinea-fowls, nor such apes as are referred to in the text, these animals having been

#### FORT AT SOFALA

first introduced into the country by Dthoo'l-Adhar, "the terrible one," who received that designation in allusion to these frightful creatures. This was in the first year of the Christian era.

The almug tree, which I believe all authorities unite in declaring to be the same as sandal wood, is not indigenous to Arabia; nor has that country ever produced precious stones.

If, as many declare, the Ophir mentioned in Kings, was in Arabia, certainly a voyage to that place and back could not have consumed three years; besides, if situated in Arabia, it would have been approached by land, instead of by sea, as in those days the former was a much less difficult mode of



travelling, especially as traffic overland between Red Sea ports, Persia, and the Holy Land had become quite extensive.

While none of the facts seem to point to any port of the coast of Arabia as being the Ophir of Solomon, on the other hand all the conditions are found to establish Sofala as the place; the almug tree, or sandal wood, of two species, both most aromatic, grows along the Zambesi and is common on the coast from

#### GOLD MINING REGION OF SOPALA.

Delgoa Bay to Mozambique, much of which is gathered here and shipped even to China. We know the disposition of Arabs to call places after their own names, and hence this rich country has an Arabic appellative, *Sofala*, likewise the river upon which it is situated; and the river which leads to the principal mines, the Manica gold mines, is called *Sabia*, an Arabic name, the same as *Yemen*, the name of Arabia's ruler in the time of Christ.

The whole kingdom of Sofala is marvellously rich in gold, silver, copper, and iron, while precious stones of almost every variety have been found there, and the finest pearls have been taken from oysters in the mouth of Sofala river. Indeed, it has often been claimed that the pearl fishery here is equal to that found anywhere along the coast of India, while no gold mines in the world are richer. About all this region elephants formerly abounded in such numbers that, from the ivory gathered there, it has been estimated that from three to four thousand of these animals must have been killed annually.

There are also, and have been from time immemorial, great numbers of apes, monkeys and peacocks, both in a wild and domesticated state, throughout the Sofala region, so that in every aspect the country seems to present itself as being unquestionably the Ophir from whence Solomon derived so much of his wealth and which he used so lavishly in the building of the temple. Reference will again be made to this subject when we come to consider Bruce's travels.

## CHAPTER II.

### A HISTORY OF AFRICA.

I acquaint my readers with the phases through which Africa has passed, and especially to show the basis upon which the claim is made that it was once well known and evidently thickly populated with peoples advanced in the arts inseparable from a high social condition, I beg to add here a brief history of the country. This history is necessarily imperfect because very little is known concerning Africa, and because so much of legend and dim tradition is associated with its every district, so that the facts themselves thus become very obscure. Another reason is found in the small attention which archeologists have given to the country outside of Egypt; so that our information is principally based upon assumptions which follow most naturally the few known facts, just as we assume certain things from analogy or example.

The name *Africa* seems to have been derived from *Afer*, the son of Hercules, though there are many other derivatives, which show that the real derivation is unknown. The Grecians divided the country into Egypt and Lybia, the latter name being bestowed in honor of a daughter of Epaphus, who was a son of Jupiter. When the Arabians overran a large portion of the country they called their African conquests *Ifriquia*, from *Faruch*, signifying *separation*, because of its insulation from other countries, being connected with Asia by the narrow isthmus of Suez, which, since the building of the canal, has left it an island, as it is now entirely surrounded by water. Other Arabians maintain that the name was given in honor of *Melek Ifiriqui*, who was an ancient king of Arabia Felix, but who, being driven from his own possessions, fled into Africa and planted there a new kingdom which soon became both great and populous.

The name Africa is also said to be derived from *aphar*, a Hebrew word signifying *dust*, given because of the sand-storms that sweep the Sahara Desert and the periodical simooms that carry such great quantities of dust as sometimes to obscure the sun. In the old Phœnician, Africa is derivable from *feruc*, meaning an ear of corn, or when changed to *ferac* signifies a corn country. This derivation is quite probable, because those portions of Africa which the Phœnicians knew produced such crops of grain as were sufficient to feed the then known world, a fact celebrated in the odes of Horace and Virgil and other ancient poets.

## STRANGE BELIEFS RESPECTING AFRICA.

A few hundred years ago the most absurd, though amusing, notions were entertained regarding the country, nearly all writers held the belief that it was incapable of supporting any vegetation except a few plants, which grew in great profusion and harbored the most grotesque and horrible animals. A few people were supposed to inhabit this dangerous country who were proof against the ills which surrounded them. Sir John Manningham gave descriptions of some very strange creatures occupying the mid country, among other things declaring that there were *cynocephali* (dog-headed monkeys)

## AGRICULTURE IN AFRICA.

who have heads and claws like dogs and bark like them. He also speaks of what he terms *Sciapodes*, a people who are wondrous swift though they progress by hopping on one leg. At mid-day, when unable to find a forest shade, they lie down upon the back and hold their foot aloft, which is so large that it serves the purpose of a shade umbrella in protecting their bodies from the sun. There are also, he affirms, a headless people called *Blemmyes*, whose eyes and mouths are situated on their breasts, but who have neither ears nor nose.

These ridiculous fancies were put forth in many books and most generally believed, although, thousands of years before, other historians had pictured

Africa as a veritable paradise. By these it was correctly represented as being watered by numerous rivers whose valleys were covered with perpetual green, while the entire land was fanned by cooling gales, so that the country was likened to a great orchard bearing all manner of delicious fruits. Of this African Elysium Homer, in his *Odyssey*, thus writes :

“Close to the gates, well hedged on either side,  
A stately orchard was, four acres wide ;  
There pregnant trees up to the heavens shoot,  
Laden with pears, and store of blushing fruit.  
Olives and figs, green, budding, ripe appear,  
Cherished with western breezes all the year.”

#### EXPEDITIONS OF DISCOVERY.

The first reliable information concerning the country, beyond Egypt and the northern coast, was obtained by Hanno, who sailed from Carthage, out of the gates of Hercules (Gibraltar) and coasted the land as far as Guinea, bringing back with him many surprising tales with which to render more exciting his story of facts.

Herodotus, in the fourth of his nine books (*Melpomene*), which he named after the Muses, says that some Phœnicians sailed out of the Red Sea and after three years doubled the lower point of Africa and returned to their country by way of Hercules' Pillars (Gibraltar).

It is also related that Sataspes, a Persian nobleman, having been found guilty of ravishing a virgin, was condemned to be crucified, but through the mediation of his mother, who was a sister of Darius, of Media, his sentence was commuted by Xerxes to the circumnavigation of Africa, this being deemed so dangerous an undertaking as to be a punishment next to death. He sailed out of Gibraltar and proceeded along the coast as far south as Cape Verd, when, being awed by the eastward trend of the sea and the strange animals and people seen along the shore, he returned again by the same route and made a report to Xerxes, stating that it was impossible to sail round the country. Having thus failed to perform the undertaking, he was remitted to his former sentence and suffered death on the cross.

In his second book (*Euterpe*), Herodotus gives an account of another expedition undertaken by the Nasamones, a people then inhabiting Tunis. This expedition was composed of five young men possessing both fortune and qualifications, who were chosen by lot to explore the African deserts. It is not related how large was the caravan that accompanied them, but it must have been a considerable one, for they took a great abundance of provisions in preparation for a long absence. After travelling a few days southward they came upon so many lions, probably in the Atlas mountains, that they changed their course to westward, though by this they were brought into the deserts and were in danger of perishing. At length, however, they came to an oasis in

which there were many trees bending low with delicious fruit. While regaling themselves in this inviting place they were visited by a number of dwarfs, or people whom Herodotus represents as being scarcely half the stature of ordinary people. These dwarfs, though unable to understand any word of speech uttered by those whom they had thus visited, perceived their forlorn and dangerous condition and very kindly led the expedition across a wide desert tract and to their city, in which all the inhabitants were black. A large river

ran by this city in an eastward direction, but Herodotus neglects to report the ultimate destination of the expedition or its fate. It is probable that the party crossed the desert really and visited the city of Bornu, which is so old a place that no history is extant concerning its founding. Though there are now no dwarfs in

#### AFRICAN ELEPHANTS IN THE SOFALA COUNTRY.

the immediate region of that place, there is a race of pigmies found not a great distance to the south of it, and who have, no doubt, been driven from their more northern home by the first Arabian invaders.

The greatest progress toward discovery and exploration along the coast and the interior of Africa was made in the fifteenth century, when the Portuguese attacked the Moors along the Atlantic seaboard and captured from them several cities. Having thus obtained a foothold, they increased their African acquisitions to such an extent that the envy of England was excited. Henry, Duke of Viseo, youngest son of Henry I., now resolved to enter the

lists as an explorer, to which end he engaged learned mathematicians and navigators, and in 1420 set sail with a fleet of three vessels to circumnavigate Africa. He continued to make voyages along the coast at considerable intervals, discovering Madeira in 1420, Porto Sancho in 1428, Cape Verd in 1440 and the coast of Guinea in 1452; but it does not appear that he extended his trips further southward, so that his real ambition was never attained. Henry died in 1463, after which no further efforts at discovery were made until King John II., of Portugal, sent out an expedition under command of Diego Cou, who in 1486, discovered the Angola, or Congo country, St. George's Isle, and the mouth of the Congo. A year later, associated with Bartholomew Dias, he continued

## MELINDE.

his voyage southward until he reached the Cape of Good Hope, called in the Portuguese language *Cabo de Bona Esperanza*, and entertained the ambition of proceeding thence eastwardly to India, but on account of a mutiny among his crew he was forced to return without doubling the cape.

## FINDING THE ROUTE TO INDIA.

In the year 1497 Vasco da Gama obtained a commission from Emanuel (known as the Fortunate), king of Portugal, the successor of John the Great, and made a voyage with the avowed purpose of reaching India by an eastward route. Though he set sail with four vessels, with this sole intention, he made search for other lands, and pursuing a tortuous course he discovered the islands

of St. John and St. Helena. After spending a year cruising off the African coast, da Gama proceeded again southward, and doubling the Cape of Good Hope he sailed along the Eastern coast northward to Mozambique, and thence to Melinde, three degrees south of the Equator, and from there he took an easterly course until he reached the East Indies at Calicut, on the Malabar coast. He remained at Calicut only a short time, on account of Arabian intrigues which threatened his life, and returned to Lisbon August 29, 1499, with the proud news of the complete success of his undertaking. Thus did da Gama win the honor of being the first navigator to double the southern extremity of Africa, and of finding a sea route to India.

It is a singular fact, related by da Gama, that along the east coast of Africa there was at this time many splendid ports and large cities well laid out and substantially built, occupied by people who dressed in fine fabrics, such as silks and purples. At one of these places da Gama stopped for some time and formed an alliance with the king of Melinde, who furnished da Gama with a pilot, who conducted the expedition across the Indian Ocean. What became of these people, and how their cities were destroyed, is one of the many mysteries which distinguish the Dark Continent. There is undoubted geologic evidence of a former land connection between the continent of Africa and the island of Madagascar, but there is no evidence of any submergence of the African coast during the past thousand years. Melinde, indeed, still exists, located less than two hundred miles above Zanzibar, but if we are to believe the reports made by da Gama upon his return to Lisbon, the place has very greatly deteriorated, and presents now no semblance of its former magnificence.

#### WAS AFRICA WELL KNOWN TO THE ANCIENTS?

It is a question whether or not all portions of Africa were once settled by a semi-civilized people. The evidence that it was, while being very far from conclusive, is sufficient at least to excite our curiosity and a desire to make further investigations. The Sahara Desert, which covers the face of a sixth part of all Africa, notwithstanding its desolation and the difficulties it offers to travellers, and the impossibility of its occupancy by mankind, except in a few fertile spots, is nevertheless as well known as Palestine, or Egypt itself. Caravans have for ages braved its burning sands and scorching winds until every foot of its shifting surface has been pressed by the keel of a desert ship as it went slowly sailing under a cargo of Eastern fabrics, or taking back to Egypt and Arabia the products of the oases and of Senegambian forests.

It was in Africa that the old legend was born of Atlas supporting the world upon his back, as thus described by Virgil in his *Æneid*:

And now the craggy top, and lofty side  
Of Atlas, which supporteth heaven, he spied:  
A fleece of sable clouds the temples binds  
Of Pine-crowned Atlas, beat with rain and winds;  
Snow clothes his shoulders, his starched beard is froze  
And from the old man's chin a river flows.



The Atlas Mountains in the northern part of Africa, lofty, precipitous, snow-covered and most difficult of ascent, have been scaled by thousands and were well known when Rome was in its infancy. Is it not inconceivable that this bleak, barren, repelling region of the north should have been so well explored thousands of years ago, and have been the home of so-called civilized people ever since; that Egypt, on the east, should have been the seat from whence all civilizations sprung, and yet that great country lying on her western border and fringing the northern desert with inviting productiveness, should have remained wholly unexplored, a very elysian region with gates wide open which no one would enter?

#### MAPS OF AFRICA MANY YEARS OLD.

All the most famous Roman, Grecian and Arabic writers of antiquity have professed an accurate knowledge of Central Africa. Ptolemy, the Helleno-Egyptian geographer, in the second century of our era, gave particular descriptions of the rivers, lakes, towns, mountains and all the physical features of Africa. Ptolemy was the first person to use the terms latitude and longitude, and to prove that the earth is a globe; and until the sixteenth century his geography continued to be a standard text-book. Is it possible that this map of Africa is only a fancy? Surely some one would have discovered its unreliability before the lapse of sixteen centuries.

Strabo and Pliny, Herodotus, Thebet, and other old geographers have given us the most minute and interesting descriptions of the physical features of the country, and also of its animals; and it is also true that while much fiction has been found among their assertions, there has been also so large a leaven of truth that as a whole their histories are still reckoned as standard works. They frequently mention animals as being peculiar to Central Africa which, being scouted for hundreds of years, have been by modern explorers found to be verities. The same may be said of the mountains of which they speak; for though it is now claimed that the Mountains of the Moon, formerly described as crossing Africa from east to west about the Equator, have no existence, yet there is a range of high table lands, some rising into veritable mountains, as Baker says, 7000 feet in height, crossing the country almost on the equatorial line, and which form the water-sheds of nearly the whole continent. In this region the Nile has its source, as does also the Congo and the Zambesi; here also are the great lakes, and each one seems to be the source of some river, large or small, because the country is ramified by innumerable watercourses, so that hundreds of years ago it was called the "Land of Rivers." From a book published by John Ogilby in 1670, under the patronage of Charles II., I extract the following concerning the lakes and watercourses of Central Africa:

"This region abounds also with many great lakes, the chiefest is that they call the Zaire, or Zembre, which Linefoot takes to be the old Triton, out of whose bottom issue two famous rivers that water the kingdom of Congo, the Coanze and Lalande. Some affirm that the Nile, Zambere, or the Conama,



appears in two founts, seeming perfectly round, on the top of a morass or boggy plain, upon a hill surrounded with shady and pleasant groves; the diameter of each though no more than eighteen inches, yet is in depth unfathomable, supposed bottomless. The water keeps within the narrow banks till breaking forth at the bottom of a hill, it soon spreads into a river whose channel, replenished by the concourse of divers others, swells into a lake thirty leagues long and fourteen broad, whence breaking forth afresh, after several windings and meanders, it returns almost to the first head, and there falling down by great precipices, among unapproachable rocks, shoots into the midst of Ethiopia."

A more truthful description of the real source of the Nile cannot be given at this day.

Sir Samuel  
Baker claims  
the honor of  
having discovered  
the river's  
source in 1861,  
though Captain  
Speke no doubt  
preceded him  
and came upon  
the lakes which

except-  
a riv-  
a few  
urlier.  
r fol-  
the  
by so  
ly de-

## CATARACT OF THE NILE.

its course, except for the last fifty miles, when he was forced by the deep of which Ogilby speaks, to cut across the continent. Baker viewed it N'yanza from the summit of a high hill, at the bottom of which a broad expanse of water, certainly as large as Ogilby reports, though its extent has not yet been determined. The precipices were also found, by which it was only possible to pass by carrying the boats over great hills, and the tortuous windings of the river issuing from the lakes, and its diminutive size, have also been authenticated. The two small founts spoken of remain yet to be rediscovered, if they exist, but it is possible that these will be found.

When we consider the fact that the real source of the Mississippi river is still in dispute, we can the better appreciate the accuracy of Ogilby's description, and feel full assurance of the truth of the assertion that ancient geographers must at one time have known from whence the Nile took its rise.

## OGILBY'S MAP.

To fortify more amply the claim that Central Africa in some early period, possibly antedating history, been well known by civilized or semi-civilized people, I beg to call the reader to the subjoined map published by Ogilby in his book already mentioned. This is a reproduction of the original, on which the names of towns, provinces, etc., are printed in Latin or Portuguese. The names, however, would afford us little information even if translated into English, as many of them have been repeatedly changed by modern writers and geographers. But the positions of rivers and lakes on the map are remarkably like those given on the maps of to-day, the differences being so small when we consider how imperfect was the art of map-making a hundred years ago. It may also be asked why so many villages are marked on the Ogilby map if the central African regions were at the time uninhabited. If these locations of rivers and lakes be correct, we may assume that the villages are also properly located.

By reference to the map we discover on the west the river Niger represented as rising in Central Africa and having its source in the interior. This is an error, though it is not difficult to conceive how such a mistake was made, as the map must evidently have been drawn from reports of travellers passing through the country. Niger lake, however, has its source in the province of Nigrata. This region is still called Nigrata, and that many other lakes may be located in Nigrata, and the map of Ogilby's map may therefore be verified. The Niger is also shown as having its course through a large body of water named Lake Tchad, though connected with no river flowing into the Atlantic, which was discovered by Clapperton and Dunham, in 1822. A short distance from Niger is the town of Tombotu, or Timbuctoo. It was not until 1826 that a reward of \$15,000 was earned by the explorer who should reach that city. This prize was won by Gordon Laing. It is recorded in ancient history that the Tyrians, centuries before the time of Christ, maintained a large commerce with the interior, and yet in the present century a very large sum was offered as a reward to the first white explorer who should reach that city. What became of that city, who twenty-five hundred years ago were so refined and so wealthy as to clothe themselves in Tyrian purple?

South of the equator we also find on Ogilby's map two very large lakes, called respectively Zaire and Zafflan. The former of these, however, is divided into two lakes, known as Zaire and Zembe. These are represented as being the sources of the Nile. Now let the reader examine a modern map of Africa and note the correspondence and fidelity of that of Ogilby's. Zaire lake thus becomes the Albert N'yanza of Baker, and Zafflan that of Victoria N'yanza of Speke, both being rediscovered in 1861. The Zembre should not be connected

with Zaire lake, and if we separate them, the former may represent Tanganyika, discovered by Burton and Speke, in 1858. South of these we discover, on Ogilby's map, Lake Sachas, which in size and shape exactly corresponds



ON THE BORDER OF THE ATLAS MOUNTAINS.

with the modern lake of Bangweolo, discovered by Livingstone, and near whose banks he died. Lake Nyassa, a large body in the eastern part of Africa, also discovered by Livingstone, is not laid down on Ogilby's map, though about the same location are two small, nameless bodies of water, which may represent,

as they no doubt do, lakes discovered, but whose extent was unknown at the time when Ogilby's map was made.

If we examine this old map to see what correspondence there is between the rivers as there laid down and those given on our modern maps, the coincidence is quite as startling. Between  $15^{\circ}$  and  $20^{\circ}$  we find on the Ogilby map the river Cuama, taking its rise in the south central region and flowing westward into Mozambique channel. On modern maps, this same river becomes the Zambesi, of Livingstone, the source of which has not been determined by modern explorers. On the west coast, Ogilby locates two large rivers, viz.: the Coanza and the Zaire, and traces their length quite as far as modern maps do the same rivers, the former never having changed its name, and the latter being now known by three names, viz.: the Congo, Lualaba and the Livingstone. All along the coast are found rivers debouching on this old map, but their sources are not given, any more than they are on modern maps. It is a strange thing, however, that the real Niger river does not appear on Ogilby's map, the stream to which he has given that name being in fact the Senegal. But several rivers are located as rising in the Mandinga country, or Western Sudan of modern maps, notably the Rio Real da Calabri, which may represent the Niger, as the location of its mouth is correct, though its length is not laid down.

Many other striking resemblances might be discussed, but as an admirable reproduction of Ogilby's map is given, I will leave the reader to make further comparisons with modern maps, in which he will be sure to find much to excite his surprise and interest.

#### RIVERS OF SAHARA DESERT.

That portion of the Sahara region represented on Ogilby's map appears to be well watered, being shown as traversed by numerous rivers, and occasional lakes also appear. To the casual reader, this exhibit, so inconsistent with the facts, would lead him to throw discredit upon the correctness of any part of the map. Sahara is, except about the few wells which give life to a vegetation limited to the immediate surroundings, a waterless waste, where rain never, or very rarely falls, and where an apparently illimitable waste of burning sand makes life of all kinds almost insupportable. But was it always so? Many geologists and a few very ancient writers declare that Sahara was once covered by the sea, and that, most probably, through the effects of some cataclysm the sea receded, leaving here its exposed bed. Or, perhaps, Sahara was once a fertile region, after the subsidence of the sea, whose soil was afterwards denuded by another encroachment of waters; and the land surrounding it on the north and east may have risen, as the evidences of geology abundantly attest, leaving here a great basin, which, ultimately drying up, left the desert as we now behold it.

It is difficult for us to conceive the Sahara as having been a splendidly watered and richly productive region, yet there is proof that it was once so. In 1871 Col. Flatters, of England, was engaged to make a preliminary study



the desert, he declares it to be very much less dreary and desolate than travellers generally picture it. But among the many interesting statements which he makes are those in which he declares that Sahara is traversed by many mountain chains which are intersected by the beds of ancient rivers, and everywhere in these valleys an abundance of water is found not far below the surface. He says that the beds of what were once two great rivers rising somewhere in the south, having numerous lateral valleys in which once flowed their affluents, extend from near the northern portion of the Soudan to the cluster of lakes in the southern part of Algiers, where the streams once emptied. These beds, which are still spoken of as rivers, are called the Oued Mya and the Oued Igharghar. When rain falls on the mountains or highlands water forms in their tributaries which sometimes lasts for several days.

By reference to the Ogilby map we notice that the mountains mentioned by Col. Flatters are there represented, as well as the lakes and rivers, so that there is thus a re-enforcement of the evidence that this map must have been drawn from descriptions furnished by travellers who had familiarized themselves with every part of Africa.



## CHAPTER III.

### ARABIAN DISCOVERIES IN CENTRAL AFRICA.

he seventh century Mohammedanism made itself felt most signally throughout the world. It was in this period that the fanatics of this faith began a conquest of the globe, not only shaking the Roman Empire and over-running the greater part of Europe, but they directed their attention also to countries which until then were unknown to the civilization of Europe. They not only established kingdoms along the Mediterranean shore of Africa and founded large and flourishing cities, but they brought camels into service for crossing the Sahara and opened routes through that previously untrod desert. This invasion of the desert was really the result of a dispute between two rival dynasties of the Kingdom of Barbary, known as the Abassides and the Ommiades. A furious war, though of short duration, followed in which the latter dynasty was defeated, and its followers, to escape the fury of their adversaries, fled across the desert in great numbers and founded settlements in the Soudan, where their descendants still exist as *Fellahs*. Their original possessions, which they occupied without dispute, extended chiefly along the Niger and Quarrima rivers, but these were soon after greatly enlarged east and west. In this region they established an empire, the capital of which they located at Ghana, which is the modern Kano, in the province of Housa, some five hundred miles west of Lake Tchad. The sovereign chosen to rule this new empire was distinguished alike for his cruelty and the unrivalled pomp which he exhibited. His throne is said to have been ornamented with great balls of solid gold, and the dais upon which it rested was likewise a sheet of gold, indicative, as the monarch asserted, of the commerce by which his capital was enriched. This gold was found in a country towards the south, known then as Wangara, but which is now designated as the Gold Coast of Guinea, being transported up the Niger to its junction with the Quarrima, and from the nearest point on that stream carried overland to Kano.

Few travellers have visited this region, notwithstanding its reputed great wealth, because of the savage cruelty of the imbruted, ostracised Arabians that occupy them. These veritable fiends established themselves here by inflicting almost inconceivable cruelties upon the practically defenceless natives, hunting them like so many wild animals and shooting them as they would the most

savage and dangerous creatures that inhabit the earth. East of the Housa empire, and bordering it, is the kingdom of Bornu, once known as Kuka, the capital of which still retains that name and is located on the west coast of Lake Tchad. Clapperton and Denham visited the place in 1822, and report it a city of many thousand people, and as being substantially built, with many ornate and stately edifices. The Bornu soldiery are the most effective of any in

#### A FELLAH'S FAMILY.

Africa, and render their appearance the more formidable by wearing chain corselets, and clothing their cavalry horses in armor.

Four hundred years after the establishment of the kingdom of Ghana, for some reason which explorers have not been able to give us, Timbuctoo had entirely eclipsed the splendor of Kano, and had become the most powerful city, the chief seat of commerce and splendor, and the mart for gold. Leo

mines and many valuable objects of commerce, but also by an adventurous desire to reach the court of a mysterious personage known as Prester John. The first mention of this distinguished personage was made by the traveller Rubruquis, who, claiming to have crossed Africa, brought back word of a Nestorian bishop in the central regions whose wealth and power were made to

appear as illimitable. Following these reports came others directly after, of a Christian prince in Abyssinia, and the two reports were considered as confirmation of the existence of this religious ruler who was known as Prester John. Henceforth a diligent inquiry was instituted to locate his dominions, which were supposed to be not far from the western coast. Ambassadors were indeed dispatched to Timbuctoo in the belief that this city might have some connection with the kingdom. Di Barros set out in search of Timbuctoo, reports of which had long been current, and succeeded in locating it and its great rival, Genni, though it is not believed that he succeeded in entering either.

Both the English and the French, before the sixteenth century, had found a considerable Portuguese population along the Senegal and Gambia rivers, and their language had been mastered by many natives trading as far eastward as Bambouk, which was only a few hundred miles west of Timbuctoo, yet no effort was made to correct the erroneous impression, or belief, that the Niger flowed westward into the ocean, as set down on Ogilby's map.

The Portuguese continued their extensions along the coast and formed considerable settlements on the gold coast at Elmina, and at the mouth of a river then known as the Formosa, but which some time after they found to be the Niger. At this latter settlement, the Portuguese found a large trade being carried on between the natives there and those in the interior. There was a king ruling over these coast possessions, but he derived his powers from some great potentate whose court was some two hundred and fifty miles in the interior, and who was known as Prince Agane. This prince was said to be the most powerful in all Africa, a belief probably inspired by the mystery with which he invested his person. It was reported that no one, save his immediate attendants, was permitted to see his face, but that during interviews he was screened from view by a silk curtain, at the conclusion of which he disclosed only his foot, to which those in the royal presence were required to pay homage. It has been popularly, and no doubt properly, supposed that this prince was the Arabian ruler of Ghana, of which the modern province of Ganid composes a part.

#### DISCOVERY OF A CHRISTIAN EMPIRE.

At the close of the fifteenth century the Portuguese not only sent missionaries into the interior, but they extended their influence by sailing around the cape and up the east coast as far as Melinde and Mombasa, reports of which kingdoms, especially the latter, had been brought back by Vasco da Gama after his discovery of a route to India. Covilham was in charge of the expedition succeeding the one which da Gama had commanded so successfully, and proceeding further north than his predecessor, landed on the shore of Abyssinia. This country, though so short a distance south of Egypt, seems to have been unknown to the ancient writers, though it was one of the earliest Christian empires, the seat of the mysterious Prester John. Covilham remained some time in Abyssinia and sent back to his sovereign glowing accounts of

its riches, besides inducing many missionaries to locate there, but he made no effort to penetrate the interior.

We have no further information respecting affairs in Africa until towards the end of the sixteenth century, when the emperor of Morocco sent a large expedition

#### CROCODILE SEIZING THE NEGRO GUIDE.

against the prince of Timbuctoo, which resulted in a conquest of the city, the mystery of which, however, was revealed only to the conquerors, for the place continued to be as carefully guarded against the entrance of strangers as it was before. This conquest seemed to absorb the attention of all Europe for a time,

popular interest being much increased by reports of vast gold fields in the vicinity of Timbuctoo, in addition to the valuable commerce which the city was known to enjoy. Influenced by these reports, an English company was formed in 1618, for the purpose of penetrating to Timbuctoo by ascending the Gambia, which was then supposed to be one of the mouths of the Niger.

#### MURDER OF CAPTAIN THOMPSON.

This company sent out Captain Thompson with a vessel who, landing at a point where Bathurst now stands, took to a small boat and started up the stream. He proceeded as far as Tenda, about one hundred miles from the Gambia mouth, which was further than any other European had ever before ventured. Here he was attacked by the natives, and after a stubborn resistance himself and boat-crew were killed. The Portuguese also instigated another body of natives to attack the anchored vessel, in which nearly all the crew were likewise killed, thus tragically ending the first English expedition ever sent into African wilds.

The English company, however, was undeterred by its first misfortunes and in 1620 dispatched another party, under the command of Richard Johnson. He proceeded up the river a distance of more than two hundred miles, and from information given by natives he supposed he was near Timbuctoo. Difficulties here arose, however, chief of which was his inability to make further progress in his boats on account of the vegetation which fairly blocked up the stream. The river was also infested with crocodiles which gave the boatmen much alarm, especially after one of their negro guides had been torn from a raft constructed to carry some of the company's goods to lighten the boats. Johnson was thus forced to return, but it was with the hope of renewing efforts to reach Timbuctoo after equipping himself more perfectly for the expedition. But his failure discouraged the English company, which now abandoned the undertaking.

A century elapsed without further effort to reach Timbuctoo, till the Duke of Chandos, Director of the English-African Company, entertained the idea of increasing its small profits by opening communication with the country of gold. In pursuance of this ambition, in 1723 he sent out a company under Bartholomew Stibbs, who attempted to follow up the Gambia in canoes. They proceeded little further than did Johnson, finding the same obstructions, which made navigation, even by canoes, impossible. The information which Stibbs was able to gather from the natives led him to conclude, as he says, "that the original or head of the river Niger is nothing near so far in the country as by the geographers has been represented," though he still believed the Gambia to be a tributary of the Niger. He declared that it had no communication with the Senegal or with any lake, nor did he anywhere hear the river Niger named. This was the last expedition sent into west Africa by the English.

#### THE FRENCH IN AFRICA.

In the mean time the French were making great exertions to form settlements along the Senegal, but with such poor success that in 1630 some merchants



At Dieppe and Rouen opened commercial intercourse with the region, making the crews of their vessels as comfortable as possible in temporary huts hastily erected to shelter them during the time of their stay. In 1664, they were compelled to give way to the West India Company, whose privileges included also Western Africa. In nine years, however, it was bankrupted, and on its ruins was erected a second, succeeded by a third, fourth and fifth effort to build up a profitable trade in that region, which last was merged into John Law's Mississippi scheme.

All the mercantile associations which had up to this time attempted to build up a lucrative trade in Western Africa had met with disastrous failure, though each had its period of activity in which much was done to extend both trade and discovery.

The next effort made at a reclamation of the region was in 1697, under the governorship of Sieur Brue, who, from the settlement of Port Saint Louis, sailed up the Senegal with the purpose of adjusting some difficulties with the king of the Fellahs and to establish a trade with the Arabs.

#### FRENCH PORT IN AFRICA.

He succeeded in his negotiations, and afterwards erecting a fort at Giorel, in 1698, he reached Gallam, which was the head of navigation for large barks. At Dramanet he built another fort and established a settlement under the name of Saint Joseph, which afterwards became the centre of French trade in the interior. Through the efforts of one of his associates named Compagnon—an adventurous and shrewd companion truly—he acquired a great deal of information about Bambouk and its marvellously rich gold fields. So anxious was he to obtain possession of these mines that he raised a company of twelve hundred men, intending to overrun the country and take forcible possession, but at the last moment he was unable to secure either the authority or means from his government for such a purpose. He did succeed, however, in determining the fact that the Senegal had no connection with the Niger, and a few years after D'Auville was able,



largely by the information given him by Brue, to construct a map showing the true course of the Niger and the location of Timbuctoo on its north bank, and in restricting Abyssinia and Congo to their true limits.

The history of exploration in Africa remained silent for another century, and until Mungo Park, a Scotchman, traversed a considerable part of the west region in 1795; but he was not equipped to make any explorations, so that the record of his journey is little more than a description of the punishments which he received at the hands of the Arabs. He wandered around for nearly a year, enduring great sufferings in his efforts to escape, and when on the Niger he was attacked by an armed body sent by King Taour to apprehend him; to escape them and the tortures which must follow had he fallen into the hands of this cruel despot, he leaped into the river and thus destroyed himself.

#### DISCOVERY OF THE NIGER'S COURSE.

Richard Lemon Lander, also an Englishman, was the next traveller to attempt a crossing of the Guinea country, whose visit to that region was made with the particular purpose of seeking the Niger's source. He set sail for Africa in 1825, and five months later had reached Katunga, the capital of Yariba. He proceeded thence to Wow-Wow, where he gained the first information of the manner of Park's death. Here he was detained for some time by the attentions of a rich African widow who sought to compel him to marry her. She is represented as having been a very mountain of flesh, which is the prime essential of beauty in that country. He finally contrived to escape the oily attentions of the African second-hand goddess, and proceeded on westward as far as Kano. Here he remained for a time laid up by sickness, but at length was so far recovered as to be able to resume his journey. He next visited Sockatoo, or Sokoto, and there found Captain Clapperton down with a mortal illness, remaining by his side until his death, which occurred early in 1827.

After leaving Sockatoo he experienced many hardships, and indignities offered him by the Arabs, but reached Badagry, on the coast, where he witnessed an embarkation of slaves by the Portuguese. Referring to this incident of human cruelty, he says: "I saw four hundred of these poor creatures crammed into a small eighty-ton schooner, and the appearance of the unhappy beings was squalid and miserable in the extreme. They were fastened by the neck in pairs, only a quarter of a yard of chain being allowed for each, and driven to the beach by a party of hired scoundrels, while their associates in cruelty were in front of the party, pulling them along by a narrow band, their only apparel, which encircled their waists." He ventured to remonstrate against this inhumanity, whereupon the Portuguese made complaint to King Adolee, who commanded Lander to undergo the ordeal of drinking a cup of poisoned water, which he was compelled to do, and was a solitary instance of escaping its fatal effects. He returned home from Badagry in the summer of 1828, without

finding the Niger's source, but in December of the following year, in the company of his brother John, he again set out for the Niger. After many fatigues and discouraging accidents, he finally reached Boussa on the 17th of June, 1830, from which point he began a descent of the river, believing it now more important to determine its course than whence it took its rise, especially as Boussa was the head of possible navigation. At an island a few miles below Boussa, called Patashie, he procured two canoes in which he embarked

#### VICTIMS OF PORTUGUESE SLAVE HUNTERS.

on a journey to discover the river's mouth. He soon found it expanding into a most magnificent river, fully three miles broad, and bordered by stately forests resonant with the cries of birds and animals, of which many strange species were seen.

One hundred miles below Boussa, Lander found another large island, called by the natives Zagoshi, and which was occupied by a large population actively engaged in many industries. The natives were of a hostile disposition and





everybody's tongue, because of its reported wealth, and that a guard was set about the place to prevent the visit of strangers. He secured as guide the services of a former native of Timbuctoo named Abou Bekr, who having been taken captive by a hostile tribe was sold into slavery and taken to the West Indies, where he remained for thirty years. During this time the slave learned at least three languages, and being already familiar with the Arabic he was a most desirable companion on such a journey. He was liberated and sent to England, where Davidson chanced to meet him, and after a short interview engaged his services.

Davidson started on this dangerous trip in 1835, but was long detained in Morocco by the perfidy of the Sultan, who was anxious to retain him as the court physician. However, he was at length suffered to depart, but after reaching Wadnoon, on the borders of Sahara, he found the dry season to have set in, it now being April (1836), so that he was again forced to suspend his journey and employ his time ministering to the sick for seven months. When at last he proceeded it was with four attendants, and being lightly mounted on camels the party made great progress, so that Davidson expressed the hope of taking a New Year's dinner in the famed city of Timbuctoo.

Unfortunately for this pleasurable anticipation, his little party was met by a large body of wandering Arabs who infest this region, and who robbed him of all his valuables but allowed him to proceed. Three days later, while he and one of his attendants were waiting, at a place named Swekeya, for the two others to come up, whom they had outstripped a few miles, another band of sixteen Arabs of the tribe of El Harib came upon them. Unsuspecting treachery, Davidson's attendant, El Abd, undertook to conduct the Arab chief, at his request, to a watering place, the others of the party remaining behind with Davidson. The two had gone only a few yards when the report of a gun attracted El Abd's attention, and looking around he saw that one of the treacherous Arabs had taken up his gun and shot poor Davidson dead. Thus ended another noble life, sacrificed in the cause of commercial extension and civilization in the wilds of Africa.

#### THE RICHARDSON EXPEDITION.

In 1849 the British government decided to send an expedition into Central Africa with the purpose of establishing and increasing trade relations with that region, and with the hope that many valuable discoveries might be made to increase the sum of geographical knowledge respecting that so little known country. The command of the expedition was given to James Richardson, who had distinguished himself by having crossed the Sahara Desert, as far as Ghat, in 1845. It was also determined to invite at least one German traveller to join the expedition, which favor fell to the fortune of Henry Barth, who had made an extensive journey through Barbara, Syria, and nearly the whole of Asia Minor. At his request, Adolph Overweg, a distinguished geologist, was also permitted to join the expedition, and who became a most valuable acquisition.



The British party, well supplied with all necessities for the prosecution of such an undertaking, left London in the latter part of November and entered Africa, by the way of Tunis, a month later, following the seashore down to Tripoli, from which point they struck out across the desert. The route followed was through the territory of Fezzan and the central desert region of Imosagh. They went southward to Kano, thence to Kuku and lake Tchad, and then westward about fifteen hundred miles to Timbuctoo, with the king of which they held a pleasant interview. After leaving this celebrated city, on the return journey, Mr. Richardson was taken violently ill, and upon reaching the lake Tchad region again his condition became practically hopeless. He still lingered, however, and hope began to revive, but when in a condition of convalescence he suddenly took a relapse and died, March 4th, 1851. The place of his death was a small village in the kingdom of Bornu, near the banks of lake Tchad, called Nguratuwa, which in the Arabic language signifies *place full of hippopotami*.

The expedition continued an exploration of the region about Lake Tchad, going southward to Yoka, and thence back again to Kuku, from which point the party made excursions to Bagir-mi, Masena, Zuider, and other important places, until the fall of 1852 when another fatality occurred which proved a sad stroke to the expedition, compelling a change of its original plans. Mr. Overweg was taken ill with a fever contracted by the indiscretion of wading in the bogs about Lake Tchad and getting very wet, neglecting to change his clothes. He was taken to the house of a friend living in the village of Maduwari, where after a week of violent delirium he expired, September 27, 1852.

#### RELIEF EXPEDITION.

The death of Richardson seems to have little affected Barth, who entertained a great prejudice, if not jealous hatred, for his superior, whom he rarely mentions in his three volumes entitled "Travels and Discoveries in North and Central Africa." But the loss of Overweg was a most severe blow, as the two were devotedly attached to each other; besides, Overweg was, in one sense, the brains of the expedition, upon whom devolved the several duties of geologist, astronomer, naturalist and hunter. Before his death, too, he had corrected the mistake long entertained respecting the physical features of Sahara, and proved that instead of being a low depression it was in fact a high plateau.

When news of the deaths of Richardson and Overweg reached Europe other expeditions were immediately proposed to go to the rescue of Barth. One was soon fitted out by Edward Vogel, also a German, who, leaving London with two volunteers and a large supply of necessities, including scientific instruments, succeeded in joining Barth on the 24th of December, 1854, at Boondi, 230 miles west of Kuku, on his return trip from Timbuctoo. Before meeting with Barth, however, Vogel had visited Tchad and Kuku, at which latter point he was stopping when news of Barth's arrival at Boondi reached him.

After remaining together a short while the two separated, Barth starting eastward over his first route, going home, while Vogel determined to conduct an independent expedition to the unknown region lying beyond the Tchad. In April, 1855, he penetrated the kingdom of Waday, which lies eastward of Lake Tchad, but instead of being civilly received, as expected from previous conduct of Bornu chiefs, he was arrested by orders of the Waday king, who detained him prisoner for several months, together with all his assistants and

#### ON THE SHORES OF LAKE TCHAD.

attendants. Being rendered desperate by the indignities to which he was constantly subjected by his guards, Vogel at length made a desperate effort to escape by boldly attacking the night watch, but he was quickly overpowered, and two days later was beheaded.

The report of Vogel's tragic ending did not reach Europe for several years, but final receipt of the news so inflamed the popular mind that no less than six different expeditions started out to confirm the report or avenge his death. Nearly all the members of these perished, however, either upon the burning



sands of Sahara, or at the hands of savage robber hordes who infest that dark region. Von Henglin headed the most important of the several expeditions thus sent out, and in 1860 reached the Waday country, where he learned the particulars of Overweg's death and also succeeded in recovering the executed traveller's papers.

Barth reached London in 1855, and forthwith began a preparation of his journal for the publishers, which was given to the public two years afterwards, in three large volumes, so dryly written that few persons have had patience to read them.

#### THE WRECK OF THE MEDUSA.

Of the several expeditions sent to penetrate Africa from the west, the most famous, perhaps, because most unfortunate, was that undertaken by the French in 1816, when the fleet of four vessels was sent to resume their possessions on the west coast of Africa after the treaty with England in 1783. The fleet set sail from Aix for Senegal June 17th, and proceeded without detention until they passed Cape Bayados July 1st, when the vessels separated, and from St. Croix the officers of the *Medusa*—a frigate of forty-four guns—lost their reckoning, and thenceforth the ship ran wild. The following day, July 2d, the vessel stranded at high tide, and despite every effort made to release her, by throwing over a part of her cargo and running out anchors to draw her off, she stuck fast. The sea was very rough, which added greatly to the difficulties, and after two days of fruitless effort to release her it was decided to abandon the ship. There was on board about four hundred souls, a majority of whom were soldiers, to provide for whom, or the excess above what the ship's boats were able to carry, a large raft was constructed, upon which one hundred and fifty of the unfortunates were placed, including one hundred and twenty soldiers and their officers, twenty-nine sailors and passengers, and one woman, while the others embarked in seven row boats of different sizes. For a time the row boats towed the raft, but the cowardly conduct of the ship's officers, most of whom were in the large boat or barge, finally led to an abandonment of the raft and those upon it, who had to sustain themselves for an indefinite period on twenty-five pounds of biscuits, six barrels of wine, and two small casks of water.

#### ABANDONED AT SEA.

This cruel desertion, the most inhuman and base of cowardly and perfidious acts, had a truly dreadful effect upon those left upon the raft. So crowded were they that there was no room to take a single pace, or to lie down, while those on the ends of this frail support stood waist deep in water. When the boats moved away landward, which was hardly more than fifteen miles distant, many of those on the raft fell into immediate despair, crying in the greatest distress, and some even attempted suicide. Neither compass nor charts had been left by the monsters who had so savagely abandoned their companions, and this fact added so much to the alarm already felt that it was with the greatest difficulty several were restrained from throwing themselves into the sea. But



## HEROES OF THE DARK CONTINENT.

dispelled that miserable night what a scene of wretchedness, when unhappy wretches, having their feet entangled in the masts that composed the raft, had been unable to move, were literally thrashed to death by the sweeping waves. More than a score had been washed overboard, and their sufferings were witnessed every hour now by some deeply affected men who plunged along into the waves in reckless despair, while others, in the arms of their friends and then calmly committed themselves to the sea.

### A BLOODY FIGHT ON THE RAFT.

The first night on the raft was one of horror, the second night was one of terror, for again the sea arose and dashed its waves against the sufferers, causing hope to flee from even the bravest. The soldiers, in their despair, became desperate. Their destruction was inevitable, knocked in the head, and they were resolved to drink themselves into oblivion. The wine had been thus consumed their minds became unsteady, and they decided to cut the raft asunder so that all might be over. An axe was lifted to sever the cords, when a lead bullet, pierced by an officer's sword. This was the signal for a fight, in which the mutineers, numbering nearly half the crew, fought against those who still held life and law dear. A great execution while many were thrown into the sea. The raft was so down so that it fell upon and badly wounded many of the combatants until they were unable to move. At length the mutineers were routed and forced to retreat. Of the sixty-five who had met their deaths, either by the sea or in the contest.

### THE HORRORS OF CANNIBALISM.

Time had passed and hunger became now so great that the men were forced to seize upon sword belts and other articles of iron. With much effort they were able to stay the gnawing oppressions. At length, when the bodies yet lying on the raft, rapidly decomposed, were stripped and pieces of flesh cut out, upon which they fed, their fearful existence. Some succeeded in swallowing the morsels, while the stomachs of others rebelled even when fortified with rum.

After being somewhat refreshed by the human flesh, they showed such increased strength that they were able to make also, though it set many stomachs to a violent vomiting. On the fourth day some flying-fish became entangled in the ropes composing the raft, and two hundred were captured. At length it was decided to mix portions of human flesh with the fish, and the human repast might be made sufficient.



The following night a plot was formed by some of the stronger to throw the weaker into the sea, with the belief that it would increase the chances of the former in reaching the shore. Another battle was the result, in which all the party were killed save thirty, while nearly every one of the survivors was badly wounded, and they were brought to a more direful extremity by the salt water, which greatly aggravated their wounds and excoriated their bruised and naked bodies.

The desperation of their situation grew constantly greater, as at the expiration of the seventh day of their abandonment the wine was almost exhausted, and not a dozen fish were left, while only one dead body had been reserved for food, the others having been cast into the sea. Three others died the following day, while twelve of the survivors were so nearly dead of their wounds that it was decided, rather than continue them on short allowances, with the certainty of early death before them, to curtail their sufferings by throwing them into the sea. It was a desperate alternative, but the lives of those yet able to exert themselves seemed to justify so horrible an act, and they were accordingly consigned to the deep. Among the unfortunates who thus perished was the lone woman who had shared the perils of the raft. There were now only fifteen left of the original one hundred and fifty, and these continued to subsist themselves on human flesh and the little wine that still remained, until the thirteenth day, when they were picked up by the French brig *Argus*, about forty miles from the mouth of the Senegal river. Of the fifteen thus saved, however, five died before the land was reached, so that only ten lived to tell to their country the incomparable sufferings through which they had passed.

## CHAPTER IV.

### EXPEDITIONS INTO EAST AFRICA, AND WONDERFUL STORIES

In the foregoing pages I have given brief re-  
counts of the important expeditions that penetrated  
to the period of recent discovery, but the  
attention was, for several centuries, directed  
towards opening European commerce into the Ti-  
berian regions, Eastern Africa was not entirely  
neglected, as we shall see.

The reputed kingdom of Prester John  
in the east, led several travellers to attempt a passage of  
which none succeeded, though all brought back stories which they  
believed to be true of the inconceivable wealth of that wonderful potentate. Those  
of Columbus will remember when that bold navigator set  
out to reach India, one of his principal objects was to discover  
the general belief in the mean time having located Prester  
John in East, probably Cathay (China). In the thirteenth century  
his famous journey to the then unknown lands of the East  
discovered Prester John in the person of Ouang Khan,  
Mongols, and high priest of his people, but nevertheless  
it was the son of this great ruler who succeeded to the  
title of Okkodai, and afterwards assumed the dynasty  
and overran Asia and Northern Europe about 1230-1240.  
He was a believer in Marco Polo's discovery of the identity  
of the kingdom which he had established some-  
times, facts seem to warrant the belief that the original opinion  
of John was correct, viz., that he was a great Christian prince  
whose kingdom is now known as Abyssinia.

Marco Polo visited Abyssinia, being the first white man  
to enter the country, and returned to the civilized world with many  
accounts concerning its king and people. He called it the Middle India  
of Abascia, and said it was ruled by a supreme monarch professing the Christian  
faith, and who had six kings subject to him, three of whom were Christians and  
the others followers of Mohammed. The Christians of this country he repre-  
sented as literally baptized by fire, being burnt with a hot iron on the forehead,  
nose and each cheek, as a sign of their acceptance of the faith. It is also



related that St. Thomas, the apostle, preached throughout Abyssinia, and after converting the inhabitants returned to Maabar (some part of India), where he died. But there are so many unfounded stories about this apostle that this one may be dumped with the balance into the waves of skepticism. It is true, however, that the rulers of Abyssinia for several centuries have been professed Christians, many of whom bore the name of John, and who combined the office of autocrat with that of chief presbyter, by which we discover the identity of Prester John.

#### A WONDERFUL LAND.

Marco Polo also seems to have discovered Madagascar, of which he writes as follows:

"Madagascar is an island towards the south, about a thousand miles from Socotra. The people are Saracens, adoring Mohammed, and they have four sheiks, or old men, who rule the entire country. This is really one of the noblest and greatest islands in the world, being reputed 4000 miles in circuit. [It is in fact less than 3000.] In no region are so many elephants bred and their teeth sold as here and in Zanghibar [Zanzibar]. No flesh is eaten but that of camels, of which an incredible number are killed every day. . . . Many ships arrive with abundance of goods, as cloth of silk and gold, which are profitably exchanged for those of the country. Mariners, however, cannot reach the other islands lying south of this and of Zanghibar, owing to the violence of the currents running in this direction. It is such, that while vessels can come hither from Malabar in twenty days, they spend three months in returning."

It is strange how Marco Polo mistakes the facts about Madagascar, unless he procured the information thus given from people on the African mainland. Madagascar has neither elephants nor camels, nor is there any strong current running in the Mozambique Channel. The Moslem religion does not exist on the island, though there is not wanting evidence to show that the Arabs were here firmly established once, though when they abandoned the island is not known.

Though Marco Polo made no extended travels through Africa, he was upon much of the coast and learned many of the wild beliefs that appertained to the country, which are very interesting, in the light of modern wisdom, to read about.

#### ASTOUNDING STORIES ABOUT ANIMAL LIFE IN AFRICA.

Therefore, before proceeding with a history of the other expeditions which have entered east Africa since the days of Marco Polo, I will call attention to the more prominent fables which were current until little more than half a century ago concerning the animal life of the dark continent.

But the line of demarcation between fact and fiction is never very distinct, and when we come to discuss Africa the division becomes absolutely indistinguishable. One after another the superstitions connected with that country have been exploded, while old, quaint, fear-inspiring stories told hundreds of





ousand persons,  
witnessed not a  
his voyage—a  
Pillars of Her-  
es in convenient  
ie upon a small  
ch flowed a large  
iles and hippo-  
upon which he  
saw a timid  
race of Ethio-  
pians, who fled  
at sight of his  
sails. He had  
now reached a  
locality in  
which more  
surprising ob-  
jects attracted  
his attention.  
In one place,  
he affirms, the  
earth was so  
hot as to be  
unbearable,  
while torrents  
of flame were  
seen to roll  
along it and  
rush into the  
sea. During  
the day abso-  
: resonant with  
Landing upon  
human shapes,  
rock with pre-  
monkeys, found  
is the close of  
se to his left a  
reason he gave  
r the sailors to  
hough no man

## CATCHING WHALES AND PRACTISING WITCHCRAFT.

Marco Polo, having seen many real things of remarkable interest, enlivens his narratives with descriptions and superstitions that must have excited the largest wonder even in himself. Speaking of the island of Socotra, near the African coast, which he says is peopled by Christians, he writes:

"Ambergris is very plentiful, being voided from the entrails of whales, which are pursued most actively, in order to obtain this most precious article. They strike into the animal a barbed iron so firmly that it cannot be drawn out. A long line attached enables them to discover the place where the dead fish lies, and drag it to the shore, when they extract from its belly the ambergris, and from its head several casks of oil.

"I can tell you, moreover, that these Christians are the most skilful enchanters in the world. The archbishop, indeed, forbids, and even punishes this practice, but without any avail, for their ancestors, they say, followed it before them, and they will continue. For instance, if a ship is proceeding full sail with a favorable wind, they raise a contrary one, and oblige it to return. They can make it blow from any quarter they choose, and cause either a dead calm or a violent tempest. They perform many other marvellous enchantments, which it would be wrong to relate—they would excite such amazement."

## A BIRD THAT CARRIES OFF ELEPHANTS.

Carrying his descriptions to the south-east coast of Africa and Madagascar he recites yet more wonderful things, as follows:

"Now I must mention, that in those southern isles (regions) the birds called *griffons* are reported to exist, and to appear at certain seasons; yet they are not formed as we paint and describe them, half-bird, half-lion, but exactly like the eagle, only immeasurably larger. They are represented so huge and powerful as to take up the elephant and carry him high into the air, then let him drop, whereby he is at once killed, and they feed upon his carcass. It is asserted that their wings are twelve paces long, and when spread out, extend thirty paces across; they are thick in proportion. I must add, that the Khan sent messengers to obtain information about the country, and also the release of one of his subjects who had been made prisoner. They and the captive related to him many great wonders of this strange region and brought teeth of a wild boar inconceivably large: I assure you he found them to weigh fourteen pounds. You may thus judge as to the size of the boar; and indeed, some are equal to a buffalo. There are also giraffes and wild asses, and other beasts and birds wonderfully different from ours. To return to the griffon; the people of the island do not know it by that name but call it always *ruc*; but we, from their extraordinary size, certainly conclude them to be griffons."

Ramusio declares that he saw a feather of this bird which was ninety feet long and two palms in circumference, and which was carried to the great Khan of Tartary.



This story is derived from two sources, viz.: from the Arabian Nights Entertainments, wherein the adventures of Sinbad the sailor are related, in which this great bird figures so prominently under the name of *rukhh*, and in some editions, *ruc*; and from the fact that there is found in Southern Africa a species of condor called *lammergeyer*, so powerful of wing that it can lift a sheep, and so strong that it crushes ordinary bones with its bill. It has been frequently known, especially the Switzerland species, to seize upon a child for its prey.

The boar mentioned is evidently the *boschwerk* (*sus ethiopicus*), which has four tusks, the two largest of which are often as much as ten inches in length and half that in circumference. They do not project outwardly from the jaw but rise directly upward, and curve at the top, for the purpose, as some naturalists say, of permitting the boar to rest his head when sleeping by hanging these turned tusks over the low branch of a tree, as it never lies prostrate like others of the swine species.

Marco Polo continues his fanciful descriptions by relating some of the things which he saw on the coast of Zanghibar, presumably Zanzibar, which he says is an island about 2000 miles in circumference, quite as surprising as some others of his statements. He relates that "the people are all idolaters, have languages and a king of their own, and are subject to no other power. They are not very tall, but so broad and thick that in this respect they appear like giants, and they are likewise immensely strong, bearing as large a burden as four other men, which is really no wonder, for they eat as much as five. They are perfectly black and go naked, with exception of a cloth round the waist. Their mouth is so wide, their nose so turned up, their lips and eyes so big that they are horrible to behold, and any one meeting them in another country would believe them devils."

Again, speaking of the queer things which he saw in Abyssinia, he says: "They have parrots, beautiful and various; also monkeys and cats, of two species, with faces exactly like those of men. This Abascia [Abyssinia] contains numerous cities and castles, and is much frequented by merchants; many cloths of cotton and buckram are wrought there." In another place, writing of the kingdom of Zambri, he declares "there are men in this kingdom who have tails like dogs, larger than a palm, and who are covered with hair. They remain in the mountains, never visiting the town. There are also unicorns, with various beast and birds for hunting."

#### THE UNICORN.

One of the most singular superstitions connected with animal life in Africa was formerly entertained by all the civilized world, representing the existence of a creature minutely described by Pliny as being the size of a small horse, of the slender make of a gazelle, and furnished with a long, straight, slender horn, growing from the centre of the forehead of the male, but was wanting in the female. This animal, called the *unicorn*, was believed to be peculiar to

the mountain region of Kordofan, in Central Africa, where Mr. Rupell affirms the natives say it is quite common.

The old superstition, which Pliny seems first to have made current, represents this apocryphal beast as inhabiting the most inaccessible districts, among the most noxious of beasts and reptiles, whose aspects were as appalling as their touch was deadly. The breath of these creatures was represented as being so poisonous that all the streams wherein they drank were polluted to their very source. However, the antidotal virtues of the horn of the unicorn were so great that it had only to touch the poisoned waters to render them pure and harmless again. From this belief came the passion for searching for the unicorn to possess its wondrous horn, which the animal was supposed to frequently shed. The beast itself, though vigorously hunted, could never be captured on account of its preternatural swiftness, but the horn was occasionally found and brought both fame and fortune to the owner.

Shavings of the horn were sold at fabulous prices, in the belief that they rendered all poisons harmless. The value thus set upon it was caused by the alarming frequency, in those days, of murder through the agency of potent poisons, with which the Venetians, especially, were dangerously familiar, and used to destroy their enemies.

Many horns were indeed found, but they were the tusks of the sea-unicorn, or narwhal, which creature was then so little known that the delusion of a land unicorn continued among people of the interior for several centuries.

#### GIANTS AND DWARFS.

It is quite natural for the human mind that has not been educated in the science of natural phenomena, or schooled, to some extent at least, in the vagaries in which nature sometimes indulges, to ascribe to the preternatural those things and creatures which appear insulated or out of apparent harmony with their surroundings. Thus the cave-winds have, by common people, been thought to be the suppressed voices of caged spirits; waters percolating through rocks, the tears of an imprisoned race; thunder, the challenge or ominous threat of an enraged god; a howling dog, the portent of some calamity. And what thus appears to the eye and senses, has its counterpart in the conception of a superstitious people, or gives creation to some grotesque idea of the imagination.

In Africa, as has before been said, this struggle between fact and fiction has ever been indeterminate, since what has long been believed respecting certain animals peculiar to that country has been proved nothing but idle fable, while reports of queer creatures common to the same region, have been looked upon as base superstitions, which afterwards were discovered to be true.

All countries, and especially the uncivilized regions have, as a part of their common history, some claim to being the home of giants or dwarfs. Africa, being the most benighted, has particular interest therefore as being the last country to offer an asylum to these relegated myths. In the deep recesses of this dark land, and more commonly about the mountain region of the central

districts, it has long been reported that the *Antomoli*, or African giants, live. Few eyes have ever beheld them, because no man can make so bold as to attempt an invasion of their kingdom; besides, the limits are set by great walls of stone over which human footsteps could not clamber. And should a stout heart wander into this region, he would surely be seized by one of the giants and eaten for his temerity. This superstition is the counterpart of the nursery bugaboo in the dark closet, but many of the natives believe in the verity of these giants, and a few centuries ago many of the learned of Europe entertained it with such confidence that not a few African travellers have been deterred from attempting an approach to the mid-interior for fear of unconsciously trenching upon the giants' kingdom.

On the other hand, stories about the pigmies of Africa have been common in classical, as well as modern, literature, and yet always read as a fiction, a pretty fable to entertain children, or embellish a poem. When, wonderful to realize, the giants have dissolved into a myth, while the dwarfs have come out into the light of ethnological fact. The surprising relations of Homer, Juvenal, Ovid, Statius, Nonnius, and other old writers of verse have been proved to rest at least upon a basis of truth. Perhaps the cranes and pigmies never waged battle on the plains of Central Africa, but we now know that three or four centuries before Christ the Greeks were really aware of the existence of a people of stunted growth, pigmies if you please, inhabiting a district in Africa somewhere about the Nile's source. In this discovery are two especially notable facts, viz.: that Central Africa was not then more unknown than it is to-day. On the other hand, it is an evidence in support of the theory that hundreds, if not thousands, of years ago, the whole of Africa was open to the commerce of the world.

It was reserved for Schweinfurth, in 1869, to discover a race of African pigmies in the Akkas, since which time Krapf found the Doko, or Berikeemo dwarfs, Du Chaillu the Obongos, and Stanley captured one of the dwarfs said to live north of the Wakuma country, so that abundant evidence now exists in proof of the claim so long ago made that Africa was the land of the pigmies.

#### THE GORILLA.

Stories of woolly wild men in Africa, of their great size and fierce courage, were readily believed, as Hanno had reported having seen such creatures, but when Mr. Bowdich, the African traveller, returned to Europe with report of having himself seen an animal, which the natives called *ingheena*, as large as a man and more powerful than a dozen of the largest monkeys then known to naturalists, every one was ready to discredit him as a romancer. In 1843 a ship captain stopped on the Gaboon coast and there killed two of these animals, the bodies of which he took to Europe, where they were secured by Prof. Owens for the College of Surgeons. This was the first positive evidence received in Europe of the real existence of the gorilla. A writer (in 1844) describing these specimens and the habits of the animals, says: "The male is in good





preservation, but the flesh dropped from the bones of the female. The former is nearly five feet high, and three feet across the shoulders; his wrist is twice as thick as that of an ordinary man, and his canine teeth are enormous; his grinders show that he lives upon fruit, and probably roots, and what is singular, he has one more pair of ribs than man possesses. The natives on the shores of the Gaboon river declare that these creatures lurk among the trees, near frequented paths, in order to attack passengers, and that one blow of their hand is sufficient to destroy life. They feed much upon wild honey, and are said to build huts, but live and sleep on the outside; and, from having seen men carrying burdens, they tear down large branches of trees, or pick up tusks of elephants, which they find by chance, and shouldering them, walk about with their load till they drop from fatigue. When their young ones die the mothers carry them about, closely pressed to them, till they fall from putrefaction."

Here is a bad admixture of fact and fiction, not surprising, however, when we consider the wild stories of wild men formerly current, and which must obscure the truth for a time.

#### AFRICAN AMAZONS.

Another story long current, respecting the savage life found in Africa, was to the effect that somewhere in the remote interior was a kingdom ruled by a woman, who was represented as being the living incarnation of ferocity, and whose whole ambition was the destruction of every male on earth. She was reported to have an immense army of Amazons, who were quite as cruel as herself, and of such desperate valor and adroitness, and armed with such formidable weapons that no enemy could stand before them. Her kingdom, though never located, was of large extent and constantly increasing, for she warred perpetually with her neighbors, whom she invariably overcame. Most of the prisoners thus taken were killed and eaten, but a certain number, being always those of the greatest physical excellences, were reserved for a while to serve as temporary husbands for the Amazons, after which they too were dispatched and eaten. The female offspring thus produced were very carefully nurtured and brought up to replenish the ranks, but all the male children so born were either boiled and eaten, or placed in a mortar and triturated, and the well-ground remains afterwards dried and converted into amulets.

A hundred other frightful stories were current about impossible creatures that made their homes in the wild recesses of African jungles, and of human monsters, many supernaturally endowed, set to guard the boundaries of this forbidden and forbidding continent. It is therefore less surprising that so few efforts were made, in the early ages, to penetrate into the gruesome interior, but as the shadows of one superstition after another became dissipated by the light of investigation in other parts of the world, men, especially those of adventurous dispositions, gradually lost their fear and began to venture within this dreadful pale, until at last the Dark Continent was crossed from ocean to ocean, and the source of that wondrous river, the Nile, was at length determined.



## CHAPTER V.

### SOME OF THE LATER TRAVELLERS IN SOUTH AND EAST AFRICA.

a long while the west and north-west coasts of Africa received the undivided attention of travellers who had developed an ambition to penetrate into that country; nor did the successful voyage of da Gama around the Cape and along the eastern coast serve to deflect public attention from the rich regions about Timbuctoo and the kingdom of Bornu. It was quite two hundred and fifty years after the discovery of the eastern water-way to India before the English and Dutch made any effort to establish a colonial settlement in South Africa, nor was any attempt made to penetrate the interior of that section until Cape Town had become a thriving Dutch port.

Among the earliest, if not the first, travellers who penetrated any considerable distance into the southern regions of Africa, was a French voyageur named M. Le Vaillant, who spent the years 1780 to 1785 in an exploration of the Hottentot country, which he pretty thoroughly examined from Cape of Good Hope to Angola Bay, and the interior as far as the southern borders of the Kalakari Desert. The fact that he was the first white traveller in these parts lent great fascination to his narrative, which was published soon after his return to France, in addition to which his account of the country, its people, rivers, mountains, etc., was of great value to geographers, as well as to commerce.

The next distinguished traveller to visit South Africa was a German, named Henry Lichtenstein, who entered the country from the Cape in 1803, and remained five and one-half years in the interior. He passed through the same region, generally, that Le Vaillant had explored; but, with the circumspection of a German explorer, he noted everything more exactly, and hence gave us very much information that his predecessor had neglected. Lichtenstein was an accomplished ethnologist as well as a philologist, and he took great pains to distinguish the many Hottentot tribes, such as the Bosjesmans, or Bushmen, Kaffirs, Corans, and Namaquas, all of whom are classed under the general racial division of Hottentots. Not only did he describe these, but gave us a very excellent vocabulary of their languages, which became of the

greatest assistance to other travellers who came after him into these parts. His scientific knowledge extended also to natural history, and he was thus able to add a description of the animals and insects peculiar to those regions, and also of its flora; so that he left a printed work which has hardly been improved upon since, and still remains a classic on the subject of which it treats. Sir John Barrow, who wrote two volumes on "Travels in South Africa," and who had lived at Cape Town a short while before as Colonial Secretary, was directly instrumental in inducing Lichtenstein's visit to that section, and afterwards did much towards circulating the history of his travels.

The Rev. C. I. Latrobe, of England, representing the United Brethren denomination, was the next traveller to enter Southern Africa, by way of Cape Town, in 1815. The purpose of his visit was to seek out a location for a

#### CAFFRES, OF SOUTH AFRICA.

new mission somewhere in the interior, in the prosecution of which intention he travelled inland from Cape Town to the military post at the mouth of Great Fish River, following along the north side of the Zwarte mountain range. He was a close and learned observer, and printed a very interesting account of his journey, which, more than anything else, influenced the great Livingstone to become a missionary and explorer in Africa.

In 1826, Bain and Biddulph penetrated the interior as far as latitude 24°, and made many valuable discoveries, giving us the first accurate description of the Bechuana tribe, and of the animals met with in that region. They were succeeded by Archbell in 1829, who followed the same route northward to 28°, when he turned north-east and continued on to Elephant River; but he added little to what had been previously told. Andrew Steedman followed next in

1835, but did not penetrate beyond the Zonderend River, along the banks of which he chiefly confined his investigations. Though his journey was thus restricted to a comparatively few miles from the coast, yet as a naturalist he found many animals, birds and insects, which had not before been brought to the attention of the civilized world.

#### ADVENT OF THE HUNTERS.

In 1836, W. C. Harris, an officer in the British India service, accompanied by William Richardson, of the Bombay civil service, entered Africa by way of Graham's Town, first equipping themselves admirably for a long journey by purchasing saddle horses, and twelve yoke of oxen for draft purposes. With several Hottentots for servants, the two adventurers plunged into the interior, not so much on a journey of discovery as to gratify their longing for a grand hunt. They went over the chief hunting grounds beyond the borders of the Dutch colonists, and met with many adventures of the most exciting nature. They were the first hunters who had penetrated so far into the interior, and their book on "Wild Sports of South Africa" abounds with stirring incidents connected with hunting the elephant, lion, ostrich, gnu, gemsbock, and hosts of feathered game. Gordon Cummings imitated Harris's sporting expedition, and spent the years 1843 to 1849 hunting in South Africa, from the trophies of which he sustained himself, and opened a large exhibition on his return to England.

C. J. Andersson, a Swede, in emulation of Cummings and Harris, in the company of Francis Galton, set out from a landing in Walfish Bay, in 1850, with a caravan of wagons, a drove of mules and a pack of dogs. They penetrated as far north as Lake N'gami, which lake had been discovered the year before by Livingstone, and visited by Oswell and Murray, who, like Andersson, had entered the country to hunt large game. On this trip, Mr. Andersson made several minor discoveries, and enjoyed four years of excellent shooting, so that on his return to England, after publishing his first book, called "Lake N'gami," he became very anxious to make a second journey into Africa, which he shortly afterwards had an opportunity to do.

Upon returning to the Cape in 1856, Andersson learned that an old friend, named Frederick Green, was at that time somewhere in the African interior, but was expected to return soon; consequently, he awaited his friend's arrival, in the mean time taking the position of manager of certain mines. After the lapse of two months, Mr. Green reappeared, with a record of his journey to the Lake regions to Libebe, which is some two hundred miles north-west of Lake N'gami, a totally unexplored country. After a short period of preparation, the two set out together in March, 1858, and travelled nearly one thousand miles, when they separated; but in the course of a twelvemonth they met again, and returned together to Cape Town in the spring of 1860. On this journey Mr. Andersson discovered the Okavango river, and traced its course for nearly one hundred miles. He also discovered Lake Onondova, but



was unable to find the Cunene river, of which he had heard the natives frequently speak, and which was, no doubt, confounded with the Leeambye, discovered later by Livingstone.

The most important expedition that had yet entered South Africa up to this date, with one exception, was that undertaken by Thomas Baines, who

#### PACING A STAMPEDE OF BUFFALOES.

had been previously attached to Livingstone's expedition on the Zambesi. Mr. Baines was well equipped for an extended journey, upon which he entered from Walfish bay, on the south-west coast, May 5th, 1861, his first objective point being Otjimbingue one hundred and twenty miles directly east. He

reached this place in due season but was compelled to return immediately to Walfish (Whalefish) bay for provisions and two copper boats which the first wagons had been unable to haul on the first trip. He reached the coast May 30th, and on June 4th the return journey to Otjimbingue was begun. On July 23d, Mr. Baines was joined by Mr. John Chapman, who had been with Andersson, and together the two travelled six hundred miles to Thounce. From this point, after some delay the journey was resumed, sometimes the two taking

different routes, and travelling alone for weeks at a time before meeting again. Both were most enthusiastic sportsmen and spent much time hunting elephants, rhinoceri, lions, hartbeests, ostriches, quaggas, and buffaloes, from which latter they had a marvellous escape from being run down and trampled by a stampeded herd. They made a tour to the south round Lake N'gami, and after reaching the lake took the course of the Batletle river to its rise, then moving northward to Victoria Falls they explored much of the country in that region and located the course of the Zambesi. They returned to Walfish bay in August, 1862.

#### DR. LIVINGSTONE.

##### LIVINGSTONE'S DISCOVERIES.

The most distinguished of all African explorers, whose name and accomplishments are alike imperishable, was David Livingstone, who also began his explorations of that wondrous continent by entering from the south, but whose prime purpose in visiting Africa was on behalf of the London Missionary Society, and with the ambition to actively engage in missionary labor himself. Under an appointment by the Society, therefore, and almost immediately following his ordination in the Presbyterian faith, he left England in 1840 for Cape Town. While temporarily residing there he met the daughter of the



Secretary of the South African missions, Mr. Robert Moffat, and a few years later married her, who proved his cheerful companion in later journeys until she died and was buried by his own hands beside the lonely hills of Shupanga, near the Zambesi river.

Livingstone was first appointed to the mission of Kuruman, in the Bechuana country, six hundred miles north-east of Cape Town, but, remaining here only three months, he removed to Litubaruba, fifteen miles southward, where he entered upon a study of the Bechuana language. Here he tried to establish a settlement, but failed on account of a war which was then being waged between neighboring tribes. He soon after, however, established a missionary station in the valley of Mabotsa, to which he finally removed in 1843. It was while residing here that he had his first hunting adventure, and which came near terminating his life, as he was seriously bitten in the arm by a wounded lion, from the effects of which he never fully recovered.

Livingstone remained at Mabotsa for a period of eight years, in which time he con-

#### MAKOLOKOS.

verted thousands of the natives and saw the little village which he had founded grow into a flourishing town, with the Christian virtues prominent in nearly all its inhabitants. About this time he was visited by two noted hunters, Oswell and Murray, who requested him to accompany them across the Kalahari desert, his company being particularly desirable because of his knowledge of the Bechuana language. The journey was made with ox teams and at the expense of the most dreadful sufferings on account of the exceeding scarcity of water, but on August 1st, 1849, the party was rewarded for all their privations by the discovery of Lake N'gami, a magnificent sheet of water about fifty miles in circumference, and the basin for many rivers, which flowing into it during the wet season inundate an immense district of country. This lake is the resort of great numbers of wild animals of the most formidable species, while its waters teem with fish.

## DISCOVERY OF THE ZAMBESI.

After spending several days upon the lake, Livingstone parted from his hunter companions, and proceeded three hundred miles further north to visit the chief of the Makolokos. Here he was kindly received, and encouraged to establish another mission, which he presided over for six months, but he found the people impervious to religious training and gave over his philanthropic

## THE ZAMBESI RIVER.

undertaking, at length, that he might employ his efforts elsewhere with more goodly results, resolving, however, to return again to the Makoloko country when the conditions were more propitious. He now fortunately again met with Mr. Oswell, and the two set out on a journey further north, which brought them at length to a place called Sesheke, very near the south central





of exploration. Nor was his ambition an *ignis fatuus*, for it led him to the most substantial realities and to make several of the greatest discoveries that are known to African geography. On this journey he passed up the Leeambye river, the western part of the Zambesi, and found another considerable stream, to which he gave the name Luba; besides which valuable discoveries he gives the most interesting descriptions of the peoples whom he met on the route.

#### THE WONDERFUL VICTORIA FALLS.

Livingstone safely performed the journey, and after a stay of four months at Loanda, laid up with a fever, he attempted a passage of Africa with the view of opening a route from Loanda across the continent by way of the Zambesi river, but after great hardships he was compelled to give over the effort and to return to the Makoloko country by the same route he had travelled in going to Loanda. But though his reception was cordial, he did not tarry long with the people who had so graciously accepted him as their religious instructor, but continued on down the Leeambye until he reached Victoria Falls, beyond comparison the grandest sight in all Africa, and equalled only by our Niagara. It will avoid confusion if the reader is made to understand that the Leeba, Leeambye and Zambesi are only as many names for the same river, the western part being called by the former, the middle part by the second, and the eastern end by the best known name, the Zambesi. Livingstone was the first white man to gaze on this wonderful natural formation. The river here falls into a chasm four hundred feet deep, bounded by serpentine walls of basalt, which force the waters to flow in a zigzag direction. The water breaks into a white mass like a sheet of driven snow, and sends up columns of vapor eight hundred feet above the brink, while at the outlet is a whirlpool above which in clear weather are seen several concentric rainbows. The whole scene is indescribably grand.

From the Victoria Falls, Livingstone continued on down the Zambesi, until within three hundred miles of its mouth he came upon a Portuguese settlement, where he was so hospitably received that he tarried a few days, and on his departure eight Portuguese accompanied him down the river in canoes to Quilimane, from which place he sailed for Mauritius, August 12, 1856, on the brig *Frolic* and arrived at his destination without experiencing any difficulties, thus concluding his first expedition into Africa.

## CHAPTER VI.

### IVINGSTONE'S LAST EXPEDITIONS AND DEPARTURE

WHILE travelling through Africa, during his residence in that country, and his explorations along the Zambezi regions, Livingstone had familiarized himself with the enormity and extraordinary cruelty of the slave trade, and was resolved, while trying to save the natives, to put forth some effort also to

Therefore, after a short stay at Malindi, he chartered a bound vessel to make preparations for his return. Upon reaching London he read several tracts at the Anti-Slavery Society, wherein he set forth the importance of the Zambesi as a field where Christianity might be carried into the interior. The impressions created by his descriptions were immediately raised to equip the expedition. It was organized, set sail March 10, 1858, and Livingstone was accompanied by his son and Dr. Kirk, superintendent of the Kenia. They had an ample supply of stores and also a boat to make an ascent of the river.

The expedition arrived at Quilimane, where the necessary preparations began. Proceeding a few miles, however, they were stopped by bars, but at the same time discovered a way of navigation, and up this they proceeded to a branch of the Zambesi. They followed it for miles until they entered an immense lake named *Nyassa*. Here he found the slave trade to a considerable extent, and consequently the suffi-







and wild dogs, which Livingstone hunted as a diversion and also to obtain fresh supplies of meat. They continued along the banks of the Zambesi to the river Zongwe, up which they turned their course in canoes for a distance of fifty miles and then crossed the country to the Victoria Falls.

#### FATE OF THE MABOTSA MISSION AND DEATH OF MRS. LIVINGSTONE.

Having now reached again the Makoloko country, Livingstone made anxious inquiries respecting the mission which he had established four years before at Mabotsa. To his surprise and sorrow he found that scarce a vestige of it remained. Mr. Hilmore and his wife, whom he had left in charge, had both died of fever, and the natives had abandoned all interest in the mission, so that it speedily declined and soon disappeared. Discouraged at this result, Livingstone made no attempt to renew the mission, but returned to Lake Nyassa in order to make a more thorough examination of that large body of water.

He built a large boat on the banks, in which he spent six weeks sailing on the lake to determine its extent and the country it drained. But while thus engaged a storm wrecked his vessel, which disaster was accompanied by a loss of nearly all his stores, so that he was compelled to go back to the ship *Pioneer*, which had been sent out early in 1861 with new supplies, and which was now anchored in the Rovuma river, which she was in commission to explore. On reaching the vessel fever broke out among the party and, for lack of proper medicine, it raged with great virulence and some fatality for several weeks. In the middle of April Mrs. Livingstone was prostrated, and on Sabbath evening of the 27th she died. A landing was made at Shupanga, and on the following day the body was buried beneath the wide-spreading branches of a large baobab-tree, from which pestilential region her spirit took wings and sped away to that celestial land where the sufferings of brave hearts are assuaged by a most gracious balm, and tired feet rest beside still but living waters. She thus left, in the midst of her Christian labors, the exploration of this world to continue her discoveries in that land which lies beyond the shadows.

After the death of Mrs. Livingstone, the bereaved husband became anxious to put back again into the interior, and therefore resolved to return directly to Nyassa. But before doing so he accompanied his party up the Rovuma as far as the three light-draught sail-boats could carry them, a distance of one hundred and fifty-six miles. Being unable to proceed further, they returned down the Rovuma to the Shire and then halted at Shupanga again, where the horrors of the slave-trade were most revolting, the river being sometimes choked with the dead bodies of slaves who had died of fever or were shot down in attempting to make their escape.

After a month's stay at Shupanga, a steam corvette was made ready, in which Livingstone determined to more fully explore Lake Nyassa. He therefore set out to convey it up the Rovuma to the head of navigation, and thence

overland thirty-five miles to the lake, but with all his pertinacity and almost superhuman efforts, he was unable to accomplish its portage, with the men at his command, over the hills and bluffs that intervened, so that at last he found it necessary to return the boat to the river. Though greatly disappointed in his ambition, he pushed on with eight others to the lake, which he coasted in canoes to the north end, but his purpose was not fully accomplished on account of a lack of time.

The *Pioneer* was to sail for Quilimane late in December, and he now

#### DEAD BODIES OF SLAVES IN THE SHIRE.

forced marches, he succeeded in reaching the vessel in time, upon which he was conveyed to the Zambesi's mouth. Here they were fortunate in finding two British ships, the *Orestes* and the *Ariel*. The two corvettes, *Pioneer* and *Lady Nyassa*, were taken in tow, and the voyage to Zanzibar was begun. From this latter place, where he arrived April 30th, 1864, Livingstone proceeded to Bombay in the small launch, *Lady Nyassa*, going to India with the purpose of disposing of his small vessel. This trip of 2500 miles was made in

that her arrival was not noticed, and she was managed by a crew of seven Africans, two boys and four Europeans, not one of the former having ever before seen the sea. Thus ended Livingstone's second expedition.

#### A SEARCH FOR THE NILE'S SOURCE.

From Bombay Livingstone returned to England, where he published his second book on the Zambesi and its tributaries, and in April, 1865, he started on a third expedition with the purpose of discovering the source of the Nile. This ambition seized upon him as a result of the publication of the journals of Speke and Grant, who had just returned from Africa, claiming that the source of that wondrous river had been found in the Victoria

Livingstone was satisfied in belief that the true source was a chain of lakes lying in the N'yanza, and this was sustained by a pretty knowledge of the topography of Africa, he was anxious for personal investigation. He took him to Bombay, where he was appointed by the Government to make a formal visit of the steamer *Thule* to Zanzibar. He also sent mandatory letters to the Sultan which influence that gave him much assistance in preparing for his last expedition. Tanganyika had been discovered in 1861, and Livingstone made Ujiji, a principal trading bank, the base for his expedition. Accordingly sent a large

#### SAID BARGASH, SULTAN OF ZANZIBAR.

provisions and trinkets to that place, with a man to remain in Zanzibar until they were needed. The next day, March 19th, Livingstone sailed from Zanzibar on the steamer *Penguin* for the Rovuma river, the mouth of which is hardly one hundred miles distant. Among the necessities of this expedition were six camels, three buffaloes, two mules and four donkeys, all to be used for various purposes, as horses perish very quickly in the region he was to traverse, from the poisonous bite of the tsetse fly. The animals were used on this short voyage, but their worst injuries were received in getting on and off an India dhow, by which they were transferred to the land,

so that a rest was necessary, and the expedition did not start for the interior until April 6th, moving along the Rovuma valley.

THE HORRORS OF SLAVERY.

The march was continued without serious interruption, so that in June the expedition reached the region of Lake Nyassa, which they discovered by seeing so many evidences of inhuman cruelties practised on the slave parties that were met. One entry in Livingstone's journal, June 19th, reads as follows:

"We passed a woman tied by the neck to a tree, and dead. The people of the country explained that she had been unable to keep up with the other slaves in a gang, and her master was determined that she should not become the

ARABS MURDERING EXHAUSTED SLAVES.

property of any one else if she recovered after resting for a time. I may mention here that we saw others tied up in a similar manner, and one lying in a path shot or stabbed, for she was in a pool of blood. The explanation we got invariably was that the Arab who owned these victims was enraged at losing his money by the slaves becoming unable to march, and vented his spleen by murdering them. A poor little boy with *prolapsus ani* was carried yesterday by his mother many a weary mile, lying over her right shoulder—the only position he could find ease in; an infant at the breast occupied the left arm, and on her head were carried two baskets. The mother's love was seen in binding up the part when we halted, while the coarseness of low civilization was evinced in the laugh with which some black brutes looked at the sufferer."

RECEPTION OF THE ARAB'S BRIDE.

(109)

Livingstone reached the lake at the mouth of the Misinje river August 8th, having surmounted many difficulties, not the least of which was scarcity of food, from which the people of all the lake country were likewise suffering. In fact, there was a very great famine then prevailing, from which thousands had died, and their skeletons were to be seen all along the highway. Hundreds of slaves, bound by heavy yokes, were also found at frequent intervals where their inhuman captors had left them to die of starvation.

Livingstone left the Nyassa in November, and after passing through many hardships, superinduced principally by the want of food, and the desertion of two of his men with the medicine chest, he reached Lake Tanganyika March 31st, 1866. The country at which he had now arrived was very fertile, but it was in a disordered state on account of a war between a powerful chief and the Arab slave dealers, which rendered travel very dangerous. This war, however, was fortunately terminated by the chief's daughter marrying the Arab captain, the bride being brought to the Arab camp in state, riding on the back of a burly subject, and deposited with care before the door of the groom's tent. As announcement of her coming was made, the soldiers fired a salute of welcome, and the remainder of the day was given over to the wildest festivities. This ceremony was witnessed by Livingstone while he was on the south-west coast of the lake, but immediately after he proceeded unmolested to Ujiji, from which place he sent to Zanzibar for supplies and turned his steps southward again, discovering on his route several rivers, including Kalongi and Lunde. He passed through Casembe's kingdom, a ruler chiefly distinguished for his cruelty in chopping off the hands or cropping the ears of his subjects for petty offences, and often for no cause whatever. In this region he also met with cave-dwellers, the true troglodytes of Africa, who live in natural excavations at the base of the Rua Mountains, and about the shores of Lake Moero, which Livingstone discovered.

#### DISCOVERY OF LAKE BANGWEOLO.

On July 18th good fortune directed the explorer's footsteps to the shores of another great lake, next in size to Nyassa, and before unknown, to which he gave the name *Bangweolo*, always selecting such names from the vocabulary of the tribes living in the vicinity. This body of water, in addition to its great size, is also wonderful from the fact that it lies thirty-six hundred feet above sea level. This lake, the discovery of which added so much to his fame, was destined also to come prominently into notice, because near its banks the great explorer "lay down to pleasant dreams," and rested forever from his labors.

From this point, turning his steps northward, Livingstone was brought again to the borders of Casembe's kingdom, having now resolved to proceed to Ujiji for supplies, of which he stood greatly in need. But during his stay in the south another fierce war had been inaugurated between the Arabs and Mazitu tribes, in which Casembe also soon became involved. This rendered

travel so perilous that Livingstone was forced, as a measure of self-protection, to unite with an Arab party, with whom he marched, in the company also of hundreds of slaves yoked together, from his exposed position to Ujiji, which he reached March 14th, 1869.

He arrived at Ujiji in a sick and exhausted condition, and only to find that very few of the supplies that had been sent from Zanzibar had reached their destination, the greater part having been stolen by Arabs. Nevertheless, after a period of recuperation and medication, Livingstone again plunged into the unexplored regions, resolved to follow up the source of the Lualaba river, believing that this stream had a connection with Lake Tanganyika, or that it flowed into the chief reservoir of the Nile. But many things conspired to prevent the immediate carrying out of this purpose, and he again turned his steps towards

Lake Bangwe-  
olo, and thence  
into the country  
of the Manyu-  
ema cannibals  
to examine the  
river of which  
he had heard  
frequent men-  
tion made by  
the natives as  
running to the  
west. He at  
length reached  
the Lualaba  
river, but found  
it flowing in a

#### THE SLAVE GANG.

northerly direction, so that he at once perceived that it could have no connection with the lake system that he believed supplied the Nile. The river being a large one, he resolved to explore it; but when upon the point of setting out for this purpose, the Arabs swooped down upon the people, taking some captive and murdering hundreds of others, and otherwise terrorizing the whole country. Many of Livingstone's servants fled for their lives; it was impossible to get canoes or provisions, so that he was compelled to return to Ujiji, six hundred miles distant. Travelling had now become more dangerous than ever, and his return trip was one of extraordinary peril, in which he came very near, many times, losing his life.

#### MEETING WITH STANLEY.

Notwithstanding all these perils, Livingstone reached Ujiji in safety, October 23d, 1871, though so much reduced in flesh as to scarcely appear





more than a shadow of his former self. The goods which he had ordered from Zanzibar had been sent by the Sultan, but more than two-thirds were stolen on the way, so that he received such a meagre supply as to well near completely discourage him. At this juncture, when racked by mental anxieties, enfeebled by disease, discouraged by the lack of supplies, and oppressed by the cruelty, villainy, and rapacity of the Arabs, who had rendered every route insecure by their murderous outrages, a good angel of mercy came to visit him, in the guise of an American, sent out to find the long lost, the supposed dead explorer, with instructions to succor him if living, and to bring back his bones to England if dead. Two years had elapsed since any word from Livingstone had been received in England, although he had written no less than forty-three letters to friends and the Geographical Society during his first visit to Ujiji, not one of which had been delivered by the Arabs to whom they had been entrusted. Reports had been circulated of his death, and, to verify or disprove these, Stanley set out upon the search, being so fortunate as to find him November 16th, 1871.

The meeting between Stanley and Livingstone was a joyful one on both sides, as may well be imagined. After hearing all the news, reading the letters which had been brought to him, and examining the large amount of supplies which Stanley had brought, Livingstone proposed an expedition to the north end of Lake Tanganyika, in order to determine whether it poured its waters through a river outlet into Lake Albert N'yanza, which Baker had claimed was the Nile's true source. Together Stanley and Livingstone made the trip, and found the Rusizi river; but instead of being an outlet, it poured its waters into the lake, so the fact was thus determined that Tanganyika had no connection with the Victoria or Albert lakes.

#### DEATH OF LIVINGSTONE.

Upon their return from this trip, to Ujiji, Stanley tried hard to induce his newly-found friend to accompany him to England, representing the hardships which lay before him and the depleted physical condition he was in, rendering hazardous any attempts at new enterprises; but Livingstone refused, being influenced thereto by his ambition to follow up the large river which he found flowing to the north-west in the Manyema country, and which he still believed was the Nile. This river, it was subsequently determined, was the Congo, and which Stanley afterwards named the Livingstone.

His mind having been fully resolved on this great undertaking, Livingstone accompanied Stanley as far as Unyanyembe, on the latter's return journey, and waited there the arrival of new supplies which he instructed Stanley to send him.

It was not until August 23d, 1872, that Livingstone departed from Unyanyembe on his last exploration, proceeding again in the direction of Lake Bangweolo. The season was now far advanced, and the rains had already begun to fall when he reached Casembe's territory. Soon after the country









## CHAPTER VII.

### DISCOVERIES IN THE CENTRAL REGIONS.

WE have seen that, in the earlier centuries, the attention of travellers was directed towards the western portions of Africa, where a great many attempts were made at exploration, chiefly in the interest of commercial companies, many of which had established profitable trade relations with the Arabs as far east as Bornoo, or Bornu. Shortly after the advent of the present century, however, explorers began entering the country from the south, most probably because of the founding of Cape Town, which became an excellent point for outfitting expeditions, and because the Dutch had now taken possession of a great extent of the south coast and established large and prosperous settlements there. But after Livingstone's journey across the continent, the tide again changed, and the place of entrance was fixed in the east, at Zanzibar, because here was the Arab headquarters for Central African traffic.

But long before da Gama had discovered a sea route to India, *via* the Cape of Good Hope, many efforts had been made to reach the Nile's source by an ascent of that river; but though some of these were made with loud declarations of accomplishment, all alike had failed. Among those of the semi-modern travellers who became seekers of the hidden source was James Bruce, a bold Scotchman, who spent the years 1768 to 1773, inclusive, in persistent endeavors to discover whence the great Nile takes its rise. He published the result of his investigations in a work of five volumes, the greater part of which he devotes, and with much learning and reason, to the history of Abyssinia and the kingdom of Sofala, which latter he regards as the Ophir whence Solomon obtained his treasures. In the second volume Mr. Bruce traces the history of the queen of Sheba, and her rich kingdom, the capital of which must, as he argues, have been in the region of Sofala; and he gives us the best of reasons for his conclusions. He describes particularly the ruins still to be found in the vicinity of Sena, and how the massive stones were joined together by strips of brass instead of cement; at the same time using most excellent argument to prove that brass was much more valuable than gold during that age. He also gives us history to support the old tradition

that the queen of Sheba (Saba) had a son by Solomon, who founded the dynasty which still endures in Abyssinia.

#### THE NILE'S SOURCE NOT DETERMINED.

Mr. Bruce is an interesting delver in forgotten lore, and his Abyssinian discoveries are of great value to history; but his claim to the discovery of the Nile's source is not defensible, nor did he ever pass over any great extent of country in making his search, seemingly having confined himself to the central regions of Abyssinia and to tracing the Blue Nile, which is an eastern branch of the main stream. He asserts, however, that both the Blue and White Nile have a common source in Lake Tzaua or Dembea, which is in about 12° north latitude and very near the centre of the present circumscribed kingdom of Abyssinia. Strangely enough, he also maintains that the Blue Nile, while describing a circular sweep, passes directly through the centre of this large lake, a conclusion which is grotesque if not ridiculous. The result, therefore, of his explorations, so far at least as it concerns the White Nile's source, is without practical value, though he did discover the true source of the Blue Nile.

#### MANNER OF DRESSING THE HAIR AMONG THE AFRICANS.

Ferdinand Werne, a scientific German, set out in 1840 to seek the source of the White Nile, being so fortunate as to attach himself to an expedition dispatched by Mohammed Ali to open a commercial road to Central Africa. Suliman Kashef, a Circassian, who had commanded a former expedition sent out for a like purpose, was also nominated to take charge of this one. The expedition was carefully prepared for and was composed of 20,000 men, the larger part being cavalry, mounted on camels, and 4000 asses provided to bear the burdens of the infantry force. Notwithstanding the ample provision made

and great hopes of obtaining practical results, this expedition went little further up the stream than Khartoum, though Werne continued his journey to  $9\frac{1}{4}^{\circ}$  north latitude, returning to his country the following year without accomplishing anything of practical value.

In 1845, John Petherick, an English traveller, went to Egypt and entered the Khedive's service as a mining engineer. In this capacity he visited many districts along the upper Nile, as he continued in the exercise of this office for several years, and until the death of Mohammed Ali, after which he became a



Nile.

## BRUCE AMONG THE ABYSSINIANS.

merchant at Khartoum. While doing business in that place he received the appointment of British Consul, which position he filled with great credit and no small advantage to his country. He also made a special study of the White Nile, and interested himself in obtaining all possible information respecting the river's source from traders who came to Khartoum from the central regions. He published a book on "Explorations of the White Nile to Regions of the Equator," which for some time was accepted as a work of great utility, but which, in the light of more recent discovery, is now rarely referred to.



## BURTON'S EAST AFRICA.

The most important expedition—in its results—up to this time was that undertaken by Richard F. Burton, a native of Ireland, in the year 1857, who entered Africa from the east coast. No man was ever better fitted for such a service, nor was ever an explorer sent out from whom so much was expected.

He entered the Indian army as Lieutenant in 1842, when twenty-one years of age, and being stationed in the presidency of Bombay, and having a leave of absence, he spent some time in exploring the Neilgherry hills; afterwards serving for five years in Sind, or northern Bombay district, under Sir C. J. Napier. It was during these years that he turned his attention to authorship and the study of languages, producing four very valuable works, besides acquiring the Arabic, Afghan, Persian, Hindostanee and

## AFRICAN PROPHECY.

Mooltanee languages, of the last of which he published a grammar.

In 1851 Burton returned to England, and having received a year's furlough his restless disposition to see the wild regions of the earth induced him to visit Mecca and Medina, which no Christian had reached since Burckhardt, in 1814-15. Such a journey was beset with countless perils to a Christian, whose discovery would be followed by almost certain death, as the Moslems would never suffer a defilement of their sanctuaries by what they call Christian dogs.

To prevent detection, therefore, upon arriving at Alexandria, Burton assumed the guise of a wandering dervish, which his thorough knowledge of the Arabic language and customs enabled him to successfully do, so that he visited the holy cities without his true character being even suspected. The results of this journey were described in a book which he published in 1855.

In June, 1857, Burton left Zanzibar for the lake regions of Central Africa, accompanied by Capt. Speke, about whom we will learn more in subsequent pages. On returning from Africa in 1859, he came to America and made a study of the Mormon Hierarchy, published a book on the same a year later. In 1861, he was made Consul at Fernando Po, on the west coast of Africa, where he remained until 1864, writing two more books in the mean time. In this latter year he was made Consul at Santos, Brazil where he continued to write books until in 1868 he was appointed Consul to Damascus and traveled over all the Holy Land, writing more books, "Unexplored Palestine," and "Anthropological Collections in the Holy Land." In 1869 he published "Vikram and the Vampire; or, Tales of Hindu Devilry," and two years later he was made Consul at Trieste, where he prepared a new and very free translation of the Arabian Nights, which, because of the salacious suggestiveness as well as the obscene language that characterize the stories thus told, was suppressed.

It is said, and no doubt with truth, that Burton acquired no less than thirty-five languages and dialects, in all of which he conversed with fluency.

#### OFF FOR THE AFRICAN LAKES.

Burton organized his expedition under the patronage of the Royal Geographical Society, chiefly by the request of Sir Roderick Murchison, its president, England's great geologist, who for many years had taken the largest interest in Africa and was specially anxious to induce an exploration of all its unknown portions. Mr. Burton's prime purpose, as expressed in his application to the society, was to ascertain "the limits of the Sea of Ujiji, or Unyamwezi Lake," and secondarily, to determine the exportable produce of the interior and the ethnography of its tribes. A large lake was known to exist in the interior and upon its banks the town of Ujiji was said to be located; this much information was long before obtained from the Arabic slave hunters, but no explorer had up to this time succeeded in discovering it. To accomplish this the society advanced \$5000 to equip the expedition, and Burton, obtaining a two years' leave of absence from regimental duties, was appointed to the command.

#### IN CONTACT WITH A WIZARD.

After a very tedious delay at Zanzibar a sufficient number of porters and asses were at length obtained and the expedition, 200 strong, set out upon the march westward toward the unknown region. Very slow progress was made, because of the many obstacles that interposed, chief of which was the fear exhibited by the porters, who had knowledge of the warlike tribes through which it would be necessary to pass. The main body, under Speke, had taken up

nce and moved ahead several miles to inspect the way, so that a junction formed until a march of nearly fifty miles from the coast had been made.

BURTON'S MARCH TOWARDS CENTRAL AFRICA.

As the journey increased this distance the porters and guards became less and less courageous, until arriving at Kuingani Burton saw the necessity of doing something at once to relieve their fears. Accordingly, he sent for a

*mganga*, or medicine man, whom he paid well for the utterance of an encouraging prophecy, the influence of which is invariably great among these people. This wizard appeared in due season and when Burton had collected his men to witness the ceremony the *mganga* at once began his mummery. The old man—which he proved to be—had a cloth about his head and a profusion of beads around his neck. From a bag, which contained the implements of his profession, he drew forth two gourds, one of which, a small one, was filled with snuff with which he choked his capacious nostrils till they blew with astounding resonance. The other gourd, of considerable size, contained the potential ingredients that supplied the means for provoking the future into materialization. After this receptacle was well shaken, two goat's horns were next taken from the bag. These were tied together by a mottled snake's skin which was decorated with little iron bells. With these horns he performed his incantations by directing their points towards Burton, the gaping crowd, and then himself, all the time swaying his body and uttering an unintelligible jargon, which he pretended was a language which ghosts alone could understand. Having thus performed for some time he at length gave the message he had elicited from spirits of the dead, and which was, of course, a favorable revelation as to the success of the expedition and a prediction that the porters would overcome all enemies and live to return in triumph to Zanzibar. This prophecy served an admirable purpose and sent the porters on their way with light spirits as well as with many declarations of their bravery, which, in the absence of danger, these cowardly people were always vaunting.

#### THE MURDER OF M. MAIZAN.

The pace of the party was now quickened until Kiranga Ranga was reached, where signs of hostility became apparent in the bold front presented by the natives. No open resistance was offered, however, but the porters ceased their boastings and marched along with many misgivings; three days after a new fear arose, when upon reaching an open country they found a well-palisaded village, out of which rushed a big party of warriors armed with spears and bows and poisoned arrows, and who took shelter along the hedges that lined the way, ready to begin an attack. The head man of the village was propitiated, however, and he furnished an escort to the next station, which was Madogo. Though the party was thus considerably augmented, as they came near to the village of Dege la Mhora the whole expedition was fairly thrown into confusion by a fear excited by the remembrance of a tragic incident that occurred at this place in 1845, and which made the village as much dreaded as a haunted house. It was here that M. Maizan, a learned Frenchman and pupil of the Polytechnic School, who had set out from Zanzibar to explore the lakes of Central Africa, well supplied with both provisions and instruments, was treacherously set upon and most cruelly murdered. He had been deceived into a false security by professions of friendship from the natives and upon invitation had entered the chief's hut. This sav-



of his arms and legs were first severed, and after mocking the sufferer for some time the chief whetted a knife before the unfortunate's eyes and then cut his throat, after which he wrenched the head from the body.

This shocking murder, though long before committed, was still fresh in the memory of these superstitious people, and they could, with the greatest difficulty, be induced to pass by the dreaded place. In fact, several deserted rather than trust themselves within the pale of the direful influence.

#### LARGE GAME AND MORE DREADED SUPERSTITION.

The route, for many miles, lay along the Kingani river, which abounded with hippopotami and crocodiles, for both of which the porters held a superstitious reverence, founded upon the fear which they entertained for them, and which prevented travelling by water even where the stream afforded an easy means of transportation, large canoes being readily obtainable. But the dangers which appeared to threaten from these water creatures were only a degree less than that which the porters experienced from leopards that infested every jungle, one of which seized a spear-bearer in the party and fatally bit him before his companions could frighten off the ferocious animal, so that Burton's resources were sorely tried in preventing a wholesale desertion of his men. Had not game been so plentiful and his prowess in killing rhinoceri, elephants, crocodiles, leopards, etc., so great, despite his care and persuasion, his force would have abandoned him before he had proceeded a hundred miles from the coast.

In addition to the superstitions, dread, and hostile natives that constantly threatened the expedition, there were other obstacles no less serious, in which the terrible condition of the route was most conspicuous. In numerous places the thick grass and humid vegetation, dripping till mid-day with dew, rendered the black earth greasy and slippery. In as many other places there was a deep, thick mire interlaced with tree roots through a dense jungle and forest, over barrens of stunted mimosa, and dreary savannahs cut into deep nullahs. Bogs were also frequently encountered a mile in width into which a man would sink to the knees. In occasional places, especially after heavy rains, the porters would sink in mud and water to their necks, and through which the asses would be compelled to swim, with a man holding by the head and another by the tail to prevent the animals from drowning.

#### DISCOVERY OF TANGANYIKA LAKE.

All these difficulties were overcome by persistent labor and consummate ingenuity in dealing with a savage, ignorant and intensely superstitious people, but not by a retention of the original porters, even though they were slaves. Many of these deserted and others were discharged, their places being filled by the employment of men obtained from natives along the way. At last, after a very long and perilous journey, and at the expense of almost insupportable fatigue, the expedition halted on the high hills near the west shore of Tanganyika, and on the 13th of February, 1858, Burton discovered in the

LEOPARD KILLING ONE OF BURTON'S SOLDIERS.

(187)

dim distance a thin, blue streak of water which proved to be the sought-for lake. As he passed over an intervening hill upon his sight burst the glorious vision of this magnificent sheet of water, thirty-five miles broad and three hundred and fifty miles long, an inland sea large enough for the stateliest craft and with a surrounding country so fertile that it would, under proper cultivation, yield enough to support a large nation.

On the day following this discovery Burton procured several large canoes in which he skirted the eastern shore of the lake for many miles, and in which he also visited the village of Ujiji, where he saw a large bazaar, chiefly conducted by Arabs, who had found the lake in 1840 and made of Ujiji a principal slave-mart as well as depot.

For several days, weeks in fact, Burton interested himself in the fauna as well as ethnology of the country, and reports the region at that time as

#### THE QUICHOBOS, OR WATER ANTELOPE.

abounding in elephants, restricted to the bamboo jungles, and hyenas and wild dogs, but other game was exceedingly scarce. In the waters of the lake were many hippopotami and crocodiles, and he notes the appearance also of water antelopes, though these were by no means plentiful. This animal is found only occasionally in any part of Africa, its numbers seeming to be quite limited, though its location is not very restricted. It is a creature of singular habits, and of such rarity as to be seldom or never seen in zoological collections. Though not infrequently found browsing like others of the antelope species, it never strays far from water, and the facility with which it swims, dives and remains under the surface indicates that water is almost as much its natural habitat as it is that of the hippopotamus.



MANUSCRIPT SCENE IN UGHY.

## A WONDERFUL ISLAND.

While at Ujiji, Burton received information of a large lake to the north—a most improbable story—an error must be the Nile, he at once set about making preparations for the lake, and particularly making a circuit of its northern shore, the size and course of the outflowing river that had been the subject of inquiry for more than a month, however, before he was able to obtain information which to make the voyage, but a dhow and several very small boats were hired and the full strength of the expedition set out on its mission. After several days' sailing and paddling, and encountering natives along the banks, Burton espied a lake of considerable distance which he resolved to visit, though his guides warned him of a rash undertaking, declaring that it was peopled by a fierce race who killed and ate every human being that chance or chance brought to the shores. Nevertheless, Burton ordered the boats to proceed, and on nearing this mysterious land he had convincing proof of the danger encountered in making a landing, both by a positive refusal to approach nearer and the appearance of a horde of yellow-skinned men trooping down the shores armed for an attack. Concerning this island he writes:

"It is the only island near the centre of the Tanganyika—a low lump of rock, twenty or twenty-five miles long, by five miles breadth, with a high longitudinal spine, like a hog's back, rising from the water—here shelving, there steep, on the sea-side—where the cliffs, here and there broken by broad or narrow gorges, are a few feet high, in richness and profuseness of vegetation it equals the shores of the Tanganyika, and in parts it appears almost insurmountable. Marines dare not disembark on Ubwari (the name of the principal places; and upon the wooded hill-sides will be found, it is supposed to be, ever lurking in wait for human prey."

It is interesting in this connection to mention the discovery of the lake by the Portuguese historian, who was governor of Guinea, and a vast body of water in Central Africa and a large island in it. "It is a sea of such magnitude as to be capable of being sailed; and among the islands in it there is one capable of supporting an army of 30,000 men." This reference is undoubtedly to the island of Ubwari, and furnishes another proof of the fact, that in the earlier centuries Central Africa was better civilized world than it is to-day.

## IN CONTACT WITH THE CANNIBALS.

In skirting the shores of the lake near the north, Burton came into contact with several tribes of cannibals, the most notably the Wabembe, who are guilty of man-eating.

practices. They devour, besides men, whose flesh they prefer raw, all kinds of carrion, vermin, grubs, and insects, although the lands which they occupy are really wondrously prolific even with the smallest cultivation.

#### FLEEING FROM THE FLAMES.

As Burton came within a few miles of the northern end of the lake he learned, greatly to his chagrin, that there was no outflowing stream, as reported, but that instead the Rusizi river debouched into the lake, as he might have most reasonably expected, especially after seeing so much of the coast, and thus knowing that the lake occupied an immense volcanic depression,

about which the hills rose everywhere fully 2000 feet. His men now became importunate for better pay, while the coast tribes demanded greater tribute, so that circumstances made it advisable for him to return, a little more than one month having been spent in making a lake journey of less than two hundred miles.

#### DISCOVERY OF THE NILE'S SOURCE.

Burton took his departure from Ujiji on the 26th of May and started back over the route he had taken from Zanzibar, but after reaching Unyanyembe he made a detour to avoid some particularly hostile tribes and also with the hope of making other discoveries. Nothing of special importance occurred to the expedition until it reached the ferocious Wavinza country, which is some two hundred miles west of Unyanyembe, where, in addition to the excitement caused by a threatened attack from the Wavinza, a fire was started on the hill-sides where a profusion of dry grasses made the whole country almost a tinder-box. A sheet of flame seemed to dash down the hill-sides with wondrous speed, throwing tongues of flames high into the air, and seizing onto the forest trees climbed to their topmost branches. Many of the porters and slave-musketeers had to flee for their lives, which they saved only by leaping into the Malagarazi river, which fortunately lay very near the route.

Before taking his departure from Ujiji, Captain Speke had obtained Burton's consent to make a journey northward, and this trip, the particulars of which are not recounted by Burton, gave to the expedition a glory and success even exceeding that which was won by the discovery of the Tanganyika lake. As the particulars will be given hereafter, it is only necessary here to say that the result of Capt. Speke's journey northward was the discovery of Lake Victoria N'yanza, the principal source of the Nile. Burton was even savagely jealous of Speke, so that in his large work entitled "The Lake Regions of Central Africa," descriptive of his journey to the Tanganyika, he never mentions the name of Speke except in an occasional foot-note, invariably referring to him as "my companion."

#### BURTON'S JEALOUSY.

When, on the 25th of August, 1858, Speke rejoined Burton and made report of his valuable discovery, the latter received him very coolly and thus ironically describes the event:

"At length my companion had been successful, his 'flying trip' had led him to the northern water, and he had found its dimensions surpassing our most sanguine expectations. We had scarcely breakfasted, however, before he announced to me the startling fact (?) that he had discovered the sources of the White Nile. In was an inspiration, perhaps: the moment he sighted the N'yanza, he felt at once no doubt but that the 'lake at his feet gave birth to that interesting river which had been the subject of so much speculation and the object of so many explorers.' The fortunate discoverer's conviction was

CAPTAIN SPEER AND HIS BODY-GUARD.

(133)

strong; his reasons were weak—were of the category alluded to by Lucetta when justifying her penchant in favor of the 'lovely Proteus:

" 'I have no other but a woman's reason,  
I think him so because I think him so.

"And probably his sources of the Nile grew in his mind as the Moon had grown under his hand."

A more ungenerous thing could not be done than the part of an unjust aspersion; but to make the indignity greater, Burton's tract from the Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society. Macqueen undertakes to throw discredit upon Speke's discoveries are briefly these: Burton had been sent out in charge of an expedition which was expected to accomplish great results, as it did. He found it and in coasting its northern end he heard of another body of land to the north-east which he had a desire to reach, but was deterred from attempt by reports of hostile tribes that lay between, and also by indigent porters and guards that accompanied him. Finding himself lacking in courage to undertake the journey, Capt. Speke asked permission to proceed himself with the small force that he could induce to go, and with true heroism he set out and succeeded in making a discovery which once made his name famous. By this success Burton was excited to jealousy was accordingly as insane as it was unforgiving, and he did an act of rank injustice that has greatly dimmed his former reputation.

#### THE VALUE OF BURTON'S DISCOVERIES.

But the importance of Burton's expedition, even excepting that made by Speke, was very great, for besides exploring a considerable country and discovering Lake Tanganyika, much valuable information was obtained respecting the natives of Central Africa. As before stated, no man has ever penetrated the dark continent was possibly so well adapted to the task by his experience, hardihood and truly wonderful acquisition of languages. As a philologist—for making an expedition into Africa successful, as we would accordingly furnish us with an intensely interesting description of the tribes between Zanzibar and Lake Tanganyika, their dialects, customs, manners, superstitions; their industries, products, implements etc., which no subsequent traveller has improved upon. His views on the slave trade is no less interesting, though it presents some reservations and continuance, somewhat at variance with other writers. He declares that its total suppression is impossible, and also represents the slave trade as being not only necessary but even indulgent. He declares that they have a license equal to that which they very frequently require by the most barbarous acts and customs. Says he: "The serviles at Zanzibar have played their Ara

notable tricks. Many a severe lord has perished by the hand of a slave. Several have lost their eyes at the dagger's point during sleep."

Of the slaves born in captivity about Zanzibar he says: "They are treated like one of the family, because the master's comfort depends upon his slaves being contented . . . . The Arabs spoil them by a kinder usage. They seldom punish them, for fear of desertion. Yet the slave, if dissatisfied, silently leaves the house, lets himself to another master, and returns after perhaps two years' absence as if nothing had occurred. Thus he combines the advantages of freedom and slavery."

The most horrible features inseparably connected with the slave trade are those which concern female slaves. These command a higher price than males, for the reasons that they are more valuable for domestic purposes, less liable to desert, and, in shame be it said, they are valued still more highly because they can

#### AN ARAB SLAVE MASTER.

be put to abominable uses; for these base purposes, however, only the youthful, between the ages of ten and twenty years, are in request. In an equatorial climate females reach their maturity at about the age of thirteen, so that after twenty they begin to age rapidly, and at twenty-five they are what the French call *passé*. A century of the most active civilizing and Christianizing influence will be required to stamp out this evil practice.

On the 4th of March, 1859, Burton reached Zanzibar, and on the 22d he sailed for England, leaving to Capt. Speke a more important result in a subsequent undertaking, the accomplishment of which will form the subject matter of the next chapter.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### CAPTAIN J. H. SPEKE'S EXPLORATIONS.

ARCELY had Speke reached England, with Burton, when he began most industriously the enlistment of public sympathy, as well as the active interest of members of the Geographical Society, in behalf of his project for making a third expedition, which would definitely determine and satisfy all the world that the Victoria N'yanza Lake, which he had discovered on the 30th of July, 1858, was indeed the Nile's true source. As before mentioned, his claims to this honor had been violently disputed by Burton, who, besides throwing reflections upon his geographical astuteness (pardon the expression), had also laid against him, in several magazine articles, the charge of visionary enthusiasm. To reinstate himself in public estimation, and particularly to win the confidence of members composing the Geographical Society, Captain Speke delivered a series of lectures before that body, in which he gave a report of his surveys and his many reasons for declaring that the Nile had its source in Lake Victoria.

So well did Speke acquit himself, and so specious was the presentation of his project for making good his discovery, by showing a connection between the Nile and the lake, that a council of the Society was held, at which, by the motion of Sir Robert Murchison, it was decided to assist him in forming another expedition. A vote was accordingly taken upon the amount the Society would expend for the purpose, and \$12,000 were contributed; but nine months elapsed before the appropriation was made available. Besides this assistance, however, the Indian branch of the government aided him by a contribution of fifty artillery carbines with sword bayonets, 20,000 rounds of ammunition, all the surveying instruments that were needed, and a large assortment of articles, among them several gold watches for the Arab chiefs who had assisted him in the former expedition. Captain J. W. Grant, a brother officer in the Indian Service, who had before made a considerable exploration of Australia, asked and received permission to join the expedition, and was placed second in command to Speke. Shortly after this appointment was made, the Cape Parliament voted a further appropriation of \$1500 in aid of the expedition, so that means were thus provided for the amplest provision of everything needful to make it a success.

#### CAPTURE OF A SPANISH SLAVER.

Speke and Grant left London April 27th, 1860, and arriving at Cape Town July 4th, made a stay there of twelve days to enlist some Hottentots and



SPRIN AND GRANT SOURCES.

engage mules, so that it was not until August 17th that they cast anchor at Zanzibar. The latter part of the trip was enlivened by an exciting incident attending the capture of a Spanish slaver that, being laden with five hundred and forty-four newly-captured slaves, was en route for Havana. Our travellers were on board the English steam corvette *Brisk*, the officers of which, seeing the suspicious stranger, immediately put out in pursuit, and, as she was a slow sailer, soon overhauled her. Upon going on board, they found the slaves to be mostly women and children, who had been captured during war in their own country and sold to Arabs, who brought them to the coast and kept them half-starved until the slaver arrived. They were then brought off in dhows to the Spanish vessel, where for nearly a week they had been kept, while the bargaining was in progress, entirely without food. All over the slaver, but more especially below, old women, stark naked, were dying in the most loathsome atmosphere, while those that had any strength left were pulling up the hatches and tearing at the salt fish below.

The officers of the slaver were taken as prisoners back to Zanzibar, and their miserable captives liberated. It is doubtful if they were punished, as immunity was generally given such violators of the severe law against enslavement, through Arabic and Egyptian connivance at the infamous traffic, on which account lynch law was thereafter not infrequently resorted to against those found spiriting away unfortunate Africans. Many tales are told of slavers being caught, with heavy cargoes of negroes, who were treated as pirates and massacred on the spot, the captain sometimes being killed and his head nailed to the mast, or the vessel scuttled with the crew imprisoned in the hatches, after the slaves were liberated.

On the 21st of September, Speke's expedition left Zanzibar and crossed over to Bagamoyo, from which point, after securing the necessary porters and supplies, the march was begun for Victoria N'yanza.

#### A RHINOCEROS HUNT.

Nothing of special importance occurred until the expedition had proceeded over two hundred miles, and had reached the western borders of Ugogo, at which point eight of the porters deserted, taking with them as many mules laden with stores. This untoward event caused a delay of one day, to give opportunity for pursuit of the deserters, which time Speke and Grant further improved by going upon a rhinoceros hunt, the region being a favorite haunt for that large and dangerous game. Night being the most favorable time for such an enterprise, the hunters started out at 10 P. M. for the lagoons, accompanied by a guide and two boys carrying rifles. It was midnight before a position was obtained; but scarcely had Speke halted in a desirable place on the border of a lagoon before a gigantic beast loomed up before the rising moon, making his way leisurely toward the water. Our hunter crawled after the huge game until he was within a distance of eighty yards and in full view, when, with a well-directed shot, he killed the rhinoceros in its tracks,—

HORRIBLE EXECUTION OF A SLAVER'S CREW.

(139)

a thing which has very rarely been done, on account of the animal's g vitality and its armor-like skin, which will deflect a bullet if struck obliqu

Two hours later Speke saw two more rhinoceri approaching, at which obtained a shot, as they came thundering by him, but with no other appa execution than to bring one of them around with a loud "whoof-whoof sound very similar to that produced by a hog when alarmed.' Another might have been secured had not the boys who attended Speke, carrying s rifles, taken fright and ran away for the nearest tree.

---

▲ RHINOCEROS HUNT.

This ended the night's hunt, and early the next morning the men in camp were apprised of the result and sent out to bring in the meat. Before Speke's men could reach the carcass, however, the native Wagogo had assembled about it, and were tearing out and devouring, raw, the intestines. All fell to work with knives in a contest as to who should secure the most, and a savagely disgusting scene was the result. The men disputed and wrestled in the filth of the distributed remains until not a vestige was left on the ground; their bodies being covered with blood as they bore away tripe, liver, intestines, or more substantial parts, all eating as they ran.

## A BUFFALO HUNT.

The mules that had been taken by the deserter were recovered, and the expedition started on its way again, but nearly every day thereafter others deserted, until the 7th of November another halt of several days became necessary to give time to send to a sheik some miles beyond for additional recruits. This period of waiting was employed in another hunt, in which the game sought for was buffaloes, great numbers of which roamed the deep forests and grassy plains thereabouts.

Directly after starting upon this hunt Speke came most unexpectedly upon a herd of buffaloes. The animals were grazing in a grassy place

## A TOSS IN THE AIR.

distant, and before it took alarm he gave it a deadly shot. This was an auspicious beginning, though the end came nearly terminating with a double tragedy. A mile from the place where the rhinoceros was killed Speke discovered a herd of buffalo feeding in the tall grass on the borders of a dense wood. He approached so near and kept himself so well hidden from their view that he succeeded in killing four of them before they took alarm. The herd now scattered somewhat in their fright, and one, a large bull, turned and came directly towards Speke, catching one of the guides, who stood in the advance, and tossed him with a savage fury horrible to behold; a shot disposed of him, most fortunately, before he could complete his vengeance; but another

bull as madly tore after one of the gun-bearers and came fairly upon him as the nimble boy swung himself out of reach upon the bough of a tree. Circumvented by this escape, the bull bore down upon Speke, who had but a single

shot left in the gun he carried, and was within a yard of the hunter before he could fire. Good fortune also attended this shot, for the bull's neck was broken by the bullet. This exceedingly narrow escape was succeeded almost instantly by a charge from yet another bull that had been wounded by Grant. Speke had just picked up a gun dropped by the nimble carrier, who now sat secure on a bough, when down upon him rushed the mad charger. Speke stepped behind a small knoll and fired at his infuriated antagonist, but without effect.

#### THE BUFFALO TURNS HUNTER.

The shot, together with the heavy cloud of smoke from the discharge, confused the bull, so that, with a loud snort, he turned and made off into the woods, to the inexpressible delight of the now defenceless hunter.

## BETWEEN TWO FIRES.

On the 23d of November, Unyanyembe was reached, which Speke designates as the Land of the Moon. Up to this time the desertions had continued almost daily, until his force had been reduced to less than one-half its original strength; fifteen mules and donkeys had died, and more than one-half the property had been stolen. In addition to these losses, the travelling expenses had been extraordinary, on account of a famine which then prevailed along nearly the entire route. To add still further to his distresses, after leaving Unyanyembe, a deposed native chief, named Manua Sera, famous for his strategy and daring, and who had inaugurated a fierce war against the Arabs, obtained an interview with Speke, in which he sought to secure the active help of the explorer against his enemies. To have refused the request would have been to invite the hostility of this fierce guerilla, while to have consented would have been equally disastrous. He therefore made some specious excuses for delaying immediate action, particularly asking for time to recruit his greatly reduced force. While thus parleying, the Arabs reached the country in pursuit of Manua Sera, and these in turn requested the aid of Speke. He again made acceptable excuses, holding out, of course, the hope that he would join the Arabs when additional porters, who had already been engaged, should overtake him.

After passing Masange and Zimbili, Speke put up one night in the village of Iviri, on the northern border of Unyanyembe, and found several officers there, sent by Mkisiwa, to enforce a levy of soldiers to take the field with the Arabs of Kaze against Manua Sera; to effect which, they walked about ringing bells, and bawling out that if a certain percentage of all the inhabitants did not muster, the village chief would be seized, and their plantations confiscated. Speke's men all mutinied here for increase of ration allowances. To purchase food, he had given them all one necklace of beads each per diem since leaving Kaze, in lieu of cloth, which had heretofore been served out as currency. It was a very liberal allowance, because the Arabs never gave more than one necklace to every three men, and that, too, of inferior quality to what Speke gave. He brought them to at last by starvation, and then went on. Dipping down into a valley between two clusters of granitic hills, beautifully clothed with trees and grass, studded here and there with rich plantations, they entered the district of Usagari, and on the second day forded the Gombe Nullah again—in its upper course, called Kuale. Here Captain Speke met with a chief whose wife was an old friend, formerly a waiting-maid at Ungugu, whom he had met on a previous expedition. Her husband, the chief, was then absent, engaged in war with a neighbor, so the queen gave Speke such assistance as enabled him to avoid joining either the Arabs or Manua Sera, without inciting their hostility.





attended wives of the king and his brothers, and learned of the re obtained, of forcing the royal women to drink immoderate until they became too corpulent even to stand upright.

Rumanika was an unusually sensible savage, and most kind; progressive, he was no less superstitious than his subjects, barbarians,—perhaps his superstitions were assumed for a purpose. No other people or chiefs did Speke find so many ridiculous superstitions where the rain-makers were so influential. Rumanika claimed the throne by miracle, and his hold upon the crown, despite his brother Rogero, he also pretended was through the most aid and assistance of a spiritual force.

His superstitions and pretended supernatural powers, Rumanika showed Grant at his palace, in the most graceful manner, and he bestowed upon him knowledge which even the spirits who he did not give. In every respect the explorers were treated most liberally of everything that the country afforded being freely offered and requested placed at their command.

Grant had several audiences with Rumanika in his hut palace, and when they decided to proceed on their journey the king sent M'tesa, King of Uganda, to apprise that monarch of an intention. The two explorers, begging him to receive them kindly.

#### A GRANDLY SUCCESSFUL HUNT.

December, before leaving the Karague country, Captain Speke, in the immediate district in which he was encamped abounded with game. He took two attendants and posted to the foot-hills about Little

Taking up a position in a thicket of acacia shrubs, he sent a runner to beat the brush toward him. In a few minutes a large male rhinoceros lumbering through the brush until he was within a few yards of the hunter, who delivered a broadside from his Blissett rifle, which he fell off in a trot toward the beaters; but after going a short distance he was quickly disposed of by another shot. The natives then came to Speke, surprised beyond measure at what they saw, for they have never seen that a rhinoceros could be killed by shooting with a rifle. A crowd assembled to view the dead beast was a native who exhibited a scar on his abdomen and shoulder, which he declared were the marks he had received by a rhinoceros thrusting its horn through

At the same time a cry went up from several beaters that another rhinoceros had been killed in a thicket. Speke at once set off to find it. He followed as far as possible along a path made by the animals, with his two attendants in the rear. Suddenly he was confronted by a full grown young one close behind, which came "whoof-whoofing" toward him, and at the same time, he was compelled to push to one





## THE COURT OF M'TESA—HORRIBLE SCENES.

The country of the Wahuma lies north-east, but adjoining that of I and is bordered on the south by Lake Victoria. At the time of Speke it was ruled over by a king called M'tesa, who has since died. This monarch was the most powerful that reigned in the central regions, and he became greatly attached to the English, and gave encouragement as protection to missions that were afterwards established, his cruelty and its were absolutely horrifying. He exacted the most servile homage of subjects and punished with torture and death the slightest infractions of his punctilious rules. No one was allowed to approach him except in a grovelling attitude, and in his presence a wonderful circumspection had to be observed. Death was the punishment. Even his many wives were required to be critical in their conduct, so that executions were daily events, so common that little or no attention was attracted by them. His harem was kept

replenished by the payment of fines in the form of virgins, fathers, retain the favor, their young daughters feed the vicious attitude of royal beast case such came aft

## M'TESA'S CRUELTY TO HIS ATTENDANTS.

various usage—the virginity being doubtful—the giver was tortured to death. And when the king became tired of any of his wives, or the number became too great for his convenience, he ordered their execution, or if enraged inflicted the death penalty himself. His murderous propensity is well illustrated by the incident that when Speke presented his high blackness a rifle, the royal ruffian had it loaded and ordered his messenger to shoot the subject, merely to see, as he explained, if the gun would do what was claimed for it.

Although his savageness was almost inconceivably great, M'tesa received Speke and Grant with a favor quite as flattering as did Rumanika, and assisted on their assuming the most intimate relations with him. He went out daily with the explorers to see them shoot, in which he took an interest and delight, and for a long while regarded them as magicians having the

perform anything that they might have a mind to do; thus he both feared and admired, which gave them immunity from his wild passions and secured bestowal of his most generous favors.

To have the two travellers constantly near him, M'tesa ordered a splendid house to be erected beside the palace, and paid the most deferential attention to their

#### GRANT ON HIS WAY TO UGANDA.

its. Besides meat from his cattle, milk, fruits, etc., were ordered to be sent them in the most liberal quantities; the king sent them, also, pots of banana pombe—banana wine—every day, and personally seeing to it that such was furnished came from his own store, which was always of considerable age, and therefore esteemed as being more palatable, as are all wines.



woman, the four candidates passed before M'tesa and sat down before the palace, whereupon the potentate crossed over to them, and to another he sat down in the lap of each and bestowed upon them several vigorous hugs, at the same time crossing his neck and right with that of each of the girls, after which he retired and the four virgins assumed their positions among the three hundred. On this same day Speke says he heard the lamentations of four women being led from the palace to execution. The new had thus

before the departure of Speke and Grant from M'tesa's palace, K'yengo, informed them that, considering the surprising death lately occurred at court, the king, being anxious to pry into the matter, resolved upon a very strange measure for accomplishing that end, the sacrifice of a child by cooking, and K'yengo was detailed to perform this barbarous ceremony, which is described as follows: The king placed a large earthen vessel, half full of water, over a fire, and over its mouth he laid a bundle of sticks, whereon he lays a small child and a fowl side by side with them over with a second large earthen vessel, just like the first, and, to keep the steam in, when he sets fire below, cooks for a short time, and then looks to see if his victims are still living or dead. If they usually are, the omen is considered propitious, and the king proceeds upon whatever enterprise he may have been contemplating. After three months spent with M'tesa, Speke and Grant prepared to depart for the Lake Victoria, an event which both the king and his advisers regretted, for notwithstanding his incredible cruelties to his subjects, he was usually obsequious in his attentions to his distinguished guests, and, though the great influence which they exerted over him, to induce him to abandon his inhuman practices. In this hope they so signally failed that on the day of their departure one of the monster's wives passed Speke and her hands clasped at the back of her head and crying in a piteous manner. She was preceded by the executioner, who was not far from her. She loved to obey her king and husband, and in her loving attachment she was permitted, as a mark of distinction, to attend to the place of her death.

#### ON THE BANKS OF VICTORIA LAKE.

On the 1st of July, 1862, Speke and Grant took their leave of M'tesa and started upon a journey to the eastward, with the hope and expectation of finding an outlet of Lake Victoria, in which anticipation they were disappointed. The route, however, was beset by many obstacles, chiefly hostile tribes that harassed the expedition almost constantly, and sent several guards with the travellers. It was therefore necessary to divide the expedition, Grant being ordered to proceed at once to the king ruling Unyoro, which was also a large and very fertile terri-

ARMY'S BOAT CREW ALARMED



tory, whose capital was due north of Uganda, but whose kingdom extended also south to Lake Victoria, taking in the district of Usoga, which is a dependency. Messengers had previously been sent to apprise Kamrasi of the white men's intended visit, and replies were received from the king indicating his pleasure at their coming, so that with M'tesa's commendation it was believed the Unyoro potentate would furnish the expedition with whatever assistance might be required. Grant accordingly turned west to join the high road to Kamrasi's, while Speke proceeded east to Urondogani, which is on the western border of Usoga, a magnificent country abounding with large game. On the 21st he reached his destination, and to his joy found it to be situated on a large stream of quite seven hundred yards wide and flowing towards the north.

#### SPEKE CIRCUMNAVIGATING LAKE VICTORIA.

After a day's delay at Urondogani, in the absence of boats Speke followed up the stream about fifty miles, and to his infinite delight came upon Victoria Lake at Ripon Falls, thus, upon the assumption that the river he had thus found was indeed the Nile, proving beyond a doubt that its source was in this great lake. At Ripon Falls, Speke procured several canoes, intending to have a sail along at least a portion of its shores, but a native canoe filled with warriors sounded alarm drums and soon assembled a large force to oppose the expedition, which numbered only twenty men. Speke tried to conciliate the hostiles by offers of beads, rings and cloths, but these were rejected and an



at the river route was soon abandoned and the journey had to be  
aceforth on land.

several days' march, it was learned that Grant had been refused ad-  
to Unyoro, and had therefore started back to Uganda. Speke, upon  
this bad news, hurried forward, dispatching messengers in advance  
came up with Grant and heard from his lips the reasons Kamrasi  
expulsing him. It was found, by reports from the natives, that this  
le reception was due to a belief that the white men were cannibals,  
it all the subjects of Unyoro and to drink up all the waters; that  
l Grant each carried two white dwarfs on their shoulders, sitting straddle-  
to back, and who upon being given the order fly off to eat the people.

supersti-

reailed,

ce, that

country

ed dogs,

ge men

elibates

habita-

ie trees,

Grant's

reason

fear for

trange

equal

felt by

for the

l.

y fortu-

#### SPEKE'S LAST CONFERENCE WITH KAMRASI.

ppened soon after the reunion of Speke and Grant that Kidgwigia,  
end of Kamrasi's, who had met the expedition at M'tesa's palace,  
f their inability to enter Unyoro, so he took it upon himself to act  
sador to secure their reception by the king, in which kindly office  
led so admirably that the expedition marched through the country  
meeting any obstacles, and they were at length permitted to approach  
ious and superstitious highness, Kamrasi.

#### EXASPERATING ACTIONS OF THE KING.

difficulties encountered by the explorers in reaching Kamrasi were  
l as compared with the obstacles which were interposed to prevent  
rture. After being permitted to come within an hour's march of the  
y were forbidden to approach nearer until the king could consult  
horn, and through this species of divination determine if the visitors  
dly disposed. Three days were thus idly spent, but they were more

## FINENT.

e first meeting with the  
ng and autocratic poten-  
demanding almost every  
.rn. A very large number  
ests, but he still cried for  
pleased his omnivorous

After exhausting every  
eke and Grant at length  
nto giving them permis-  
they obtained canoes and  
drifted down the Kafue  
river, on which Kam-  
rasi's palace was tem-  
porarily located. This  
river is also an outlet  
of Lake Victoria, flowing  
northward until it emp-  
ties into the White Nile,  
some ten miles north of  
Kamrasi's palace. It  
was therefore Speke's  
ambition to follow down  
the river as far as navi-  
gation would permit,  
hoping to be thus brought  
to a large lake of which  
he had heard much as  
lying a hundred miles  
to the northwest. This  
rich Speke thought must  
ng Nile.

y strange sights met their  
les lined the shores, while  
livened the scene. Float-  
matted reeds so compactly  
e could walk upon them  
out to a thousand yards  
adi and Wanyoro people,  
engaged in fishing by

## ITION.

that indefiniteness which  
s, that the British Consul



black man, named Mohamed, who was gaily dressed in Egyptian regimentals. This Turk confirmed the report of Petherick's approach and offered Speke any assistance required, but his proffers were made for a rascally purpose, as was afterwards proved.

Speke felt certain, however, that Petherick was at Gondokoro, and, despite Mohamed's declaration to the contrary, hoping to lead him off in another direction, to a point much nearer, where he represented the Consul to be, the expedition was ordered to push on through the Madi country, direct for Gondokoro. Mohamed, seeing his ruse fail, next represented the great danger of passing through the Bari country with such a force as was then at Speke's command, and begging him to wait a few days and he would join him on the march, thus making their combined force too strong for the Bari to oppose. He thus cunningly induced Speke to remain behind and guard his stores while he made a raid upon the natives. Upon his return he still asked for further delay, until at length Speke, exasperated at the trick that had been played, resumed the march.

On the 13th of January, Speke again came in sight of the Nile at Paira, where he was overtaken by an advance body of the Turks, who pillaged the helpless villagers so remorselessly that the poor natives were left in utter destitution. To relieve their very pressing wants, Speke and Grant went upon a buffalo hunt, in which they killed several of this splendid game, and gave the flesh to the starving natives, who were most profuse with their expressions of thankfulness.

#### ARRIVAL AT GONDOKORO.

After spending two days in hunting, Speke was joined by the rear detachment of Turks, headed by Mohamed, and the entire body now moved on again, meeting with no other obstacles, though great fear was felt of the Bari, who are both numerous and courageous, and bitterly resist nearly all attempts to cross their territory. At length, on the 15th of February, 1863, the expedition marched into Gondokoro. Speke at once walked down among the shipping that lined the Nile's shore in search of Petherick, but had proceeded only a short distance when he beheld an Englishman approaching, and in glad transports they rushed toward each other. Speke's surprise was overwhelming at finding that instead of Petherick, the white man proved to be his old friend Sir Samuel Baker, who, with his wife, was then on his way also in search of the Nile's source. The two had a joyous interchange of information, and a sociable entertainment which lasted three days, at the end of which time Speke and Grant departed for home, via Alexandria, while Baker and his plucky wife continued on their journey to Central Africa.

On his return to England Speke was awarded the "founder's medal" for the discovery of the Victoria N'yanza in 1858, a gratification peculiarly great after the discredit thrown upon his claim by Burton. He did not live long to enjoy his honors, however, for on the 15th of September, 1864, he was killed by the accidental discharge of his gun while hunting on the heaths of England.

## CHAPTER IX.

### BAKER'S EXPEDITION TO THE NILE'S SOURCE.

coincident with the departure of Speke and Grant from Zanzibar for the Victoria N'yanza, Sir Samuel White Baker set out from England with the purpose of discovering the Nile's source. Baker was almost as well qualified for such an undertaking as Burton, whom he resembled in many respects. Being a man of large private fortune, he had indulged his propensity for travel and adventure, having roamed over a great part of India and Ceylon in pursuit of tigers, elephants and other large game, of which he had killed great numbers. In addition to this preparatory training for rougher adventure he had familiarized himself with several among others the Arabic language, which he acquired with great facility, and the Berber in 1861.

Another singular fact, he selected as a companion in this perilous enterprise his wife, a woman of great refinement and used all her life to the comforts and luxuries such as wealth supplied in her English home; but a man of extraordinary courage and indomitable energy, and so devoted to his heroic husband that no dangers could deter her when by his side. He selected to bear him company through all his perils and triumphs, and called herself a second Mrs. Livingstone.

His stay in Berber was prolonged far beyond his expectations, because he was unable to meet with in enlisting and organizing a necessary force of men, he did not obtain until he had reached Khartoum, so that it was 1862 before he finally set out upon his tropical journey in a

Weeks after his departure from Khartoum one of his most serviceable men named John Schmidt, fell ill of a fever and died directly, and a later one of the arms-bearers, a courageous Nubian, was killed by one of the wounded animals tossing and goring him to death. Two fatalities, occurring so shortly after the expedition had started, which bred much dread, who feared that so inauspicious a beginning would portend an evil ending, but his wife cheered him with many encouraging words. His melancholy soon ended, the last feelings of sombre anticipations gave place to an exciting contest that he witnessed January 15th between a monster hippopotamus which they had lassoed, much to their

regret soon after, when it came near destroying the boat, and would have done so had not Baker come to the rescue and killed it.

#### THROUGH THE HAUNTS OF CROCODILES.

The boats made fair progress until within fifty miles of Gondokoro, when the river became so shallow and the reeds so numerous that it was impossible to proceed further by oar or sail, so men had to be sent out with long ropes and drag the boats through, which made a most tediously slow progress, but afforded Baker some excellent sport shooting hippopotami and crocodiles, the latter being particularly plentiful. It also gave him opportunity to converse with the natives, and to familiarize himself with their manners and customs. In this way he came in contact with the Kytch, the Aliabs and the Shir tribes, who occupy the territory bordering the Nile between Khartoum and Gondokoro.

Owing to the obstacles which intervened, it was the first of February before Baker reached Gondokoro, and when at length he arrived at that miserable post his reception was most unfavorable. This place was the principal Central African station of the

#### BUFFALO KILLING BAKER'S ARMS-BEARER.

slave trade, and, as might be supposed, its population was composed of the most vicious elements that characterize such an unholy traffic. There were no habitations except miserable little grass huts and the ruins of an Austrian mission, but these had to serve as shelter for Baker and his wife for a considerable while, as he awaited the return of a Turkish trader whom he hoped to accompany on the return trip to the mid interior. While waiting here his men mutinied and sought his life, but were repulsed by his courageous onslaught





of Latooka natives, with which he started on his land journey for the Central lake basin.

#### AN ELEPHANT HUNT.

Baker had the good fortune to win the friendship of another Turk, named Ibrahim, who had made up a cavalcade to go into the Latooka country for ivory, and by accompanying him made himself secure against the possible attacks of the hostile natives. Together they travelled over the route, a distance of one hundred miles, which it took a month to cover. Arriving at

#### BAKER QUELLING THE MUTINY.

length at the principal village of the Latookas, Baker had to go into camp and remain several weeks to wait the coming of some porters whom he had sent back to Gondokoro for ammunition. To utilize the time he therefore decided to go on an elephant hunt, as many signs of their presence were observable within a short distance of the village. Accordingly, with a good guide and a few servants to carry the guns, he set out, and coming to a plain covered with long rich grasses, he was suddenly startled by a rhinoceros bolting out of a copse close to his horse's head, and plunging into another before he could seize his gun. He would have followed had not his attention been called away

by a shout from his servants, who reported a herd of large bull elephants browsing in a forest at the edge of the plain. Stopping short to locate the herd, he was delighted to see two large bulls bearing down toward him, less than one hundred yards distant. He dismounted to get a steady shot, but the elephants saw the Latookas and, taking fright, rushed off to join the main herd, only a short distance away. Baker soon mounted and dashed towards the elephants, but his horse stepped into a buffalo hole and fell hard on his leg. He fortunately extricated himself without difficulty, and, mounting another horse, rode at full speed toward the fugitive game, which had gained considerable distance and disappeared in the wood. After a quarter of an hour of hard riding he saw an enormous bull ploughing through the brush like an immense engine, tearing down everything in his way. The country was unfavorable for the hunter, on account of buffalo holes, and though approaching within twenty yards, he was unable to get a fair shot. Away they flew over ruts and gullies until the ponderous brute was chased to another open plain, when a ball was planted in his shoulder; though badly struck, the elephant did not alter his course or speed until another shot was put close to the first one. The animal now slackened, then turned about and made straight for his assailant, screaming like an infuriated demon. Baker put spurs to his horse, having urgent business in another vicinity, and as he was not pursued more than a hundred yards, made his escape. He prepared for another attack by taking a larger gun and starting after the wounded beast, but had gone less than a dozen yards when he saw a closely packed herd of eighteen elephants coming directly toward him; but as soon as they discovered him they broke off in another direction. In the herd he noticed an uncommonly large bull that was armed with an immense and beautiful pair of tusks; this one he determined to cut out from the others, and by shouting succeeded in scattering them; he now rode for the chosen one, but the elephant, seeing himself pursued, turned and charged so determinedly upon his assailant that his escape appeared for a time impossible; fortunately, again the elephant stopped, almost at the moment that he might have caught the bold hunter, and entered a thicket where a horse could not well follow. Baker went into the woods to find the herd again, and soon came upon the one he had wounded. It was standing in a painful attitude as if upon the very point of dissolution, but the moment its fiery eyes rested upon the hunter the maddened beast charged him again; another shot brought the elephant to his knees, but he rallied quickly, and lifting his great trunk and screaming with rage, he rushed after Baker, whose horse was now badly jaded. The race this time was more exciting than before, for, instead of stopping after a short run, the elephant kept its swift pace and followed for more than a mile, all the while gradually gaining, until the distance between pursued and pursuer was not more than ten yards, while the horse was nearly ready to fall from exhaustion. The cowardly servants, who were also mounted upon horses, were so mindful of



their own safety that they made no effort to divert the attention of the elephant, but ran as swiftly and as far away as possible. Baker was almost upon the point of despair; he knew that the climax must soon be reached, which would be hastened should his horse fall. In a moment of desperation he turned his horse aside, like a hare doubling on the dogs, just in time to feel the swish of the elephant's trunk as it grazed him, but the momentum of the great brute carried him by. Seeing his enemy now running in a new direction, the elephant broke off up hill, and on the following morning was found dead in a jungle not far distant from where he had abandoned the pursuit. The huge carcass was quickly attacked by the natives and their dogs,

#### DISPATCHING A VICIOUS BOAR.

and a truly savage and disgusting scene followed as they cut into the body, and soon were waist deep in the flesh and filth.

#### DETENTION GIVES OPPORTUNITY FOR MORE HUNTING.

The rainy season was now at its height, so that, even after the receipt of additional supplies, the expedition was unable to move further than forty miles, to the Asua river, which was now so swollen as to prevent a crossing; and, after a pleasant visit to Chief Katchiba, Baker returned to Latooka to await the return of the dry season. The country was very rich and game abundant, so that the delay afforded him excellent opportunities for indulging his passion for hunting. He killed several monster elephants, and met the lordly wild boar, which also haunted this delightful region; but they were not nearly so



numerous as the elephants, though the latter were more persistently hunted by the natives, on account of the damage they did to their growing crops. On one occasion, Baker fired the grass, expecting to drive out a herd of elephants; but finding none, was about to give up the hunt, when a large wild boar and sow sprang out of a hole directly in the path, the former charging him in the most vicious manner. The first rush being avoided, the boar turned to renew the attack just as Baker, by good fortune, shot it through the brain; but he failed to bag the sow, as it made off into the grass.

It was not until the following January, 1865, that Baker made another effort to proceed southward, at which time he secured the company of Ibrahim again. They met with no further detentions, and in due time reached Karuma falls, in Kamrasi's country, where they were most hospitably received by the old king, though they were not permitted to see him at once.

#### A DEVILISH GUARD.

After Baker received permission to enter the presence of Kamrasi, he was still treated with an affected suspicion, and was unable to secure the guides and porters that he needed on the journey to the lake he had set out to find. Three weeks passed without anything being done, Kamrasi all the while promising to give what was required on the "morrow," but really only holding the expedition to give him more time for begging everything that Baker possessed. At length, being exasperated by the king's excuses, Baker took heroic measures for securing the aid needed, and obtained an escort of about fifty of the most horrible-looking natives that the imagination can conceive. They were dressed in monkey and leopard skins, with antelope horns on their heads and cows' tails dangling behind, while from their chins there were suspended the bushy ends of cows' tails sewed together.

The expedition now moved up the Kafue river, but at a slow pace, on account of the shallowness of the stream, and also because of the dangerous illness of Mrs. Baker. But after a weary march of one month from Kamrasi's palace, Baker was brought to the banks of the Luta Nziga, and thus to a glad realization of his ambitious dream. It was the lake so often spoken of in story and legend, the true source of that wondrous river, the Nile, which so many had earnestly tried to explore for more than twenty centuries, but always with disappointment. In honor of the queen's consort, Baker called the lake Albert N'yanza, by which it is now known; and upon his return to England he was knighted for the discovery, while all geographers have since made the source of the Nile the twin lakes, the Victoria and Albert N'yanza.

Baker only coasted the Albert lake for a distance of one hundred miles, and then prepared at once to return home, taking his route overland to Gondokoro instead of following down the Nile, as he should have done. The return journey occupied almost a year, so that it was September, 1866, before he reached England and made his report to the Royal Geographical Society, which immediately awarded him the Victoria medal, as it had Speke, both sharing equally the honor of discovering the Nile's source.

## CHAPTER X.

### BAKER'S EFFORTS TO SUPPRESS THE SLAVE

LITTLE more than one year after Baker's return he published a book descriptive of his travels, in which he set forth not only the results of his private experience with the slave-traders, the horrors of the human beings, and his views as to the best means of suppression. To re-enforce his observations he drew from other African explorers, including Speke and Livingstone, in all of which the horrors of the slave-traders were pictured in such heart-appealing and graphic feeling in England was intensely excited. All the world demanded a suppression of the inhuman practices that characterized the slave-traders who afflicted Africa with unutterable woe. The Prince of Wales, by his active sympathies with the people, and made a trip to Egypt in conference with Ismail, the Khedive. An audience was obtained, and the prince plainly told the Khedive that the infamous slave traffic must be suppressed, either by the Egyptian government or some other power, and that England herself would see to it that the traffic should be suppressed. The Khedive, though undoubtedly profiting by the nefarious traffic, was in sympathy with the general desire, and promised to effect its accomplishment. Preliminary thereto, he ordered the Soudan, in order to bring that immense district, in which the treatment of the natives by Turks and Arabs was most oppressive, under his rule. To make his pretence the more plausible, he appointed Samuel Baker, and, after a protracted interview, placed him at the head of an expedition which should be dispatched to the Nile basin for the purpose of arresting all the slave-traders found therein, and also of establishing garrison posts throughout the district that would secure the natives against all further prosecution of the slave traffic.

The appointment of Baker, with almost autocratic powers, and the severest penalties against dealers in human beings in Central Africa, was the first pronounced action ever taken by the Egyptian government, and which, with Baker's failure to effect radical results, has since been continued under General Gordon, who perished at Khartoum, and the present Bey, who still holds the governorship of the Soudan regions, as will hereafter be described.





## THE APPOINTMENT OF BAKER'S EXPEDITION.

The expedition fitted out by the Egyptian government under Baker's instructions was certainly most imposing, involving, as it did, an enormous expense of treasure and a large contingent of men. Among other things that had been provided with such a liberal hand, were three steamers and two life-boats, specially built in England with the view of navigating the Nile. These vessels were fitted with engines of the best construction, and were built in sections to make them easy of transport across the Nubian desert, or by places in the river not navigable.

In addition to the steamers were steam saw mills, with a boiler that weighed eight hundred pounds in one piece—all of which would have to be transported by camels for several hundred miles across the Nubian desert, and by boats and camels alternately from Alexandria to Gondokoro, a distance of about three thousand miles.

The English party accompanying the expedition consisted of Sir Samuel Baker and his courageous wife; Lieutenant Julian A. Baker, R. N.; Edward Higginbotham, civil engineer; Mr. Wood, secretary; Dr. Joseph Gedge, physician; Mr. Marcopolo, chief store-keeper and interpreter; Mr. McWilliam, chief engineer of steamers; Mr. Jarvis, chief shipwright; together with Messrs. Whitfield, Samson, Hitchman and Ramsdell. Forty-five thousand dollars were expended in stores, calculated to last the expedition for four years.

Six steamers, varying from forty to eighty horse-power, were ordered to leave Cairo in June, together with fifteen sloops and fifteen diahbeeahs—total, thirty-six vessels—to ascend the cataracts of the Nile to Khartoum, a distance by river of about one thousand four hundred and fifty miles. These vessels were to convey the whole of the merchandise.

Twenty-five vessels were ordered to be in readiness at Khartoum, together with three steamers. The Governor-General (Djiaffer Pasha) was to provide these vessels by a certain date, together with the camels and horses necessary for the land transport.

Thus, when the fleet should arrive at Khartoum from Cairo, the total force of vessels would be nine steamers and fifty-five sailing vessels, the latter averaging about fifty tons each.

The military arrangements comprised a force of one thousand six hundred and forty-five troops, including a corps of two hundred irregular cavalry and two batteries of artillery. The infantry were two regiments, supposed to be well selected. The black or Soudani regiment included many officers and men who had served for some years in Mexico with the French army under Marshal Bazaine. The Egyptian regiment turned out to be for the most part convicted felons who had been transported for various crimes from Egypt to the Soudan.

The artillery were rifled mountain guns of bronze, the barrel weighing two hundred and thirty pounds, and throwing shells of eight and a quarter pounds. The authorities at Woolwich had kindly supplied the expedition with two





tion across the desert, two hundred and seventy-five miles, to Berber. At this place, another fleet of thirty-three vessels of fifty and sixty tons was built, which carried the expedition to Gondokoro, one thousand four hundred and fifty miles from Berber.

The trip to Gondokoro was full of incidents. The start was made in the month of February, with so many sail-boats that the Nile was covered, and for miles, as boat straggled behind boat, strung out until those in the rear could not be seen by those in the rear.

One of the first incidents that befell the expedition was the upsetting of a boat by the seizing of one of the men by a crocodile, which, despite the splashing of his hands, and the killing of the crocodile that had joined him, carried him under water and made away with the victim. Succeeding day a few days later, a crocodile made on the flag-boat a monster hippopotamus which smashed her paddle-wheel and cut the iron plates of the boat so that it came to grief. The boats were obliged to lay by for a long time. Baker was firing at the enemy, and at last returned to the boat. He was not finally disabled until a dozen balls had struck into its head.

SHILLOOK WOMEN POUNDING MAIZE.

#### SHOOTING GAME AND LIBERATING SLAVES.

The start for Gondokoro had been made at a very inopportune time, for the Nile was already falling and progress must be necessarily slow, as some of the boats drew more than four feet of water. After proceeding one-half the distance the vegetation so obstructed the river that it was impossible to proceed and a retreat had to be made back to the Shillook country, and there to escape the November inundation.

The water was soon receding so rapidly that the boats had to be pulled by long lines of men across the vegetable obstructions; in fact it became almost dry-land boating, for every few miles the cables were run out and a long line of men would seize them and force the boats across the barriers and into water again. Mr. and Mrs. Baker whiled away the tedium



n the natives and members of the expedition, which continued s and until the river had risen sufficiently to admit a departure During this interval, Baker devoted his time in directing affairs and in hunting, the country being fairly alive with large game, iches, several of which wary birds he succeeded in killing. The infested the reed-covered shores were a constant source of danger and beasts that had to approach the water, while occasionally hippopotami indulged their ferocious instincts. Baker reports that he witnessed the killing of a blind sheik by a hippopotamus while he was crossing the river with a companion in an ambatch boat. The animal arose under their frail bark and, without provocation seized both the boat and sheik in its enormous s and crushing them so that the boat was cut into pieces, while the poor soon died of his wounds.

Shortly before the time fixed for his departure, a sail was reported coming n the river, which was hauled to at the station and discovered to be n with 184 women, boys and girls, who had been captured and packed y under a quantity of corn to avoid discovery. These Baker liberated and the captain in irons to Cairo, while he confiscated the vessel as a slaver took it to Khartoum.

#### A FIGHT WITH THE BARIS AND CROCODILES.

After an exceedingly hard voyage of five months and twenty-two days the dition reached Gondokoro, which had been selected as headquarters, from h forays into the further interior might be conducted with base for supplies ly accessible. On account of the miserable huts which composed the town, tantial building had to be erected in which to store provisions and ammu- n, so that a considerable time intervened before the expedition could eed further. The Baris, who composed the native population in this region, : very hostile, and became so demonstrative in their vengeful designs that er was forced to move against them and to lead a night attack against : principal village twelve miles distant from Gondokoro, which resulted, of se, in the Baris' discomfiture and the capture of five hundred head of cattle. Savages were not the only enemies which they had to contend with, for crocodiles in the neighborhood were so numerous and ferocious that they : a source of great loss and constant danger. As the natives were so much he habit of swimming to and fro with their cattle, these wily creatures had always accustomed to claim a toll in the shape of a cow, calf, or nigger.

of Abou Saood's sailors were carried off on two consecutive days. One Baker's soldiers, while engaged with many others in the water, only hip , was seized by a crocodile. The man, being held by the leg below the :, made a good fight, and thrust his fingers into the creature's eyes; his rades at the same time assisted, and rescued him from absolute destruction; the leg-bone was so mashed and splintered in many places that he was red to submit to an amputation.

One of the sailors had a narrow escape. He and many others were engaged in collecting the leaves of a species of water-convolvulus that make an

CROCODILE TEARING THE ARM OFF A SAILOR.

excellent spinach; this plant is rooted on the muddy bank, but it runs upon the surface of the water, upon which its pink blossoms are very ornamental. The sailor was stooping from the bank to gather the floating leaves, when



he was suddenly seized by the arm at the elbow-joint; his friends immediately caught him round the waist, and their united efforts prevented him from being dragged into the water. The crocodile, having tasted blood, would not quit its hold, but tugged and wrenched the arm completely off at the elbow, and went off with its prize. The unfortunate man, in excruciating agony, was brought to the camp, where it was necessary to amputate another piece slightly above the lacerated joint.

#### SHOOTING ELEPHANTS ACROSS THE RIVER.

Crocodiles furnished great sport to the hunters as a partial recompense for their savagery and destruction, but other game also demanded and received attention, for elephants became so bold at times as to invade the town and make night attacks on the stores of grain, of which they devoured great quantities.

In the middle of November Lieutenant Baker started with some troops to convey corn from a distant village, but he had proceeded only a short distance when he saw a heard of eleven bull elephants approaching from the west. Riding back quickly he informed Sir Samuel Baker, who at the time was enjoying a pipe on the poop-deck of his diahbeeah. Not being prepared for elephant-shooting, he recommended his lieutenant to return to his troops, who would be wasting their time. A half-hour afterwards the elephants approached within four hundred yards of the camp, apparently unconscious of danger. Baker could not withstand the temptation, so ordering his favorite horse saddled, he seized two Holland rifles which carried a half-pound iron lead-coated explosive shell, and started after them. Several men were ordered to gain the rear of the herd, so as to turn them should they retreat, while others flanked to drive them toward the river. The brutes at first sight took to water, and Baker dismounted to fire when they should gain the opposite bank, on an island, which was less than one hundred yards distant. When they had crossed they found an unexpected difficulty, in the precipitous bank which they were unable to scale. But they fell to with their tusks, and began tearing down the bank to an incline; and while thus engaged Baker secured several shots, which had no other effect, however, than to tumble one of them occasionally back into the water half-stunned. After a while so much of the bank was torn away that the elephants began to mount, showing their bodies completely out of water. Effective shooting now began, but when the second animal had been killed the ammunition gave out, and the hunt ended. The elephants were now butchered and the meat divided among the men, with an allowance for the Baris, who, seeing so much flesh ready for distribution, came over and sued for peace, offering to seal their friendship for a fair proportion of the meat. The peace thus purchased at so cheap a price remained inviolate all the time that Baker continued in Gondokoro.

#### OFF FOR THE ALBERT N'YANZA.

Baker's original intention had been to establish a line of fortified posts, not more than three days' march apart, between Gondokoro and Albert Lake,



but his force of twelve hundred men was now reduced to five hundred. Of this number three hundred were left to guard the base of supplies at Gondokoro, so that he had only two hundred men with whom to make the advance south; nevertheless, with this small force he started, January 23, 1872, for the Albert Lake. The boats were loaded with necessary supplies, and the voyage up the river commenced. On the fourth day out they reached the first cataract, where a chief named Bedden had promised two thousand carriers to convey the boats—which were made in sections—and luggage to Lobore. But the old scoundrel had disregarded his promise, and insolently told Baker that his people had quit being slaves for the Turks and certainly would not enter the service of Christians. Travelling in Africa is always attended with the most provoking obstacles; Baker had learned this from a bitter experience, and was therefore not discouraged, though greatly angered, at Bedden's deceit and treachery. He therefore determined to establish a station here, and leave a strong guard to protect it and the boats, and then push on southward with a picked force of one hundred men.

Considerable difficulty was at first experienced in procuring guides, but when it appeared that the expedition must move without them an old rain-maker, apparently seventy years of age, visited Baker and offered to conduct him for the small compensation of a cow and what wine he could comfortably drink, a proposition that was promptly accepted. With the old rain-maker, whose name was Lokko, leading the way, the expedition moved forward without further detention until reaching Fatiko, which was one hundred and sixty-five miles from Gondokoro and the headquarters of Abou Saood, who was at the head of the slave trade of Central Africa.

#### A LIVELY DANCE OF NAKED VENUSES.

This place was reached before any knowledge of Baker's coming had been received by the old slaver, therefore he was wholly unprepared for his visitor. Baker saw active preparations going on for secreting the slaves, but it was too late. Abou Saood came out and greeted him in a most cordial manner, professing great delight at the visit. Baker, of course, knew what this hypocrisy meant, but he received the advances with a similar manifestation of friendship. At the same time, however, he desired to show the slave hunter that he had a fairly well-disciplined force, able to enforce such orders as might be necessary for the abolition of the nefarious trade which thrived at Fatiko. To do this, he had his soldiers go through certain military evolutions, scale the hill and give a sham battle. To add effect to the display, the band played several lively airs, which brought thousands of delighted natives to the scene. The band was composed of buglers, aided by cymbals, a bass drum and several small drums. This would not be regarded as a very deliciously symphonious aggregation in a civilized country, but it was irresistible to the Africans. The natives are passionately fond of music; and the safest way to travel in those wild countries is to play the cornet, if possible, without ceasing, which insures



passage. A London organ-grinder would march through Central Africa led by an admiring and enthusiastic crowd, who, if his tunes were lively, would form a dancing escort of the most untiring material.

The troops returned to their quarters, with the band playing rather airs, when women were observed racing down from their villages, and gathering in all directions toward the common centre. As they approached nearer, the strains of music were overpowering, and, halting for an instant, they assumed every considered the most graceful attitudes, and then danced up to the band. In a short time the buglers could hardly blow their instruments for the extraordinary effect of the female dancers. A fantastic crowd surrounded them, and every minute added to their number. The women were

naked;  
the effect of  
the crowd,  
being madly  
in musical  
trance, was  
extraordi-  
nary. Even the  
old women  
went out to  
and these  
were strapped  
to their mothers'  
and cov-  
ered with pump-  
kins, like  
tortoises,  
and talked about

#### BAKER'S CAMP AT FATIKO.

infatuated mothers without the slightest consideration for the weakness of their necks. As usual among all tribes in Central Africa, the old women were more determined dancers than the young girls. Several old Venuses considered themselves extremely ridiculous, as they sometimes do in civilized countries when attempting the allurements of younger days.

#### DESOLATING EFFECTS OF WAR.

Enquiry developed the fact that the country had been almost ruined by the war, and that the people, who had, generally by various alliances, despoiled the people of the country, and made slaves of nearly one-half the population. He heard of Baker at Gondokoro, and knew the purposes of the expedition, and had no doubt that by inciting the Baris to resist his advance and fight him instantly, he would be forced to renounce his intentions and return to Gondokoro. But the old rascal had miscalculated. The chiefs quickly tendered



! nature seemed glad, but here were the landmarks of war and desolated and deserted villages, fallow fields and poverty. When Kamrasi left a disputed inheritance to his two sons, Kabba Mero and Kabba ho at once began a bitter struggle for the succession. Rionga, Kamrasi's other and most bitter enemy, was still alive and as active as ever in the Unyoros. Abou Saood had in the mean time espoused the cause in turn, as it suited his purposes best, and plundered them all. There was incessant fighting for more than a year, during which time nearly all the country was destroyed, and many of the people were starving, and order and pillage ran riot. But the famished condition of the country without benefit to Baker, as it enabled him to enlist a number of the best irregular soldiers and to form posts that would open communication with the interior.

#### A VISIT FROM KABBA REGA.

Baker halted within a short distance of Kabba Rega's palace, and sent messengers ahead to communicate with the king; but after waiting in vain several

for an invitation to his capital, Baker broke camp, and after a journey of several miles through the desert came upon the plain which is situated between the high, undulating hills bounded on the north by a range of mountains bordering the lake of N'yanza, which is more than fifty miles distant. He called on the king directly after his arrival, and found him sitting on a divan in a large and neatly furnished hut. He was dressed in beautifully

#### BAKER'S AUDIENCE WITH KABBA REGA.

dark-cloth, striped with black; his person was also very neat, and his age more than twenty years. Baker explained to him that his mission was to take possession of the country, which would thus be annexed to Egypt, not only free all the slaves he could find, but also to break up the slave trade and give peace and prosperity to the country. To all these reforms Kabba Rega gave his assent and promised such aid as he could command.

On the following day the king returned the visit, accompanied by nearly





## ROASTING PEOPLE OVER SLOW FIRES.

After the departure of the king, Baker engaged several of the chiefs in conversation, that he might learn more of the practices of the slave-hunters, and the general difficulties with which the government had to contend. Several of these assured him that Abou Saood's people had been in the habit of tortur-

## THE FUNERAL DANCE.

ing the natives to make them reveal the places in which their corn was concealed. Throughout Unyoro there were no granaries exposed, as the country had been ravaged by civil war; thus all corn was buried in deep holes specially arranged for that purpose. When the slave-hunters sought for corn, they were

in the habit of catching the villagers and holding them down on the mouth of a large earthen water-jar, filled with glowing embers, until they were nearly roasted. If this torture did not extract the secret, they generally cut the sufferer's throat to terrify his companions, who would then divulge the position of the hidden stores to avoid a similar fate. It is difficult to conceive the brutality of these brigands, who, thus relieved from the fear of a government, exhibited their unbridled passions by every horrible crime.

Among other singular things which the chief related to Baker was a graphic account of the royal funeral that had taken place when Kamrasi was interred: When a king of Unyoro dies, the body is exposed upon a framework of green wood, like a gigantic gridiron, over a slow fire. It is thus gradually dried, until it resembles an over-roasted hare. Thus mummified, it is wrapped in new bark-cloths, and the body lies in state within a large house built specially for its reception. The sons fight for the throne. The civil war may last for years, but during this period of anarchy the late king's body lies still unburied. At length, when victory is decided in favor of one of his sons, the conqueror visits the hut in which his father's body lies in state. He approaches the corpse, and standing by its side sticks the butt end of his spear in the ground, and leaves it thus fixed near the right hand of the dead king. This is symbolical of victory.

#### BREAKING THE BONES AND BURYING VICTIMS ALIVE.

The son now ascends the throne, and the funeral of his father must be his first duty. An immense pit or trench is dug, capable of containing several hundred people. This pit is neatly lined with new bark-cloths. Several wives of the late king are seated together at the bottom, to bear upon their knees the body of their departed lord. The night previous to the funeral, the king's own regiment, or body-guard, surround many dwellings or villages, and seize the people indiscriminately as they issue from their doors in the early morning. These captives are brought to the pit's mouth. Their legs and arms are broken with clubs, and they are pushed into the pit on the top of the king's body and his wives. An immense din of drums, horns, flageolets and whistles, mingled with the yells of a frantic crowd, drown the shrieks of the sufferers, upon whom the earth is shovelled and stamped down by thousands of cruel fanatics, who dance and jump upon the loose mould so as to force it into a compact mass, through which the victims of this horrid sacrifice cannot grope their way. At length the mangled mass is buried and trodden down beneath a tumulus of earth, and all is still.

When the funeral rites over the body of Kamrasi were completed Kabba Rega ascended the throne, and succeeded to all his father's wives, with the exception of his own mother. This is the invariable custom in Unyoro. The throne is composed partly of copper and of wood. It is an exceedingly small and ancient piece of furniture that has been handed down for many generations, and is considered to be a cojoor, or talisman. There is also an ancient drum,

which is regarded with reverence as something uncanny; and the two articles are always jealously guarded by special soldiers, and are seldom used. Should the throne be lost or stolen, the authority of the king would disappear, together with the talisman, and disorder would reign throughout the country until the precious object should be restored.

#### THE VALUE OF FEMALE SLAVES.

Although Baker was not able to fully influence Kabba Rega against the iniquity of the slave traffic, he gained a conditional agreement from the king to lend his sanction to efforts for its suppression, which was purchased by the gift of a large number of presents. Baker, therefore, set about the release of all the slaves in the immediate region, which numbered about one thousand women and children. Efforts were next made to restore those stolen from Unyoro, for the return of which Kabba Rega was particularly anxious, as they were his own subjects. It transpired that a regular traffic was maintained between the traders of Unyoro and Uganda, in which young girls were made the object of barter. In Unyoro, a plump

#### THE ESCAPE FROM BONDAGE.

young girl was usually sold for a first-class elephant tusk, while in Uganda they could be bought for thirteen needles or a new shirt. Thus it was that girls were purchased in Uganda and then taken to Unyoro, to be exchanged for an elephant tusk worth in England \$100 or \$150. This was termed legitimate trade, but Abou Saood took a less expensive way of securing female slaves, for he made war on the people, and putting them to rout bore away all the female prisoners as slaves, first disposing of the males by merciless massacre.

Slavery of girls was, however, encouraged by the immemorial usage of fathers invariably selling their daughters to the highest bidder, who might use them either as slaves or wives. A large family of girls was therefore a source of revenue to the father, who disposed of them in exchange for trinkets or cows, of which latter usually twelve or fifteen are paid for a fine looking young girl.

After Baker had put into execution effective plans for destroying the slave



rade in Unyoro, Kabba Rega became less friendly and began to interpose obstacles to prevent their execution. Contrary to his promises he withheld supplies, and when complaint was made he would make many apologies and renew assurances of his good intention. For several days signs of hostility became so apparent that Baker strengthened his defences, and his act in so doing exhibited his knowledge of the treacherous character of the king. One morning Kabba Rega sent five gallons of cider as a present to Baker's soldiers, with his usual professions of friendship, but after drinking the beverage fully one-half the garrison were writhing in agony, while many were unconscious from the effects of the poison that had been mixed with it. Prompt administration of remedies by Baker prevented any loss of life, but it was several days before those thus affected were fully recovered. In the mean time Baker sent messengers to the king asking for an explanation of this act of perfidy, but they were murdered, as was also Baker's adjutant, Motonse, a faithful and efficient servant. At the same time, Kabba Rega's soldiers crept through the grass at night and fired at Baker, but fortunately without effect. This was the signal for battle. Baker sounded the bugle-call and quickly had his men under arms ready for action. Setting fire to the grass and shooting rockets into the thatch-roofed houses of the natives, he sallied out, and by the light of the many fires thus kindled, his trained riflemen mowed down the natives without receiving any harm in return. The fighting continued until after midnight, when the routed natives fled in dismay, leaving their town, Masindi, the capital of Unyoro, in ruins.

#### CUTTING THEIR WAY THROUGH TO FOWEIRA.

This sudden exhibition of treachery caused an entire change in Baker's plans, for he saw that an immediate retreat was necessary to prevent starvation of his troops, as it would now be impossible to obtain supplies in that region. He accordingly decided to evacuate his quarters at Masindi and proceed by forced marches to Foweira, eighty miles to the south, where Rionga had his capital, an alliance with whom was now a necessity. The fort that he had constructed was accordingly burned and the retreat began, though not with such precipitate haste as prevented removal of all the stores. The expedition had been materially reduced by desertion until it now numbered one hundred soldiers and seventy porters, who, in addition to carrying a load of fifty pounds to the man, had to drive before them seventy-five cows to serve as food. Besides, the grass was very high, serving everywhere as an admirable ambush for lurking foes, which it concealed in great numbers.

On the second day after the march was begun, the attack that had even before been expected took place, and thereafter nearly every mile was the scene of some bloody encounter. Spears were hurled with deadly precision from the tall grass, which hid the enemy from view, so that Baker's men were at great disadvantage. But they acted most courageously, and by firing the grass often drove the enemy out and then slaughtered a great number.



With the loss of a dozen men, Baker at length reached Foweira, which is on the bank of the Victoria Nile, where he erected a stockade and then set about building canoes in which to cross over to an island on which Rionga had his headquarters.

Fortunately, while these preparations were being made, messengers arrived to ascertain Baker's intentions in coming to the country. By these he sent some presents to Rionga, and explained his reasons for desiring an alliance with him. A reply soon came back, for Rionga was delighted at the prospect of an alliance with so powerful a force, and to show his friendship he sent Baker a considerable quantity of provisions, and begged him to cross over to his island, where he would receive him.

The canoes were now ready, and in them Baker and his party reached the island, where they were most hospitably received and every want provided for. Rionga met him with a frank, manly assurance of his regard, and forthwith proposed to exchange blood in order that their friendship might be irrevocably sealed. This noble chief was dressed in a beautiful cloak of gold brocade, which Baker had sent him as a present from Foweira, together with a new tarboosh and sky-blue turban, while upon his feet were well-made sandals. He was a handsome man, of about fifty, with none of the stiffness of Kam-rasi, nor the gawky bearing of Kabba Rega, but he was perfectly at his ease. With the natural politeness of a true gentleman, he thanked Baker for the handsome suit in which he was dressed, assuring him that without it he could not have appeared before him in a becoming manner, as the long-continued war of his brother and nephew against him had reduced him almost to poverty. He was well aware of Baker's repeated refusals to join in the struggle against him, and assured him that he fully appreciated his friendship. Rionga proved himself true and reliable, and has always remained the faithful ally and friend of the whites.

#### THE MAKKARIKA CANNIBALS.

Soon after his meeting with Rionga, Baker received reports that the garrison which he had left at Fatiko was in grave danger of an attack from Abou Saood, who had largely increased his force and resumed the slave trade. Baker therefore took forty of his own men and as many of Rionga's soldiers, at the head of which he marched with such celerity that he arrived at Fatiko before Abou had any intimation of his coming. The slave trader, however, seeing what punishment awaited him in case he fell into Baker's hands, assumed the offensive and made an impetuous attack; but in the savage fighting that followed Abou was routed, and half his soldiers and nearly all his officers were killed. Abou himself escaped to Fabbo, twenty-five miles east of Fatiko, where he again established himself. Here he collected a quantity of ivory, and then departed for the Makkarika country, two hundred and fifty miles distant, where he engaged a large force of these cannibals to assist the removal of the ivory and also to fight against Baker.

The cunning Abou was at no time idle, and so great was his influence throughout that region that nearly 3000 of the Makkarika cannibals enlisted under his standard, in addition to which a large body of Arab slave dealers

BAKER EXCHANGING BLOOD WITH RIONGA.

had arrived on the Nile who, it was expected, would lend him their aid. Horrible reports also came to Baker every day of the atrocities of the cannibals,







hunt, he resolved to participate with the natives, which gave them much pleasure, for they appreciated his gun, as they knew it was certain to secure for them considerable meat.

The natives, in their annual hunts, use a large net, or a number of nets, which are made fast successively to stakes so as to form a large quarter circle stretching across the country which they have previously selected to beat. They then form a circle themselves, more than a mile in diameter, facing the nets, and fire the grass to windward. In the high grass the net would be invisible until the animals, in trying to escape, would rush into it, when they were checked and speared to death by the hunters.

Everything was ready, and the men had already been stationed at regular intervals about two miles to windward, where they waited with their fire-sticks ready for the appointed signal. A shrill whistle disturbed the silence. This signal was repeated at intervals. In a few minutes after the signal a long line of separate thin pillars of smoke ascended into the blue sky, forming a band extending over about two miles of the horizon. The thin pillars rapidly thickened and became dense volumes, until at length they united and formed a long black cloud of smoke that drifted before the wind over the bright yellow surface of the high grass. The fire travelled at the rate of several miles an hour, and very soon, from an ant-hill which he had selected, Baker saw the startled game begin to move about. A rhinoceros was first to appear, but it was too far for a successful shot, and kept along an incline toward the nets; antelopes bounded by, and presently a lion and lioness leaped into view, but just as Baker was about to fire the head of a native rose in the direct line of aim. Beautiful leucotis, hartbeests, wild boars and antelopes were now running on every side, affording excellent shots, which Baker thoroughly improved until he had killed nearly a dozen of these animals without moving from the ant-hill. The natives killed many boars and antelopes, but the rhinoceros ran through the net as though it had been a cobweb, followed by a number of buffaloes and elephants.

#### THRILLING ADVENTURE WITH A LIONESS.

On December 30th, a week after the sport just described, another hunt was arranged for, which was attended with even greater excitement than the first, though the preparations were all the same. Baker had taken position on an ant-hill, and directly after the grass was fired a beautiful picture was presented, for they had surrounded an unusually large number of animals, which advanced slowly, as the pace of the fire was hardly more than two miles an hour. As Baker was firing with deadly effect upon a herd of antelopes, he saw a yellow tail rise suddenly from a water-hole not far distant, immediately followed by glimpses of an immense lion, which disappeared again in the grass, with its head in the direction of the hunter, as though approaching. Presently a rustling in the dry grass, within forty yards of his stand, apprised him that the ferocious beast was coming nearer; he had three guns with him, suited for different kinds of game, and seizing a rifle which was specially suited for lion shooting,

1  
1  
1  
1  
1  
1  
1  
1  
1  
1  
1



been arranged, for Kabba Rega had been deposed and Rionga was in full possession of Unyoro, which facts were communicated to M'tesa; with thanks for his very kind offer of assistance.

Baker had felt no little solicitude for Wat-el-Mek, whom he had sent to Gondokoro for re-enforcements, double the time he had allowed for the return having now elapsed. At length, on March 8, on the ninety-second day after their departure, he was rejoiced to see the advance-guard approaching, and forming his troops quickly, he went out to give them a military welcome. After an inspection of the men, Baker was annoyed very much by the fact that not a single head of cattle had been brought with them; a quarrel had taken place between Wat-el-Mek and Tayib Agha, the two commanding officers, a Bari village had been burned, and in a battle with the natives twenty-eight of the soldiers had been killed, their arms taken, and all the cattle captured. The ill feeling between the two officers was the cause of all their calamities.

There had been enough recruits brought from Gondokoro, however, to swell the total force to six hundred and twenty men, with which Baker strongly garrisoned Fatiko, Fabbo, and the stockade he had built opposite Rionga's island, at Foweira. Unyoro was now completely in the power of Rionga, and a route was opened from Fatiko to Zanzibar. Everything was in perfect order, so leaving Major Abdullah commandant at Fatiko, Baker gave him full instructions as to the government of Central Africa, and then departed with a small body-guard for Gondokoro, which place was reached without special incident on April 1st, 1872, the date on which his commission from the Khedive expired.

After turning over his effects to the government officers at Gondokoro, Baker secured a vessel and started for Khartoum. En route he overtook three vessels having on board seven hundred slaves, among whom the small-pox had broken out and the mortality was frightful. He hailed the slavers and was astonished to learn that the vessels belonged to Abou Saood, who had been to Cairo and so established himself in the confidence of the authorities that he could continue his nefarious traffic without fear of any unpleasant results; nor was this the only discouraging news which Baker heard, for he learned positively that ever since his departure from Gondokoro for Fatiko the slave vessels had been carrying their human cargoes directly on to Alexandria or the Red Sea, meeting with no opposition they could not easily overcome by bribery. He now saw that all his labors for a suppression of the slave trade in Central Africa had been without fruit; that the government, so far from rendering its aid to that end, had nullified its declarations and orders by refusing to punish convicted slavers, and by receiving them as worthy merchants at the Khedive's capital. Sick with disgust, he quitted Egypt and sailed for England.

## CHAPTER XI.

HENRY M. STANLEY.

LAKER'S return from his first expedition into Central Africa (in 1865) and his report of valuable discoveries made, and especially his claim to having found the source of the Nile in Lake Albert N'yanza, quickened public interest in African exploration, which continued to increase under the excitement attending the conflicting reports concerning the fate of Livingstone. Long periods elapsed between letters received from that distinguished explorer, which caused the greatest anxiety. At last, after an absence of direct news for quite two years, coupled with a seemingly reliable report of Livingstone's death, James Gordon Bennett, of the *New York Herald*, resolved to send out an expedition in search of the great explorer, to find him if living or to bring back his bones if dead.

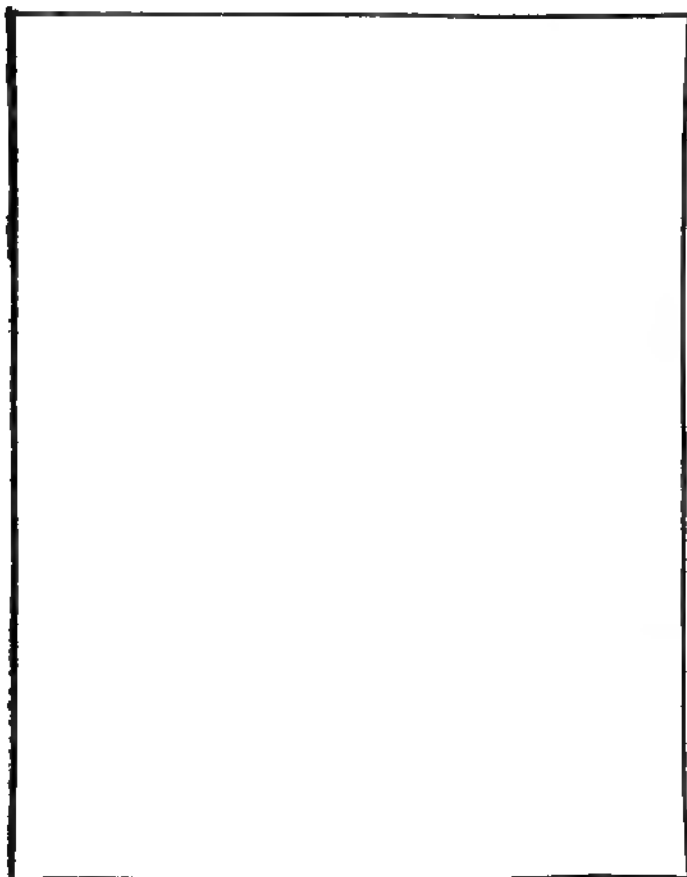
Coincident with the purpose which Bennett had thus formed was his determination to appoint Henry M. Stanley, who had at the time a roving commission as correspondent of the *Herald*, commander of the expedition. This selection was not made without a thorough knowledge of his peculiar qualifications to take charge of so important as well as dangerous undertaking, his fitness having been proved by his execution of other commissions of only secondary responsibility, where masterly abilities were absolutely necessary. A brief biographical sketch will better explain what special qualities and hardy experience he possessed.

Stanley has been regarded as an American explorer, but he is an American only by adoption, having been born in Wales, near Denbigh, in 1840. His parentage was obscure, but his real name is known to be John Rowlands, and it was under this name that at the tender age of three years he was sent to the poor-house at St. Asaph. Whether his parents were living at this time, too poor to care for him, or dead, he, himself, does not know; but in either event his patrimony was certainly that of extreme poverty. He remained at the almshouse of St. Asaph ten years, during which time he was given such advantages of schooling as the institution afforded, which is said to have been considerable. So well did he improve his opportunities that upon his own request he left the poor-house and directly after engaged as a teacher at Mold, in Flintshire; but after a year's experience, not entirely profitable, he shipped as cabin boy on a vessel bound for New Orleans. Arriving at that port he soon found employment with a merchant named Henry M. Stanley, whose name he adopted and with whom he remained until his benefactor's death, at the beginning of the civil war. Immediately after this sad event Stanley enlisted in the Confederate Army, but was directly taken prisoner. Securing a

parole he then volunteered in the United States Navy and afterwards served as ensign on the iron-clad *Ticonderoga*. Before the war was ended, however, he secured a discharge and became a war correspondent of the *St. Louis Democrat*, with which paper he continued for a considerable while after the war, being appointed as correspondent to accompany the Indian Peace Commission that settled the Sioux Indian troubles and located that tribe in the north-west, in 1866.

#### AT THE SCENES OF HIS EARLY BOYHOOD.

In 1867 Stanley went east and obtained an engagement with the *New York Herald* as foreign correspondent, and reported the Franco-Prussian war with



HENRY MORTON STANLEY IN 1876.

such satisfaction that he was soon after given a roving commission, and visited Syria, Persia, Egypt, and travelled through all the countries of southern Europe. After a return from Asia Minor he paid a visit to his birthplace and gave a dinner to the inmates of St. Asaph poor-house, at which he presided and made a speech of great felicity, during which he admitted that whatever success he had attained was due to the education and training received at that institution.

In the mean time, besides his travels in the far east, Stanley represented the *Herald* as correspondent with the British expedition sent to Abyssinia to obtain redress from King Theodore for outrages committed upon English subjects. A brief description of the war which followed will be interesting, as

well as germane to the general subject of this work, as it reflects, in a degree, the character of the people with whom Chinese Gordon had to deal, as will be hereafter related.

#### ENGLISH WAR WITH THEODORE.

Abyssinia, as before stated, has a history so thrilling and remarkable that it possesses all the elements of romance, even to the extent of the seemingly improbable. Being an adjoining kingdom to Egypt, like the latter





Abyssinia is of such antiquity that its earliest civilization has not been recovered to history, being so ancient that it fades in the vast distance down the avenues of the centuries. This mold of the ages, though glittering with the glamor that legend, story and superstition impart, aroused the interest of Stanley, as it did that of Cameron, Marco Polo, Bruce, Burton, and others long before; and when England declared war against the King of Abyssinia, in 1868, it was with a heart filled with delight and expectancy that Stanley set sail for the scene of hostilities as a representative of the *Herald*.

The events which led to a declaration of war, and the tragedies therewith connected, may be briefly described as follows: Between the periods of 1831 and 1855, Abyssinia was visited by a number of explorers, who returned to their respective countries with considerable knowledge of the kingdom, and which served to increase popular interest that had first been excited by the romances about Prester John, as already explained. This public interest prompted the appointment of Walter Plowden as counsel to Abyssinia by the British Government. About this time (1848) there was an internecine war waging between the predatory followers of Lij Kasa (latterly King Theodore) and the queen dowager, who, however, was acting as regent of her infant son, Ras Ali, in the government of the Dembea district. In this war, which Kasa waged for title and rulership, he was successful, and secured, as a concession, not only the governorship of the district, but also a wife in the person of the daughter of Ras Ali of Amhara, the de-facto Governor of Central Abyssinia. His ambition, however, not being fully gratified, a year after his marriage Kasa began a war, upon some frail pretence, against his father-in-law, whom he easily drove out of office, and then following his success with a subjugation of the other chiefs, in 1855 found himself absolute master of the whole country, and was crowned king of the kings of Ethiopia, taking the new name of Theodore.

Plowden, and another Englishman, named Bell, continued to reside in Abyssinia until 1860, when they were killed, as some assert, by King Theodore himself, but others say by insurgents in an emeute that came near plunging the entire country into another war. In 1862 England appointed Capt. Cameron as Plowden's successor, who landed in due time at Massowa with presents for the king. Though Theodore was not averse to the new appointee, he desired a recognition, in the character of a representative at the English court, and accordingly sent a messenger bearing a letter containing a request for such representation to that country. England, however, treated the request with such discourtesy as to even refuse to make any reply thereto, following a precedent set by France the year previous, to which a like letter had been dispatched. Theodore was so incensed at this indignity that in November, 1863, he ordered the missionaries in the Dembea district thrown into prison; and in January following Captain Cameron and his suite were similarly seized, and, being first subjected to many barbaric tortures, were confined in the prison at Goudar, but soon after were removed to Magdala.



## AN EXPEDITION TO RESCUE THE PRISONERS.

When news of this outrage reached England, the government, feeling itself culpable, sent a reply to Theodore's letter, conceding to his requests therein; but the messenger by whom it was transmitted did not deliver the reply until January, 1866, during which long interval Capt. Cameron continued to languish in close confinement. On final receipt of the letter Theodore released his prisoners, but almost immediately remanded them on account of a refusal of the English messenger to communicate a request to his government for further concessions. The Queen, being apprised of Theodore's perfidy, resolved to send an expedition to rescue her subjects. A military force was accordingly organized at Bombay, consisting of 4000 English and 8000 Sepoy troops, under command of Sir Robert Napier. This army landed at Annesley bay in January, 1868, and proceeded at once to Magdala, four hundred miles from the coast, where the prisoners were confined. Arriving before the fortress April 9th, on the following day the British were attacked by a large force of Abyssinians, whom, however, they repulsed, with a loss of 700 killed and 1200 wounded, while the English had only twenty of their number wounded. This victory was followed by the storming and burning of Magdala on the 13th, with a loss of only fifteen of the British. When the outer gate of the city fell and the English came pouring in, Theodore, fearful for his fate in the event of capture, placed the muzzle of a pistol to his mouth and blew nearly all the top of his head off, thus expiring instantly. This tragic event promptly terminated the war. The prisoners were released and restored to their country, and the army was at once sent home, leaving Abyssinia in the control of a chief of Tigre, named Kasa, who was in time deposed and the rulership assumed by Menelek, who had likewise risen from the plebeian ranks.

## STANLEY CALLED TO FIND LIVINGSTONE.

At the close of the war with Abyssinia Stanley resumed his duty as roving correspondent, and was in Spain, reporting the efforts of Don Carlos to secure the throne, when Bennett called him to take command of an expedition to go in search of Livingstone. Before proceeding upon this great undertaking he reported for his paper the opening of the Suez Canal, and visited, in the capacity of correspondent, Constantinople, Palestine, the Crimea, thence the east again, going by way of the Euphrates, Persia and India, and to Bombay, at which city he purchased supplies for the Livingstone expedition, and then sailed for Zanzibar, October 12th, 1870, which he reached after a voyage of thirty-seven days.

## THE ENLISTMENT OF AN ESCORT AND PORTERS.

Stanley was well received by the American consul at Zanzibar, who gave him a room in his own house and seemed to take delight in ministering to his needs. He had engaged one man, Wm. L. Farquhar, on the barque *Polly*, to accompany him into Africa, but, with this single exception, he had to enlist his force at Zanzibar. John Shaw, an Englishman, was found adrift in

in port, and, upon his application, was enlisted at a salary of \$300 per annum. It was desirable, however, to secure and equip an escort of twenty free blacks for the road. There were scores of such fellows offering, but they were very unreliable, and it was with no little pleasure that Stanley heard of several of Speke's "faithfuls" who would be glad to go upon another expedition. Five of these men were soon found and engaged at \$40 each per annum, and a few days later Bombay, who was Speke's head man, came to Zanzibar, and he, too, was enlisted and made captain of the black escort. Bombay succeeded in getting eighteen more free men to volunteer as "askari" (soldiers), men whom he knew would not desert and for whom he declared himself responsible. Their wages were set down at \$36 each per annum. Each soldier was provided with a flint-lock musket, powder-horn, bullet-pouch, knife and hatchet, besides enough powder and ball for two hundred rounds. Bombay, in consideration of his rank and previous faithful services to Burton, Speke and Grant, was engaged at \$80 a year, half that sum in advance, and a good muzzle-loading rifle, a pistol, a knife and a hatchet were also presented to him.

Two boats were purchased from the American consul for \$120, one of which would carry twelve men and the other half as many. These boats were stripped, their boards and tarred canvas substituted, as a much lighter material and liable to leakage or rupture, being intended only for crossing streams navigating rivers and lakes. Twenty donkeys were purchased, and a cart constructed, eighteen inches wide and five feet long, to carry the narrow ammunition boxes along the goat paths.

When his purchases were all completed, Stanley found materials aggregating a weight of six tons, nearly all of which had to be carried to the centre of Africa on the shoulders of men; and for this purpose one hundred and sixty carriers had to be engaged at Bagamoyo, situated on the mainland, across from the island of Zanzibar.

Twenty-eight days after his arrival in Zanzibar, Stanley was ready to start on his search for Livingstone, but before departing the Sultan gave him an audience, at which royal letters were prepared by his Highness commending Stanley to the gracious favor of all Arabs whom he might meet. The Sultan gave him a beautiful horse, and an American merchant at Zanzibar added to her, a fine blooded animal worth \$500. But when everything was ready for the dhow that was to ferry the expedition to Bagamoyo was on the point of sailing, it was discovered that Farquhar and Shaw were missing; a long search finally revealed them in a beastly state of intoxication at one of the tavern-shops in a quiet corner of the town, and they had to be led down to the boat.

#### THE HIPPOPOTAMI'S HAUNTS.

The expedition reached Bagamoyo on February 6th, 1871, but here most annoying delays occurred by reason of the numerous false promises made by the agents whom Stanley employed to engage carriers for him. He did not





was so annoyed at length that he turned loose a watch dog which he had brought with him from Bombay, to disperse the crowds that surrounded his tent, and a most effective expedient it proved to be.

#### JUNGLES, SLAVES AND AFRICAN BEAUTIES.

From Rosako the road changed suddenly to a narrow goat-path, on account of an extremely thick jungle which covered a very large district, and at places it was almost impossible for the pack-animals to move through. Numerous halts were necessary to rearrange the packs on the donkeys, which so frequently shifted by being caught by wait-a-bit thorns that extended across the way. On April 1st, the fine horse presented to Stanley by the Sultan was taken severely ill from the effects of bites of the tsetse fly, and died after a few hours of intense suffering. Fifteen hours later the other horse met with a like fate, added to which losses ten of Stanley's best men were stricken with fever, while all the porters were so nearly exhausted that it was impossible to make greater progress than five miles a day.

On the 18th of April they met a chained slave-gang, bound east. The slaves did not appear to be in the least down-hearted; on the contrary, they seemed imbued with the philosophic jollity of the happy servant of Martin Chuzzlewit. Except for their chains, it would have been difficult to discover master from slave; the physiognomic traits were alike—the mild benignity with which they regarded Stanley's party was equally visible on all faces. The chains were ponderous, they might

#### A BELLE OF KISEMO.

have held elephants captive; but as the slaves carried nothing but themselves, their weight was not insupportable.

The expedition encamped one evening at a prettily situated village, named Kisemo. The district was extremely populous, there being five villages in a



many miles, each fortified by stakes and thorny abattis. The women are famed for their extraordinary natural development, and their expression in brass wire, which adorns their waists and their less attractive brothers are content with such adornments and split ears. A more comical picture is seldom presented than these highly-dressed females with the magnificent developments, gazing at herself in a looking-glass, or engaged in the homely and slow grinding of corn for herself and family. The grinding apparatus consists of two portions: one a thick pole of hard wood, about six feet long for a pestle; the other, a capacious wooden mortar, three feet in diameter. The swaying motion of the women in handling this pestle presents a ludicrous picture.

#### TIDINGS OF LIVINGSTONE.

A caravan, which had been making up for lost time by travelling for several days, was come up with at the village of Muhalleh; several of the men were fallen sick, so that the caravan went into camp here to await the arrival of a medicine chest. During a two days' encampment at this village met an Arab trader, bound eastward, with a large caravan carrying ivory and elephant tusks. This good Arab, besides welcoming the travellers with a present of rice, gave him news of Livingstone. He had been at Ujiji, and had lived in the hut next to him for two weeks. He was as old appearing, with long gray mustache and beard, just recovered from a severe illness, and looking very wan; when fully recovered, he intended to visit a country called Manyema, by way of

#### A WALLED AND CASTELLATED AFRICAN CITY.

The travellers now followed the valley of the Ungerengeri until the walled city of Simbamwenni was reached. This is one of the wonderful cities of Africa. It consists of about 1000 houses, and a population of perhaps 5000. The houses are entirely African, but are strongly constructed. The fortifications are in the Arabic-Persian model—combining Arab neatness with Persian strength. The walls are stone, pierced with two rows of loop-holes for musketry. The town is about half a square mile, its plan being quadrangular. At each of the four corners of stone guard each corner; four gates, one facing each side, and set half-way between the several towers, permit ingress and egress of the inhabitants. The gates are closed with solid square doors, made of heavy timber and carved with infinitesimally fine and complicated devices from which it is supposed that the doors were made either at the coast, and conveyed to Simbamwenni plank by plank; yet, in the communication between Bagamoyo and Simbamwenni, it is said that native artisans are the authors of this ornate workmanship, chiselled and carved in the same manner, though not quite so visible in the largest houses.

The Sultana, or ruler of this African city, was the eldest daughter of famous Kisabengo, who was another Theodore on a small scale. Sprung from humble ancestry, he acquired distinction for his personal strength, his power of harangue, and his amusing and versatile address, by which he gained ascendancy over fugitive slaves, and was chosen a leader among them. Fleeing from justice, which awaited him at the hands of the Zanzibar Sultan, he arrived in Ukami, and here he commenced a career of conquest, the result of which was the acquisition of an immense tract of fertile country. On its most d

#### CITY OF SIMBAMWENNI.

able site, with the river flowing close under the wall, he built his capital called it Simbamwenni, which means "The Lion," or the strongest city. In old age the successful robber and kidnapper changed his name of Kisabengo, which had gained such a notoriety, to Simbamwenni, after his town; and on dying, after desiring that his eldest daughter should succeed him, he bestowed the name of the town upon her also.

Stanley, after praising the country for its great beauty and marvelous fertility, says: "A railroad from Bagamoyo to Simbamwenni might be constructed with as much ease and rapidity as, and at far less cost than, the Union Pa

Railway, whose rapid strides day by day toward completion the world heard of and admired. A residence in this part of Africa, after a thorough system of drainage had been carried out, would not be attended with any more discomfort than generally follows upon the occupation of new land. The temperature at this season during the day never exceeded eighty-five degrees Fahrenheit. The nights were pleasant—too cold without a pair of blankets for covering."

#### A BLACK SULTANA'S REVENGE.

While passing Simbamwenni, Stanley was accosted by some soldiers sent out by the Sultana to collect a tribute for the privilege of a passage. He refused to pay anything, and sent back word that he recognized no right by which such a demand should be made. He heard nothing further at that time from the bold princess.

Five miles further on, a cook belonging to the expedition was arrested for stealing. This being his fourth offence, Stanley ordered him to be flogged with a cowhide over his jacket, a punishment which was hardly as severe as the thief deserved; and in order to frighten him, Stanley told him that he must leave the camp and get back to Zanzibar the best way he could. The man, thinking the order was given in earnest, bolted off and disappeared in the jungle. Stanley knew that the man must perish if he really attempted to travel to Zanzibar, and supposing he would come back, left a donkey tied to a tree, upon which he might ride and overtake the caravan.

Directly after this incident Bombay came riding up to Stanley and reported the loss of a gun, a pistol, an American axe, a bale of cloth, and some beads; he explained that he had laid the articles down while going to a stream for water, and upon returning found them gone, stolen, he declared, by the subjects of the Sultana.

The caravan was now obliged to stop, while Stanley sent back three soldiers to recover the articles, if possible, and also to find the culprit who had run off. After a search of two days the soldiers found the donkey and missing articles in possession of two natives, whom they took to the Sultana, where they were charged with murdering the missing man. This they strongly denied, but the Sultana believed them guilty and threw them into prison to await the next caravan going to Zanzibar, whither she would send them for sentence. The Sultana next ordered the three soldiers seized and placed in chains, and also confiscated their property, and declared she would detain them until their master should return and pay her the tribute she had demanded. The unfortunate soldiers were kept in chains in the market-place, exposed to the taunts of the servile multitude, for sixteen hours, when they were discovered by a shiek who had passed Stanley five days before. This man recognized the soldiers as members of the expedition, and sought an audience with them. After hearing their story, the good-hearted shiek sought the presence of the Sultana, and informed her that she was doing very wrong—a wrong that could only terminate in blood. "The Musungu is strong," he said, "very strong; he has got two

1

1

1

1

1

1

1

1

1

1

1

1

1

1

1

1

ose up so rank that Shaw took sick, and the labor of driving the ntirely on Stanley. The donkeys stuck in the mire as if they it. As fast as one was flogged from his stubborn position, prone fell another, so that the labor of extricating them was madden- lting rain, assisted by such men as Bombay and Uledi, who were d of the storm as the donkeys were of the mire. Two hours of nabled Stanley to drag his caravan over a savannah one mile and but barely had he finished congratulating himself over his suc- e was halted by a deep ditch, which, filled with rain-water from savannahs, had become a considerable stream, breast-deep, flow- to the Makata. Donkeys had to be unloaded, led through a tor- led again on the other bank—an operation which consumed a full

ollowing day another part of the swamp was reached, which was oss and from one to four feet deep; this was the sorest march expedition, and so serious were its effects that two of the carriers died, also twelve of the donkeys, and Stanley was brought to the grave from fever and acute dysentery.

4th they ascended a gentle slope to a village named Reheuneko, of four days was made, to rest and recover from the effects with which all were suffering. It was a delightful place, most eached, for another day in the swamps would have, no doubt, expedition.

, who had charge of the fourth caravan, had preceded Stanley t he sent back word to Reheuneko that all but one of his died and his provisions were almost exhausted. Upon learning rushed on to Lake Ugombo, where he met Farquhar and found t pitiable condition, his feet and limbs being swollen to frightful om elephantiasis, which made it almost impossible to move about tent. But this affliction was largely the result of his inordi- on, while the exhaustion of his supplies was likewise attribut- glect of duty, due to drunkenness. Shaw was no more reliable, orthlessness he added insolence, which Stanley was finally com- uke by knocking him down. Smarting under this punishment on, on the following night he attempted to assassinate Stanley, im his rifle passing through the pillow on which Stanley was ead. Being unable, as well as indisposed, to move further, his request, was left at a village in the Ugogo country, with plies and in charge of a kind old man.

#### AN IMPOSING ENTRANCE INTO UGOGO.

ow marched on to Chungo, where he joined a trading party of west, and twelve new carriers were engaged, so that the entire eased to four hundred souls, with flags, horns, drums, guns, etc.



making a most formidable caravan for Central Africa. They were now only thirty miles from Ugogo.

The entrance into Ugogo was the very counterpart of a circus parade; Stanley rode at the head, and as he came in sight of the village its swarming inhabitants rushed out to meet him, shouting with all the strength of their lungs. The whole village was soon before, abreast and behind his heels, lullalooing and shouting in the most excited manner; for Stanley was the first white man they had ever seen. From one village to another, which are in immediate succession and called Ugogo, the crowd kept gathering, until a furious mob of naked men, women and children, their bodies ornately tattooed, pressed upon the white man. "Hitherto," says Stanley, "I had compared myself to a merchant of Bagdad, travelling among the Kurds of Kurdistan, selling his wares of Damascus silk, kefiyehs, etc.; but now I was compelled to lower my standard, and thought myself not much better than the monkey in the zoological collection at Central Park, whose funny antics elicit such bursts of laughter from young New Yorkers. One of my soldiers requested them to lessen their vociferous noise; but the evil-minded race ordered him to shut up, as a thing unworthy to speak to the Wagogo! When I imploringly turned to the Arabs for counsel in this strait, old Sheik Thani, always worldly wise, said, 'Heed them not; they are dogs who bite besides barking.'"

A camp was made, and negotiations with the natives soon began. The quantity and variety of provisions produced in the country was positively astonishing, proving Ugogo to be one of the very richest districts of all Africa. The natives brought and sold milk, both sour and sweet, honey, beans, Indian corn, a variety of peas, peanuts, bean-nuts, pumpkins, watermelons, musk-melons, cucumbers, and many other kinds of vegetables. But the great Sultan of Mvumi, or ruler of Ugogo, was a most extortionate old relic of Arabic cupidity and autocracy, and compelled Stanley to pay a large tribute of cloth and beads for the privilege of crossing his country.

#### APPLICATION OF THE WHIP.

As the expedition continued its march, each village was emptied of its inhabitants, who ran along staring at the Musungu (white man) and frequently committing insolent acts, until Stanley's patience with them became quite exhausted. He writes: "Hitherto, those we had met had contented themselves with staring and shouting; but these outstepped all bounds, and my growing anger at their excessive insolence vented itself in gripping the rowdiest of them by the neck, and before he could recover from his astonishment administering a sound thrashing with my dog-whip, which he little relished. This proceeding educes from the tribe of starers all their native power of vituperation and abuse, in expressing which they were peculiar. Approaching in manner to angry tom-cats, they jerked their words with something of a splitting hiss and a half bark, and spitting at my legs. The ejaculation, as near as I can spell it phonetically, was 'hahcht,' uttered in a shrill crescendo tone.

EXPERIMENT CURIOSITY OF THE WAGGON.



They paced backward and forward, asking themselves, 'Are the Wagogo to be beaten like this by Musungu? A Mgogo is a Mgwana (a free man); he is not used to be beaten—hahcht!' But whenever I made a motion, flourishing my whip toward them, these mighty braggarts found it convenient to move to respectful distances from the irritated Musungu."

A march of three days brought the expedition to the Wahumba district, which is small, comprising only a few villages, and these not numerously inhabited; but the people are none the less remarkable. They live in cone huts plastered with cow-dung, and shaped like the Tartar tents of Turkestan. The men are remarkably well formed and handsome, having clean limbs and the most exquisite features. Athletics from their youth, they intermarry and keep the race pure. The women are as handsome as the men, and have a clear ebon skin of an inky hue. Their ornaments consist of spiral rings of brass, pendant from the ears, brass ring collars about their necks, and a spiral cincture of brass around the loins, used as an ornament and also to keep the goat-skins folded about their persons in place; these skins depend from the shoulder and shade one-half the bosom.

#### A MOMENT OF DREAD.

The village of Mukondoku, on the borders of Ugogo, is a large place, containing perhaps three thousand people. They flocked to see the wonderful man whose face was white, who wore the most remarkable things on his person, and possessed the most surprising weapons; guns which "bum-bummed" as fast as you could count on your fingers. They formed such a mob of howling savages that Stanley for an instant thought there was something besides mere curiosity which caused such commotion and attracted such numbers to the roadside. Halting, he asked what was the matter, and what they wanted, and why they made such a noise? One burly rascal, taking his words for a declaration of hostilities, promptly drew his bow, but in an instant Stanley's faithful Winchester, with thirteen shots in the magazine, was ready and at the shoulder, but he waited to see the arrow fly before pouring the leaden messengers of death into the crowd. They vanished as quickly as they had come, leaving the burly Thersites, and two or three irresolute fellows of his tribe, standing within pistol range. Such a sudden dispersion of the mob which, but a moment before, was overwhelming in numbers, caused Stanley to lower his rifle, and to indulge in a hearty laugh at the disgraceful flight of the men-destroyers. The Arabs, who were as much alarmed at their boisterous obtrusiveness, now came up to patch a truce, in which they succeeded to everybody's satisfaction. A few words of explanation and the mob came back in greater numbers than before, and the savage who had been the cause of the momentary disturbance was obliged to retire abashed before the pressure of public opinion. A chief now came up, whom Stanley afterward learned was the second man to Swaruru, the Sultan, and lectured the people upon their treatment of the "White Stranger." "Know ye not, Wagogo," shouted he, "that this Musungu is a Sultan



last caravan left Bagamoyo March 21, 1871; they arrived in Unyanyembe on the 22d of June, having been three months on the way. Considering the character of the country traversed and obstacles met with, this average of five miles per day was an uncommonly good one.

a victim to hypochondria, and so totally unfitted for travel that at his entreaties he was sent back to Unyanyembe, where a few weeks later he died.

The route taken by Stanley led through Ugunda, a well fortified city of three thousand people, and an elevated, healthy and highly productive country in which he expected supplies would be easily obtained. But the general fear of Mirambo made it difficult to open negotiations with the natives, and but for the diplomacy of Bombay, the expedition would have suffered from a scarcity of food. This cunning and most serviceable lieutenant finally gained the ear of the Manyara chief, and by the presentation of a quantity of royal cloths and brass secured not only the chief's confidence, but a liberal supply of honey, fowls, goats and vegetables. This confidence soon assumed

the air of familiarity by the chief and his principal men entering Stanley's tent, where their curiosity was regaled by a dose of strong brandy and a whiff of ammonia. They complained of the terrible strength of the white man's pombe and the chief

#### A GLORIOUS HUNT.

tumbled over backwards when he took a deep inhalation of the ammonia, to the very great amusement of all present.

#### A LAND WITH GAME ABOUNDING.

A day's march from Manyara brought the expedition to the Gambe river, along the banks of which were thousands of buffaloes, giraffes, hartbeests, zebras, elands, springboks, guinea fowls, floricans and other animals and birds. The temptation to take a hunt was irresistible, and Stanley went out for a day's sport, during which he killed two buffaloes, two wild boars, three hartbeests, one zebra, one pallah, eight guinea fowls, three floricans, and two large fish-eagles, off which the expedition feasted for two days. Instead, however, of the feast putting everybody in good humor, an opposite effect seemed to have

been produced, for when Stanley ordered a resumption of the march he was met by an obstinate refusal, and a mutiny, of which Bombay was the leader. Prompt and vigorous measures, however, served to quell it with no other resort to force than a punch of one of the leaders with a gun and threat to shoot the others.

Confidence returned after the subsidence of the mutineers, and Bombay came forward to embrace Stanley and swear perpetual allegiance. The country too was now much improved, and as Lake Tanganyika was less than one hundred miles distant, the spirits of every one appeared to suddenly rise at the pleasing prospects before them. On the 22d of October, Stanley went into camp on a clear stream of water called the Mtambu, at which lions, leopards and wild boars came to quench their thirst, and about which elephants and rhinoceri were very numerous. When driving the donkeys and goats down to water a black leopard leaped out of the adjacent jungle and fastened on the neck of a

#### A BOAR! A BOAR!

donkey. The surprise was so great that the men broke in precipitate retreat, leaving their herds to the mercies of whatever ravenous animal might wish to satisfy its hunger. The poor donkey stood his ground, however, and set up such a deafening braying that the leopard was more frightened than the men, and leaving its perch on the donkey's neck retreated into the thicket, nor did any of the wild animals, so plentiful thereabouts, show themselves to any member of the expedition. The braying donkey had cleared the country.

#### MONKEYS, A SAVAGE BOAR AND RAVENOUS CROCODILE.

A few miles beyond the Mtambu Stanley went to hunt in the beautiful park-like country, but found nothing for some time, until, when on the point of returning to the caravan, his attention was arrested by a troop of monkeys that had been startled in the high branches of a tall tree by the strange appearance, to them, of a white man. They chattered in the most boisterous manner and performed the most ludicrous acts, which afforded Stanley consid-



erable amusement until his gun-bearer, Kalulu, shouted, "A boar! a boar!" Immediately Stanley turned from the monkeys and saw, within a few yards of him, a reddish-brown wild boar that stood champing and showing its murderous looking tusks. Recovering his self-possession, he advanced within forty yards of the beast, and fired at his fore-shoulder. The boar made a furious bound, and then stood with his bristles erected and his tufted tail curved over his back. Another shot was planted in his chest, and ploughed its way entirely through his body; but instead of falling, the boar charged at Stanley, and received another bullet through the body, whereupon it dropped; but as Stanley stooped to cut its throat, it sprang up and darted off into the jungle.

Two days after this incident, November 2d, the expedition reached the Malagazazi river, which was considerably swollen by recent rains. There was no other means of crossing the donkeys than by swimming them over, while the men walked across on a large fallen tree, holding to the lariats. In making the passage one of the donkeys was seized by a monster crocodile, and despite its braying and struggling and the shouts of the men as they pulled on the rope to which it was fast, the poor creature was drawn under and carried away, to be devoured.

The following day Stanley met a party of Waguphas, who lived in a district south-west of Lake Tanganyika, from whom he learned the welcome news that they had just come from Ujiji, where they saw a white man who had marched from a far country, and being deserted by his carriers had come into Ujiji in a sick and greatly enfeebled condition.

#### THE FINDING OF LIVINGSTONE.

This news stimulated Stanley to put forth every effort to reach Ujiji at the earliest possible moment, as he felt certain that the white man was no other than Livingstone, and he was much concerned lest the great explorer might leave Ujiji before his arrival. Special rewards were offered the carriers if they would make more rapid progress, but the march was soon interrupted by a warlike chief who appeared with eighty warriors demanding a heavy toll for permission to pass his territory. As his stores were already very low, and there were several other chiefs between him and Ujiji, Stanley decided to make a circuit in order to avoid the toll routes, even though his arrival at Ujiji would be considerably delayed. Accordingly, a wide detour was made by following elephant paths in the jungle, selecting night as the most favorable time for journeying, because more likely to avoid discovery. By this means a safe passage was made, and on the 16th of November he entered Ujiji, having made the trip from Bagamoyo in one year and a month from the time of starting.

The entrance into the post was made amid the beating of drums, firing of guns and waving of flags, so great a noise being thus made that, weak as he was, Livingstone came out of his quarters to discover the cause. The servants of Livingstone preceded him to the place of tumult, and from these Stanley learned that the object of his search was near by; directly after Livingstone

himself came up, to whom Stanley addressed the first words—"Dr. Livingstone, I presume."

The joy of this meeting was inexpressible, and hence no attempt was made by either to measure his thankfulness in words. It was like the reunion of the prodigal son and his father, who feasted upon the fatted calf in order to place the stomach in harmony with the spirit, for after the first greeting Stanley and Livingstone at once indulged themselves at a rich repast with champagne accompaniment, a few bottles of which Stanley had brought with him in anticipation of just such an occasion.

#### CHALLENGED BY AN ELEPHANT.

In a previous chapter I have described what followed the meeting between Stanley and Livingstone, how the two conducted a joint expedition to the northern end of Lake Tanganyika, and on returning how they departed for Unyanyembe together. In this journey only one incident of interest is mentioned, which may be thus briefly related.

They had travelled several days, and after camping one afternoon, Stanley thought he would endeavor to procure some meat, which the interesting region where they then were seemed to promise. He sallied out with his little Winchester along the banks of the river eastward. After travelling for an hour or two, the prospect getting more picturesque and lovely, he went up a ravine which looked very promising. Unsuccessful, he strode up the bank, and to his astonishment found himself directly in front of an elephant, who had his large broad ears held out like studding sails—the colossal monster, the incarnation of might of the African world.

Kalulu, who was with his master, shouted, "Tembo! tembo! bana yango! Lo! an elephant! an elephant, my master!" for the young black rascal had fled as soon as he saw the awful colossus in such close vicinage. Recovering from his astonishment, Stanley thought it prudent to retire also—especially with a pea-shooter loaded with treacherous sawdust cartridges in his hand. As he looked behind he saw the elephant waving his trunk, as much as to say, "Good-bye, young fellow, it is lucky for you that you went in time, for I was going to pound you to a jelly."

They rested at Unyanyembe until March 18th, when Stanley divided his goods with the Doctor and set out on a hurried march for Zanzibar, where it was arranged that he should enlist a new company and send them back to Livingstone, with such additional supplies and goods as he needed. It was a sad farewell. A strong mutual attachment had sprung up between the two men, alone in the wilderness of Central Africa, and when the time came they found it hard to separate. Stanley was going home to the comforts and pleasures of civilization, while his friend would again plunge into the dark forests in search of that *ignis fatuus*, the source of the Nile. They walked together along the homeward route for some distance; then Livingstone stopped and held out his hand. The time to part had come. Words stuck fast in the throats





1

,

,

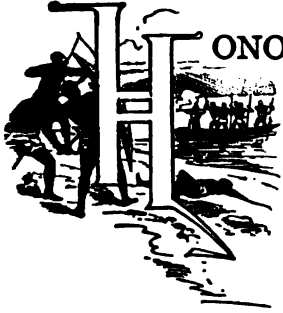
.

,

—

## CHAPTER XII.

### BURIAL OF LIVINGSTONE, AND STANLEY'S EXPEDITION.



HONORS rested lightly on the head of Stanley, for even while feasts and favors of a hundred kinds were being tendered him by his admirers, he put them all aside to respond to a call from the *Herald* for his services again, which took him at once to West Africa to report the Ashantee war. On his return to England again, in April, 1874, he learned of the death of Livingstone, and that his body was then *en route* to London for burial in Westminster Abbey. The news fell like a pall over all England, but upon none was the effect more depressing, perhaps, than on Stanley, who appreciated to the fullest extent the ambition and philanthropic motives that had actuated Livingstone in giving twenty-six years of his life to exploration in the interest of civilization, and who had used his best efforts for the amelioration of the debased but inhumanely wronged savages of Africa.

When the distinguished dead arrived in England, funeral arrangements were made to give to the burial a pomp equal to that bestowed on a dead king, and Stanley was selected as one of the pall-bearers. When the body was lowered into the grave, besides kings, queens, and the great potentates and master minds who have lent fame and lustre to England, Stanley turned away in a reflective mood, thinking of the energy, self-denial, aspirations and accomplishments of the great Livingstone, and how his life had suddenly terminated when the allurements of hope for ambition attained seemed most seductive. In this mood he conceived the idea of taking up the work which the beloved explorer had thus laid down, and with like aspirations pursue it to such an end as God would give him to accomplish.

Shortly after Livingstone's funeral Stanley was a caller at the office of the London Daily *Telegraph*, where, engaging in conversation with the proprietors, the subject of African exploration was introduced, in which Stanley expressed some opinions regarding the lake regions of that continent that excited so much interest in the proprietors of the paper that they asked him how he would like to attempt a completion of the labors left unfinished by Livingstone. The question immediately aroused him to a pitch of enthusiasm, and he exhibited such an intense desire to enter upon the undertaking that arrangements were directly made by the *Telegraph* and New York *Herald* to jointly equip an

expedition, and place Stanley at the head with a commission to explore the lake regions of Africa, to complete the discoveries of Burton, Speke, Grant and Baker; and, incidentally, to determine the true sources of the Nile, and the Lualaba, or Livingstone, rivers.

#### EQUIPMENT OF THE EXPEDITION.

The preliminaries having been agreed upon, he was not long in making his preparations. Applications poured in upon him from the adventure-loving spirits of Europe and America, begging permission to join the expedition; but

#### LIVINGSTONE'S GRAVE IN WESTMINSTER ABBEY.

he chose only three young Englishmen, John and Edward Pocock, and Frederick Barker. In the matter of dogs, however, he was more liberal, for he selected four, a mastiff, retriever, bull-terrier, and a bull dog.

There was no lack of money at his disposal, and he was thereby enabled to equip his expedition with everything that he might by any possibility require; and when he set sail on the 15th of August, 1874, for Zanzibar, he was better prepared for the work before him than any previous expedition. He arrived at Zanzibar on the 21st of September, and on November 12th, more than two hundred porters having been engaged, the expedition set sail for Bagamoyo.

When ready to start for the interior, the expedition comprised three hundred and fifty-six persons, among whom were thirty-six women, and when they marched out of Bagamoyo, on the 17th of November, they formed a line half a mile in length. Among the heaviest articles was a boat, named *Lady Alice*, forty feet long, six feet beam, and thirty inches deep. It was made in twelve sections, and afterward cut into as many more, to facilitate its transportation.

Stanley's experience, obtained on his previous expedition, was of such service to him that he pushed forward with great rapidity, being detained at few places, because he knew the character of the people along the route and had learned

#### STANLEY'S DOGS IN THE VILLAGE OF KAGEHYI.

how to avoid oppressive tolls without exciting their open hostility. The first serious misfortune that befell the expedition was in the death of Edwark Pocock, on the 17th of January, 1875, who succumbed to a virulent attack of typhus fever, after a very short illness.

#### CIRCUMNAVIGATING LAKE VICTORIA.

The expedition followed the route first taken by Stanley, until midway between Bagamoyo and Ujiji, when it took a due north course and continued in this direction until the south shore of Lake Victoria was reached, February 28th, at a village called Kagehyi. Here Stanley found provisions in great



which there was great depth of water and which permitted the *Lady Alice* to pass. Another island near by was distinguished as possessing a grotto which might be likened unto that in which Calypso, the enchantress, lived.

LOOK OUT FOR AN  
ATTACK.

Nothing up to this time had occurred to mar the pleasure of this most delightful voyage, although the shores were densely populated, with villages in almost unbroken continuity, and the people anxious to receive the white man, who had been heralded in advance. At length, however, upon reaching a bay that was bordered by a plain on one side and a promontory on another, in the north-east corner of the lake, Stanley met with a less friendly people, in pronounced contrast with others who spoke the Usoga language, whom he had met five hours before, and who, though naked, had much kindness of heart, and offered him supplies of sheep and vege-

STANLEY CIRCUMNAVIGATING LAKE VICTORIA.

tables in exchange for beads. After leaving these generous and peaceable natives a heavy storm compelled the navigators to put into a cove for safety. Scarcely had they come to anchor when canoes filled with warriors shot out from the bank and began making menaces with lances and bows. Finding that their challenges brought no demonstrations of resistance, they came nearer until one of the canoes, containing some fifty half-drunken savages, came alongside and was lashed to the *Lady Alice*. They at once seized upon many articles in the boat, and when their attempt to pillage was resisted they seized their spears, sang bacchanalian songs and began to fling stones, one of which came so dangerously near Stanley's head that he seized his revolver and discharged it rapidly into the water, correctly surmising that this would thoroughly alarm the natives. At the sound they beat a hasty retreat and offered no further molestation. A few days later, however, Stanley was hailed by some natives on shore, responding to which his crew was basely attacked with stones and the steersman badly wounded. Hundreds flocked about the boat and began rifling the bales of goods, to protect which Stanley fired his pistol over their heads. This caused the savages some alarm, but after running off a few yards they returned apparently in greater numbers and with most hostile intent. Stanley was therefore compelled, in self-defence, to fire upon them with his large rifle, unfortunately killing a half dozen, which put the remainder to flight.

#### A MESSENGER FROM KING M'TESA.

No further adventure was met with, and on the 2d of April the navigators arrived at the village of Kerudo, where they were received with the greatest hospitality. It was the intention to send messengers from this point to apprise M'tesa, King of Uganda, of Stanley's coming, but on the following morning six beautiful canoes, filled with men dressed in white, were seen approaching, which indicated that some news from the royal household was about to be communicated. On their arrival it was found that the canoes contained the king's messenger Magassa, and his escort of one hundred and eighty-two men, who had been dispatched with an invitation to the white man to visit the monarch of Uganda. This messenger was gorgeously arrayed for the important occasion; he wore a bead-worked head-dress, above which long white cock's feathers waved, and a snowy white and long-haired goat-skin, intertwined with a crimson robe, depending from his shoulders, completed his costume. Approaching Stanley, he delivered his message thus:

"The Kabaka sends me with many salaams to you. He is in great hopes that you will visit him, and has encamped at Uşavara, that he may be near the lake when you come. He does not know from what land you have come, but I have a swift messenger with a canoe who will not stop until he gives all the news to the Kabaka. His mother dreamed a dream a few nights ago, and in her dream she saw a white man on this lake in a boat coming this way, and the next morning she told the Kabaka, and, lo! you have come. Give me your





answer, that I may send the messenger. Twiyanzi-yanzi-yanzi!" (Ti thanks, thanks.)

By Magassa's request Stanley remained another day at Kerudo, to give for more ample preparation at the court to receive him, as the king had supposed that a realization of the queen's dream was so near at hand.

On the following day Magassa, in his superb canoe, led the way Stanley following. When about two miles from Usavara, they saw what estimated to be thousands of people arranging themselves in order on a rising ground. When about a mile from the shore, Magassa gave the signal the advance upon it with fire-arms, and was at once obeyed by a

#### RECEPTION OF STANLEY BY M'TESA.

musketeers. Half a mile off Stanley saw that the people on the shore formed themselves into two dense lines, at the ends of which stood finely dressed men, arrayed in crimson and black and snowy white. As he neared the beach, volleys of musketry burst out from the long lines. Magassa's canoes steered outward to right and left, while two hundred or three hundred heavily loaded guns announced to all around that the white man—M'tesa's mother had dreamed about—had landed. Numerous kettle and drums sounded a noisy welcome, and flags, banners and bannerets waved; the people gave a great shout. Very much amazed at all this ceremonious pompous greeting, Stanley strode up toward the great standard, near which stood a short young man, dressed in a crimson robe which covered an im

lately white dress of bleached cotton, before whom Magassa, who had hurried ashore, knelt reverently, and turning to the visitor, begged him to understand that this short young man was the *Katekiro* (Prime Minister).

WELCOME TO UGANDA, AND RECEPTION BY THE KING.

A dozen well-dressed officers came forward, and grasping Stanley's hand, welcomed him to Uganda. By these he was conducted to a court-yard, surrounded by a circle of grass-thatched huts, in the midst of which was a larger house where he was invited to make his quarters. He was soon besieged by all manner of questions concerning the earth, air, and the heavens, which he apparently answered to the satisfaction of the natives, for they went immediately to the king (M'tesa) and told him the white man knew everything. At this his Majesty rubbed his hands as though he had just come into possession of a treasure, and sent fourteen fat oxen, sixteen goats and sheep, a hundred bunches of bananas, three dozen fowls, four wooden jars of milk, four baskets of sweet potatoes, fifty ears of green Indian corn, a basket of rice, twenty fresh eggs, and ten pots of maramba wine. Kauta, M'tesa's steward or butler, at the head of the drovers and bearers of these various provisions, fell on his knees before Stanley and said:

"The Kabaka (king) sends salaams unto his friend who has travelled so far to see him. The Kabaka cannot see the face of his friend until he has eaten and is satisfied. The Kabaka has sent his slave with these few things to his friend that he may eat, and at the ninth hour, after his friend has rested, the Kabaka will send and call for him to appear at the burzah. I have spoken. Twiyanzi-yanzi-yanzi!"

The appointed time approached, and Stanley was prepared for the memorable hour when he should meet the foremost man of Equatorial Africa. Two of the king's pages came to announce that everything was ready. Forthwith issued from the court-yard five of the boat's crew on each side of Stanley, armed with Snider rifles. They reached a short broad street, at the end of which was a hut. Here the Kabaka was seated, while a multitude of chiefs, wakungu (generals) and watongoleh (colonels), ranked from the throne in two opposing kneeling or seated lines, the ends being closed in by drummers, guards, executioners, pages, etc. As they approached the nearest group it opened, and the drummers beat mighty sounds. The Great King of Equatorial Africa arose and advanced, at which all the kneeling and seated lines stood up—generals, colonels, chiefs, cooks, butlers, pages, executioners, etc.

M'tesa took a deliberate view of Stanley, as if studying him, while the compliment was reciprocated, since the latter was no less interested in the king. After the audience Stanley repaired to his hut and wrote the following: "As I had read Speke's book for the sake of its geographical information, I retained but a dim remembrance of his description of his life in Uganda. If I remember rightly, Speke described a youthful prince, vain and heartless, a wholesale

murderer and tyrant, one who delighted in fat women. Doubtless he described what he saw, but it is far from being the state of things now. M'tesa impressed me as being an intelligent and distinguished prince, who, if assisted in time by virtuous philanthropists, will do more for Central Africa than years of gospel teaching, unaided by such authority, can do. I think in him the light that shall lighten the darkness of this benighted region. In this man I see the possible fruition of Livingstone's hopes, for with his aid the civilization of Equatorial Africa becomes feasible. I remember the ardor

#### M'TESA'S CAPITAL AND PALACE.

love which animated Livingstone when he spoke of Sekeletu; had he been M'tesa, his ardor and love had been for him tenfold, and his pen and voice would have been employed in calling all good men to assist him."

#### THE SAVAGERY OF M'TESA.

Stanley's opinion of M'tesa was undoubtedly correct at the time, and it represents that monarch as having undergone a most remarkable change in losing his savagery by an adoption of the Moslem faith under the recommendation of Muley bin Salim, who, though a slave trader, was a devoted Islamism. This change must have been quite sudden, as, less than two

before Stanley's visit Colonel Long, an attache of General Gordon, thought on horseback from Gondokoro to the Uganda capital, and a week reconciled by M'tesa had served to impress the colonel with the belief that he was a savagely cruel man on earth. Long relates that the king practised water and, ceivable iniquity, and murdered both men and women—his wives, servants. Then soldiers—for apparently the delight which their groans gave him. spears

But that the effects of conversion to Mohammedanism were most beneficial and to M'tesa cannot be disputed, though no other traveller than Stanley had the opportunity of visiting him after his adoption of the faith. It was not long after Stanley's visit, however, that the king died, and whatever good influence he exerted as a convert was buried with him, for his subjects have since exhibited all their former savageness, as subsequent expeditions have proved.

Among other entertainments which M'tesa provided for the amusement of his guest was a sham naval battle between forty splendid canoes, each having a crew of thirty men, in which the most admirable manœuvring and skilful throwing of spears was witnessed. At the conclusion of the battle, in which several persons were injured, M'tesa showed that he had not lost his interest in firearms since Speke's visit, for he sent several of his servants out in search of hippopotami and crocodiles, anxious to see Stanley display his skill in shooting such large creatures. A crocodile was soon discovered, and the king, taking Stanley, ran quickly to the place where it was reported lying on a log, calling his women to come and see the white man shoot. The crocodile was found lying in an exposed position, and Stanley fired his Reilly rifle, carrying a three-ounce ball, with such precision that the reptile's head was half severed, which drew many rounds of applause from the king and his escort.

#### A BLOODY FIGHT WITH NATIVES.

Stanley spent a week with M'tesa in a truly enjoyable way, being shown the greatest deference, and even condescending to a discussion of the relative merits of Islamism and Christianity, and, out of respect for his guest, the king professed conversion from his former faith to the latter, but with what sincerity may not be told.

When at last, against many requests to protract his visit, Stanley determined to resume the circumnavigation of the lake, M'tesa supplied him with thirty canoes and a large force of men under the leadership of Magassa; but this fellow, who had been promoted, proved to be an obstinate, lazy, and most unreliable officer, whom Stanley had to frequently scold and threaten, and finally to send back to Uganda. The escort of thirty canoes, therefore, did not accompany him more than fifty miles, when he was left alone again to complete the exploration of the lake.

Nothing occurred to arrest their progress until the 28th of April, when hunger induced them to steer for an island in quest of food. When fifty yards from shore, a great number of natives rushed down the slopes, uttering fierce



ejaculations and war cries. As this was a common circumstance, Stanley thought but little of it, having no doubt that the natives would be speedily reconciled by the payment of a few yards of cloth and strings of beads.

As the boat came near the shore, several natives rushed into the water and, seizing it, dragged it about twenty yards over the rocky beach, high and dry. Then ensued an indescribable scene; a thousand black devils, armed with bows, spears and knotty war-clubs, swarmed around the boat, with threatening gestures, and yelling like demons. Stanley arose to confront them, with a revolver in each

#### ALONG THE SHORES OF LAKE VICTORIA.

hand, but his guides restrained him, as any resistance would have only invited a massacre. At length an old man, who was leader of the warlike host, was somewhat placated by a liberal present of beads and cloth, and through his influence the crowd was drawn off a little way for council. Stanley seized this opportunity to effect his escape; he ordered his men to push the boat again into the water with all possible speed. This scheme succeeded so well that the boat was out in the lake before the natives could reach the water. A fight now took place that was very lively for a time. Stanley fired his Reilly rifle four times and killed five men. A shot-gun loaded with buck-shot was brought to

bear on them next, by which several more were slain. This served to stop their attempts to reach the boat by wading, but others quickly manned a half-dozen canoes and shot out from shore to continue the battle. Two of these canoes Stanley sank with the shell-bullets from his Reilly gun. In the midst of the fight two monster hippopotami were observed advancing with wide-open mouths upon the *Lady Alice*, their anger having no doubt been excited by the booming of firearms. Stanley shot one through the brain when it was hardly more than a yard distant, and so badly wounded the other that it sank and retreated. The result of these two shots seemed to produce a panic among the natives, for they immediately relinquished the attack and the canoes were put back to shore with great energy. It was a narrow escape.

At the end of fifty-seven days the circumnavigation of Victoria N'yanza was completed, the distance being 1000 miles. As the boat came in sight of the camp at Kagehyi, a joyful shout was sent up, and when they landed Stanley was raised upon the shoulders of several men and carried triumphantly around the camp, while salutes were fired from all the muskets. This joyful return was sadly marred, however, by news of the death of Frederick Barker, who had died twelve days before. Six other members of the expedition had also fallen victims to dysentery.

#### A SEANCE WITH KING LUKONGEH.

Stanley had intended, after circumnavigating the lake, to return to his camp, and there securing other canoes move his expedition back to Uganda and thence to Lake Albert. Magassa's desertion, with the canoes furnished by M'tesa, left Stanley in an ill condition for resuming the journey, as canoes were not procurable at Kagehyi. The chief of the village, however, told him that canoes might be had of Lukongeh, king of Ukerewe, whose capital was fifty miles distant. On May 29th, Stanley set out to visit Lukongeh, whose palace he reached after a two days' journey, but found the king indulging in one of his royal drunks, so that three days passed before an audience could be had. When the old sot at length got on his legs and was in a semi-condition of sensibility, Stanley showed him a quantity of presents, consisting of rugs, blankets, cloths, beads, wire and copper ornaments, which he had brought to his majesty. These delightful things touched the king's heart, and in his exuberance he promised to furnish Stanley with all the canoes needed. But before suffering his visitor to go, he asked a thousand questions and begged for such wisdom as would give him power over the elements; and especially to renew the virility of his youth, which he had wasted in husbandly duty to more than a hundred wives. When Stanley confessed his inability to grant such requests, the king thought the refusal was due to his fears of not getting the canoes, and felt certain that Stanley would give him everything asked for on his return. He then endeavored to prove his own importance by declaring to Stanley his power to produce rain or drought at will, and that he made the most dutiable servants of hippopotami and crocodiles, the latter being frequently employed to steal women and bring them to him from across the water.



STANLEY'S CAMP AT KOGHEYL.

## FLAMES SENT TO DEVOUR THEM.

On the 7th of June, Stanley secured the loan of twenty-seven canoes from Lukongeh, and 216 men as an escort, with whom he returned to his camp, and on the 20th he dismissed the escort and embarked his regular force of 150 men, women and children in the canoes for Uganda. He led this flotilla in the *Lady Alice*, which was well loaded with fifteen persons and the ammunition.

Upon reaching the island where he had been attacked, Stanley put in for provisions, considering himself secure now against attack, but the people were still defiant, and being so numerous they surrounded him, and though afraid to attack at close quarters they harassed and prevented a resumption of the journey. He was thus besieged for several days and until the fortunate arrival of Magassa, who had been sent out by M'tesa with 300 men in search of him, for a purpose which will soon be explained. With this augmentation of his force Stanley started again, but being compelled to pass through a narrows, where the points of land came within fifty yards of each other, the natives laid in wait there to give him battle. As the canoes approached the passage, arrows, stones and spears began to fly, which were answered by a fusillade of firearms that killed hundreds of the fierce natives and sent the rest flying with a fear that the white man had sent flames to devour them.

The expedition reached M'tesa's on the 23d of August, and the king received Stanley in his council chamber with great ceremony and many evidences of friendship. Stanley took this occasion to inform him of the object of his visit, which was to procure guides and an escort to conduct him to Lake Albert. M'tesa replied that he was now engaged in a war with the rebellious people of Wavuma, who refused to pay their tribute, harassed the coast of Chagwe and abducted his people, "selling them afterward for a few bunches of bananas," and that it was not customary in Uganda to permit strangers to proceed on their journeys while the Kabaka (king) was engaged in war; but as soon as peace should be obtained he would send a chief with an army to give him safe conduct by the shortest route to the lake. Being assured that the war would not last long, Stanley resolved to stay and witness it as a novelty, and take advantage of the time to acquire information about the country and its people.

## MOVEMENT OF M'TESA'S GREAT ARMY.

M'tesa had resolved to open hostilities with his enemies, and to this end, on the 27th of August, he struck camp and began his march towards Nakaranganga, which was a point of land lying within seven hundred yards of the island of Ingira, which was the encampment and stronghold of the Wavuma. As the Wasoga, another powerful tribe, was in alliance with the Wavuma, M'tesa expected to engage both, whose combined armies would probably number 100,000 men. To meet these he therefore raised a force of 150,000 fighting men, to which must be added 100,000 women and children, who invariably accompany their husbands and fathers to battle. Thus M'tesa's camp must have numbered



quite 250,000 souls, being much greater than the Federal army that invested Richmond. Stanley had the pleasure of reviewing this immense force as it was put in motion towards the battle-ground. He describes the officers and troops in the following graphic style:

"The advance-guard had departed too early for me to see them, but, curious to see the main body of this great army pass, I stationed myself at an early hour at the extreme limit of the camp. First, with his legion, came Mkwenda, who guards the frontier between the Katonga valley and Willimiesi against the Wanyoro. He is a stout, burly young man, brave as a lion, having much experience of wars, and cunning and adroit in their conduct, accomplished with the spear, and possessing, besides, other excellent fighting qualities. I noticed that the Waganda chiefs, though Moslemized, clung to their war-paint and national charms, for each warrior, as he passed by on the trot, was most villanously bedaubed with ochre and pipe-clay. The force under the command of Mkwenda might be roughly numbered at 30,000 warriors and camp-followers, and though the path was a mere goat-track, the rush of this legion on the half-trot soon crushed out a broad avenue.

"The old general, Kangau, who defends the country between Willimiesi and the Victoria Nile, came next with his following, their banners flying, drums beating and pipes playing, he and his warriors stripped for action, their bodies and faces bedaubed with white, black and ochreous war-paint.

"Next came a rush of about 2000 chosen warriors, all tall men, expert with spear and shield, lithe of body and nimble of foot, shouting as they trotted past their war-cry of 'Kavya, kavya' (the two last syllables of M'tesa's title when young—Mukavya, 'king'), and rattling their spears. Behind them, at a quick march, came the musket-armed body-guard of the Emperor, about two hundred in front, a hundred on either side of the road, enclosing M'tesa and his Katekiro, and two hundred bringing up the rear, with their drums beating, pipes playing and standards flying, and forming quite an imposing and warlike procession.

"M'tesa marched on foot, bare-headed, and clad in a dress of blue check cloth, with a black belt of English make round his waist, and—like the Roman Emperors, who, when returning in triumph, painted their faces a deep vermillion—his face dyed a bright red. The Katekiro preceded him, and wore a dark gray cashmere coat. I think this arrangement was made to deceive any assassin who might be lurking in the bushes. If this was the case, the precaution seemed wholly unnecessary, as the march was so quick that nothing but a gun would have been effective, and the Wavuma and Wasoga have no such weapons.

"After M'tesa's body-guard had passed by, chief after chief, legion after legion followed, each distinguished to the native ear by its different and peculiar drum-beat. They came on at an extraordinary pace, more like warriors hurrying up into action than on the march; but it is their custom, I am told, to move always at a trot when on an enterprise of a warlike nature."

WIZARD'S WILLY CANYON



large number of his medicine men or wizards, who, armed with gourds filled with pebbles, took upon themselves the duty of creating such a din as would frighten away all evil; but it strangely happened that their noise must have had a contrary effect. In addition to the tumult thus raised, these priests brought also their charms, which they laid at M'tesa's feet, followed by the witches or priestesses, who also made their oblations, and then offered their fetiches to the king. These charms consisted of dried lizards, pieces of hide, nails of dead people, claws of animals, beaks of birds, compounds of deadly herbs borne in ornamented vessels, and wooden fetiches.

When all had thus been made ready, the forty canoes crossed over to the island, where they were met by the Wavuma, who chased them back to Nakaranga Point. At this, 230 more canoes, laden with M'tesa's soldiers, started to the succor of their retreating friends, and these were in turn met by 192 canoes bearing the Wavumas. A great battle now seemed imminent, but M'tesa's navy again retreated to a point where they were re-enforced by the entire army, and where four small cannons had been planted.

The cowardice of his men, whose numbers greatly exceeded those of the Wavuma, so incensed M'tesa that he was in a towering passion, in which he threatened all who should again exhibit such pusillanimity with the punishment of a slow fire. Under this dreadful threat, on the 18th the fight was renewed by the advance of 230 canoes, in two of which howitzers were carried. But the Wavuma were undeterred, and moved resolutely to the centre of the intervening space in the lake and began a fusillade with spears and arrows. The howitzers, however, proved a surprise, for when these opened fire the Wavuma became panic stricken and precipitately retreated, but did not make good their escape until ten of their canoes were destroyed and several of the occupants were killed.

This small victory obtained, M'tesa's men did not attempt a pursuit of the enemy, but forthwith returned to the shore to receive the king's congratulations.

#### STANLEY'S DREADFUL WAR-BOAT.

Though the Wavuma were thus once beaten, they were unsubdued, and the war promised to continue indefinitely unless some decisive means were adopted to give it an effectual ending, and this Stanley resolved to suggest. On the 5th of October, the explorer therefore sought an interview with M'tesa at which he proposed the building of a dreadful war-boat that would carry consternation among his enemies, and bring them quickly to terms. The idea gave M'tesa the greatest delight, who was distressed over the prospect of having to abandon the undertaking of conquering the Wavuma. He therefore gave Stanley a detail of 2000 men, as requested, who were put to work felling trees and poles, from which the bark was peeled and twisted into ropes. He next took three canoes, each seventy feet in length and six and one-half feet in breadth, which he lashed together with a space of four feet between them, to give room to work the paddles. Around the outer edges of these canoes he





er work some five feet in height and so thick as to be impervious. When the boat was made ready, it was manned by 214 soldiers, it across the channel without exposing themselves to view, so the Wavuma saw it approaching, their superstitious natures led them to be some great monster, or a wonderful craft moved by supernatural

ease the delusion and prey the greater on their fears, Stanley clamored to be made to the Wavuma that, unless they immediately their whole island would be blown to pieces. The effect of this it was intensified by the disastrous consequences following the firing of the guns, and thus terror stricken the Wavuma surrendered unconditionally, which they announced by sending a canoe and fifty men with the aid.

#### STANLEY LEAVES FOR THE MUTA NZIGA LAKE.

Having thus fortunately terminated for M'tesa, Stanley besought him to leave Uganda, and to furnish the escort that had been promised. The king showed his gratitude by sending at once for his leading general, Sambuzi, whom he ordered to muster a thousand men to serve as an expedition. Thus favored, Stanley resumed his march November 2d, with a force of 2800 souls, but a week later, at the intimation of an attack by the Ngunis of Uzimba and Unyampaka, a large part of the escort deserted, and General Sambuzi, who was a typical African boaster and coward. After an accident Stanley reached Kafurro, February 28th, 1875, where for a month he was the guest of the good old King Rumanika, in whose honor he had some splendid sport shooting rhinoceri.

On the 20th of April following, upon arriving at Seromo, Stanley learned that a bandit king, Mirambo, was in the neighborhood and desired an interview with the white man. At this news that portion of the escort sent by Stanley had remained loyal, were so frightened that the utmost efforts of Stanley failed to prevent their desertion, but fortunately a second and more encouraging message followed fast on the first, which had the good effect of allaying their fears.

In answer to Mirambo's message desiring to establish friendly relations, a reply was sent in equally assuring terms, and on the following day the renowned bandit and Napoleonic general appeared before Stanley's tent and was formally bidden to enter. A very pleasant interview followed, which closed with the return of the visit by Stanley, at which the ceremony of blood-drinking was performed.

On the 27th of May the expedition reached Ujiji, having failed to discover the source of the Kizira, but skirted the shore of Lake Tanganyika from the point where the Kizira river enters it to that station without meeting with any success.



## AMONG THE CANNIBALS.

Stanley had expected many packets and letters from home on his arrival at Ujiji, to which point he had ordered his mail forwarded upon leaving Zanzibar seventeen months before, but his hopes were destroyed, for not a single message was found awaiting him.

This disappointment made him the more anxious to prosecute the great work he had set his heart upon and return to England as soon as possible. He accordingly had the *Lady Alice* launched again in the waters of Lake Tanganyika, determined to accomplish its circumnavigation, with the view of discovering its outlet, if it had any. This enterprise was accomplished without special incident in fifty-one days, and resulted in an exposition of the fact that it had no outlet proper, all streams with which it had any connection being inlets, though there was evidence that in former years the Lualaba, or Congo river, furnished an outlet to the lake and drained its waters into the Atlantic.

On returning to Ujiji again, Stanley found Frank Pocock, who had been left in charge of a part of the expedition during his absence, pale and haggard from a long spell of fever, five of the Wagwara soldiers had died of small-pox, and six others were down with the dreadful scourge, which was also decimating the population of the town. Stanley was stricken with fever the day after his arrival, but was again on his feet at the end of five days. He now decided to cross the lake and push westward as quickly as possible, and so announced to his men. This created a panic among them, for they fully believed that if they went among the Manyuema cannibals they would be roasted and eaten. Thirty-eight had already deserted during his absence, and many of the others now threatened to do likewise. As a precaution against further desertions, he had those whom he suspected of being untrustworthy arrested and put into a large hut, where they were guarded until he was ready to depart.

Everything at last being ready, they crossed the lake on the 25th of August, and after a necessary halt of a few days to rest and organize, the expedition pushed westward through the wilderness toward the Manyuema country, for the purpose of exploring the great river flowing to the northwest, through that region, and from which Livingstone had been driven back by the war between the Arabs and natives previous to his meeting with Stanley. The Manyuema nation is composed of a number of tribes, varying greatly in disposition and general appearance. Some are handsome and intelligent, others are filthy, ugly and degraded; but, with a few exceptions, all are mild and gentle in disposition, although universally addicted to cannibalism.

## CANNIBALS, DWARFS AND BOA CONSTRICTORS.

Having made a pretty thorough exploration of the central lake region, and determined positively that the Nile had no connection with Lake Tanganyika, Stanley decided to take up the work that Livingstone had left unfinished and follow the Lualaba, or Livingstone, river to its outlet, correctly surmising, as will be seen, that its waters debouched into the Atlantic. The many names



by which this river has been known, first as the Shire, then the Congo, next the Lualaba, and finally the Livingstone, indicates how confused was the idea as to its source and course; a confusion which arose because of the net-work of rivers that traverse the central region west of Lake Tanganyika, and which had up to this time remained unexplored. Livingstone had tried to follow down the Lualaba, but his inability to procure canoes, on account of war between the Manyemas and Arabs, even though he had saved many of the natives from massacre, compelled him to give over the undertaking for a time

#### VILLAGE OF MWANA MAMBO.

and return to Ujiji, where Stanley found him. It was on the second expedition undertaken for a like purpose that Livingstone died, thus leaving the question of the source, course and outlet of the Lualaba still undetermined.

Stanley continued his march westward until the middle of October, when he arrived at M'Kwanga, which is only eight miles from the confluence of the Luama and Lualaba rivers. While here encamped he learned of the presence of a large party of Arabs at a village called Mwana Mambo, eighteen miles distant, which he decided to join at once. A meeting occurred on the following day, at which Stanley was received most cordially by the commander of the



Arab force, Tipo Tib. This ivory dealer had considerable knowledge of the country, gained in frequent journeys through it, besides a large force of soldiers and porters; hence his services were of the greatest importance to Stanley, who was fearful that his present small force would be unable to make a passage through the wild region it was necessary to cross.

In the interview which followed their meeting, Tipo Tib told Stanley that the "great river"—Lualaba—flowed directly towards the north until it emptied into the sea, and that its shores were covered with dense woods, which were inhabited by the most ferocious savages, reptiles and animals. He also declared that he had made one trip through this dangerous region, in one part of which his party found ivory so plentiful that a tusk might be purchased for a single cowrie shell. But while the trade in ivory appeared most promising of enormous profit, his party was not permitted to leave the country with their stores. The Wakuma, a large race, were very hostile, but to their enmity was added the implacable vengeance of a race of dwarfs, whose territory bordered that of the Wakuma. These little incarnate devils descended upon the Arabs at night, and with their poisoned arrows fought so courageously that the Arabs were forced to retreat with the greatest precipitation, and in the flight all save thirty of the party were killed.

But there were other evils besides savage cannibals, which the Wakuma and dwarfs were represented to be, for Tipo Tib declared that in the adjoining country of Uregga the dense woods harbored thousands of boa constrictors which, suspended from tree-branches, watched for the passing underneath of men and antelopes, which these reptilian monsters greedily devoured. In these same woods were also the greatest number of leopards, which, emboldened by hunger and the fear they inspired in the natives, committed the most appalling ravages among the people. The sokos, a species of chimpanzee, were also numerous and attacked men without provocation, biting off their fingers and otherwise maiming them. Tipo Tib averred that travelling on the river was but little less dangerous than on land because of the great number of wicked falls that it was necessary to pass over, and which resulted in the drowning of nearly every one who attempted their passage.

#### THE STRANGE PEOPLE OF UREGGA.

After a lengthy interview with Tipo Tib, a contract was drawn up between them by which Stanley agreed to pay the Arab \$5000 for an escort of 140 guns and 70 spearmen a distance of sixty marches of four hours each, which would be equivalent to nearly 500 miles. This force added to his own would furnish him with such protection as was needed.

The expedition now marched to Nyangwe, where another section of the Arab party was encamped; Tipo Tib's party consisted of 700 persons when united. Nyangwe is a village of 300 huts and nearly 2000 people; it is a great market for slaves, and is the westernmost Arab trading station on the road from the east. As the village is situated on the Lualaba river, Stanley here launched





his boat, the *Lady Alice*, to make soundings. He found the river studded with large islands, and its mean depth, taken in thirty-six soundings, was eighteen feet nine inches, while its breadth was from 4000 to 5000 yards, making it one of the greatest rivers of the earth.

After five days' marching through dense, almost impenetrable forests, where they were compelled to hew their way with axes step by step, they came to the country of Uregga, and halted to rest. The inhabitants of this country live as secluded in their dark forests as the chimpanzees; but they provide themselves with comforts unknown to other African tribes. Their houses, in the villages, are all connected together in one block, from 50 to 300 yards in length, and are covered with a kind of pitch. They furnish their homes with many luxuries known to civilization, such as cane settees, beautifully covered stools, sociable benches, exquisitely carved spoons, etc. The women of Uregga wear only aprons four inches square, of bark or grass cloth, fastened by cords of palm fibre. The men wear skins of civet, or monkey, in front and rear, the tails downward. It may have been from a hasty glance of a rapidly disappearing form of one of these people in the wild woods that native travellers in the lake regions felt persuaded that they had seen "men with tails."

In one of these villages, called Kampunzee, Stanley was much astonished to see two rows of what appeared to be human skulls, and upon counting them found there were 186. He asked the chief of the village the meaning of these gruesome trophies, but a direct answer was avoided by a pretence that the skulls were those of sokos captured in the hunt. Stanley was none the less satisfied that they were human, but to prove the matter more thoroughly he brought several to England on his return and had them examined by Prof. Huxley, who not only pronounced them to be human skulls, but found on nearly all the marks of a hatchet that had been driven into the head while the victim was alive.

Five miles beyond Kampunzee the expedition came again to the Lualaba, at which point Stanley renamed the river the Livingstone, by which it has since been called. Here he made arrangements to cross the stream, and after launching the *Lady Alice* he called on the natives of the opposite shore for their assistance with canoes. After an offer of many presents the canoes were furnished, but the moment the expedition had made a crossing the natives attacked it with great vigor, but were driven off without loss.

#### HORRIBLE EVIDENCES OF CANNIBALISM.

Having passed to the south shore of the Livingstone the exploring party was now in the Ukusee country, among savages whose lives were apparently devoted to slaughter, and whose choice meat was human flesh. Each village street was ornamented with two rows of bleached trophies of eaten humanity, forming a ghastly imitation of shell decorations along the paths of our parks and gardens.

The obstacles to land travel had been so great, while the dangers from



ambushing parties seemed to be increasing, that Stanley decided to take to the river and follow it down to its outlet, regardless of Tipo Tib's warning against the many falls that must be passed. After much difficulty and the payment of a large sum in presents, the required number of canoes was procured, in which the expedition embarked.

On November 26th they reached the village of Nakanpemba, which pre-

#### FIGHTING THEIR WAY THROUGH THE CANNIBALS.

sented the usual horrible picture of streets lined with human skulls, the dreadful relics of many a barbarous feast. Throughout this region the evidences of cannibalism were so numerous that human flesh must have been a common dish at every table.

Tipo Tib's story about the many dangerous rapids that made navigation of the Livingstone river so perilous was soon found to be true. As the expedition went on down the river, the first fifty miles were hardly covered before they came to a rock shoal over which the water dashed in a mad and impetuous manner, rendering passage impossible. It was therefore necessary to land and carry the canoes and *Lady Alice* around the treacherous place, which involved, besides great delay, the most exhausting labors.

#### A DWARF CAPTURED.

While engaged in a portage of the boats, some of the men discovered a savage little man concealed in some bushes near by, who being armed with bow and poisoned arrows had evidently contemplated making an attack, single handed,

upon those whom he conceived to be invaders of his country. He was captured and brought to Stanley, who first examining the arrows, the points of which were carefully rolled in leaves, found them emitting an odor very like that exhaled by cantharides. Sus-

#### STREET IN A CANNIBAL VILLAGE.

pecting them to be poisoned, he made a motion as if to inoculate the little pigmy with the substance on the arrow points; at this the little fellow cried out in great fear, and shouted "Mabil mabil" (Bad, bad) so vociferously as to prove conclusively that Stanley's suspicions were correct.

This strange creature stood, when measured, four feet six-and-a-half inches in height, and proved to be fully a head taller than the average of his people. His head was large, his face decked with a scraggy fringe of whiskers, and his complexion light chocolate. He was exceedingly bow-legged and thin-shanked, and was altogether a hideous looking fiend and ugly little savage brute, and as to intelligence very little above the beasts of the forest. Stanley retained him as a prisoner and guide for several days, but finally dismissed him and sent him home with a handful of beads and shells and some bead necklaces. He had expected to be eaten, according to the custom of his country, and though

his hands with him at parting, and smiled, and patted him on the head. The dwarf could not comprehend why he had not furnished assistance, and evidently did not feel safe until he had plunged out into the native woods.

On the 1st of December, Tipo Tib and his Arabs bade farewell to Stanley, and awaited their return. They had not fully kept their contract, but their treatment of the cannibals and the dwarfs was having a bad effect on Stanley, and he decided to let them go; so, after a grand banquet in which they shook hands and parted. At this time Stanley was not aware of the stream that he was following would empty into the Niger or anything in advance of him was unknown and doubtful; but he proceeded and let the future take care of itself. His force now numbered hundred and forty-nine persons, in twenty-three boats, and on the 1st of the Arabs, they commenced their long drift toward the un-

known.

Standing up in his boat, Stanley surveyed his people. How few they seemed to dare the region of fabled darkness! They were nearly sobbing. They were leaning forward, bowed, as it seemed, with grief on their heavy hearts. He spoke to them in words of encouragement; told them of their past brave deeds, and exhorted them to be men. But it was

REPTILE KING OF THE JUNGLE.

his wan smiles that they responded to his words, and feebly they paddled on in the dark-brown current. Poor fellows! Many of them were indeed going to the land of the Unknown.

#### IN THE TOILS OF A BOA-CONSTRUCTOR.

As the expedition proceeded on the voyage after the parting with Tipo Tib, the river gradually widened until its breadth was about one mile, and its shores became more populous with the most savage cannibals, who time and again attacked the voyagers. The cry went up from both shores, "Meat! meat! we will have meat!" followed by the pushing out of canoes manned by savages who seemed to think those who composed the expedition would fall an easy prey. To protect himself against the fury of these demons, who resented all overtures for peace, Stanley was compelled to fight them, and in an almost continuous battle of many days hundreds of the cannibals were slain, and in a few instances their canoes and shields appropriated.

It was not until January 19th, 1876, that Stanley passed by the last tribe of cannibals, and came to a greater falls than any theretofore passed, to which

he gave the name of Stanley Falls. Just below these was a Balobo, where he met a very kind old king named Chumberi, who furnished Stanley with an escort of forty-five men to accompany fifty miles down the river and pilot the expedition through some rapids.

Soon after going into camp after the first day's march from the body was thrown into a state of nervous excitement by the terrified boy, and upon rushing to the spot from whence the alarm came, he was horrified to see a huge python uncoil itself from the body of one of the boys of the expedition and glide off quickly into the jungle. In the moment of alarm the boy had mistaken the snake for one of his companions,

#### KILLING A BOA.

Another one, was discovered, in a different part of the camp, about a woman in its folds; but this time, after tremendous excitement, it was dispatched. It measured only thirteen feet six inches in length and six inches around the thickest part of the body.

#### THE DROWNING OF KALULU AND FRANK POCKOCK.

Nothing further befell the expedition until the 13th of March, when the cataract in Livingstone Falls was encountered, and thereafter for three months there was a succession of disasters, as there was a succession of attempts. Instead of carrying the boats around this dangerous place in the manner that has been done at so many other places of like character, an attempt was made to pass the cataracts, by which it was hoped that much valuable time would be saved. But the wisdom of this undertaking is doubtful in the light of the

that followed. On the 28th, one of the large canoes, carrying Kalulu, Stanley's body servant, and five others, was swept over one of the cataracts, and all the

## SHOOTING THE CATARACTS

occupants were drowned. A similar disaster occurred on the 3d of June at Masassa whirlpool, where Frank Pocock, with eight oarsmen, attempted to drive

the rapids, but they were drawn into a whirlpool, and down deep under the seething waters. In this disaster Pocock lost his life, though he was an expert swimmer, but all the other occupants of the boat contrived to reach the shore and were saved. This dreadful misfortune to one whom he esteemed so highly, and upon whom he had placed so much responsibility, gave Stanley the keenest anguish, and left him entirely inconsolable. His reflections were of the gloomiest character, since of the three brave boys who had sailed with him from England to win laurels of discovery in a strange land, not one was now left, but all were sleeping for eternity in the wilds of the Dark Continent, where the tears of sorrowing friends could never moisten their rude beds. What would the mothers say, when he returned to receive the praises of his grateful patrons and the plaudits of admirers, and they learned that their noble sons had made the greater sacrifice, but upon whom no joyous blessings now could fall, not even that of a mother's tear.

The repeated calamities of the expedition had by this time so discouraged the people that it was with the greatest effort Stanley could induce them to proceed. They seemed to think they were going to certain destruction, and became languid, sullen and despondent. On the 20th of June thirty-one of them deserted in a body, but returned a few days afterwards, having met with anything but a friendly reception from the natives. Stanley's great leadership now manifested itself in keeping his people together, quieting their complaints, and infusing enough energy and determination into their wasted bodies to induce them to push on to the ocean. Famine stared them in the face, and he knew that nothing but a persevering, persistent, impetuous advance toward the sea could save them.

#### A STARVING EXPEDITION.

About the middle of July the expedition reached Ngoyo, where they found a naked but friendly people, who supplied the famishing travellers with a great variety of vegetables and some fish. Besides which kindness the Ngoyo chief assisted Stanley in conveying his boats around some dangerous falls and otherwise attesting his friendship, for which he was rewarded with a liberal supply of presents.

On the 31st of July, 1877, having explored the river to Isangila Falls, and proved that it was the Congo, Stanley decided to leave the water and proceed overland by a direct route to Embomma, a Portuguese settlement on the coast, and only a few days' march distant. The delight of the people at this announcement manifested itself in loud and fervid exclamations of gratitude.

But the sufferings of the expedition, even with the glad promise of reaching a Portuguese settlement soon, were not yet ended, nor indeed had their most desperate straits been passed. Forty of the men were sick of dysentery, ulcers and scurvy, and the list became greater each day as their exhaustion increased. When at length they reached the coast, it was at a point where the most imbruted natives had formed a small settlement, and from whom they



were unable to obtain any food whatever. Weak from their long fast, the expedition continued on until, three days later, Nsanda was reached, where a stop was made with the hope of obtaining some provisions. The chief came out to Stanley's camp and asked at once for rum, but as all that had been brought from Zanzibar had long before been exhausted, Stanley was unable to grant the chief's request. At this the old savage became angry, and refused to supply the starving men with any kind of food whatever.

The situation was now critical in the extreme, as his men were literally dying of starvation; and as a last recourse to secure relief, Stanley wrote a

#### STANLEY'S STARVING PEOPLE.

letter in English, French and Spanish, addressed to the people of Embomma, describing his condition and asking relief. This letter was dispatched by three of his best men, and on the following day, August 4th, it was placed in the hands of Mr. John W. Harrison, representing an English firm, who immediately sent a large amount of provisions, by a score of carriers, to the suffering expedition, and thus saved them from dying of starvation within a day's march of the journey's end.

On the 9th of August Stanley marched into Embomma, where he was

most graciously received by Mr. Harrison and the Portuguese population, who, as a mark of honor, gave him a magnificent banquet on the following evening.

After enjoying the generous hospitality of these people for two days, Stanley was ready to depart, but he first strolled down to the river, on the banks of which Embomma is situated, to take a farewell look at its broad and placid waters. "Glancing at the mighty river on whose brown bosom we had endured so much," said he, "I saw it approach, awed and humbled, the threshold of the watery immensity, to whose immeasurable volume and illimitable expanse, awful as had been its power and terrible as had been its fury, its flood was but a drop. And I felt my heart suffused with purest gratitude to Him whose hand had protected us, and who had enabled us to pierce the Dark Continent from east to west, and to trace its mightiest river to its Ocean bourne."

Stanley proceeded with his company on a steamer to Kabinda, and thence to Loanda, where his sick and suffering people were received into the Portuguese hospital, and remained until September 27th, five of them dying in the mean time. From Loanda the expedition sailed to Cape Town, and thence back to Zanzibar, where the people were paid off and discharged. Stanley started for England December 13th, 1877, and upon his arrival in London was received with distinguished honors, such as he well deserved. He had fairly won the English heart as well as the heartiest praise of his own country. He had proved himself, next to Livingstone, the greatest explorer that ever penetrated Africa.

#### STANLEY'S THIRD EXPEDITION.

The return of Stanley after so long an absence, and when nearly all the civilized world believed him dead, was the signal for renewed applause among his admirers, and the bestowal of praise and honors by the Geographical Society of England. But not only was he the recipient of social, and even royal, favors, as public evidences of appreciation for his heroism and incomparable wisdom in dealing with the savage races of Africa, but a gainful interest was excited by his discoveries, and commercial bodies almost immediately sought to make them profitable. Stanley's report on the fertility of the Congo region, and the navigableness of the Congo river, thus offering facile communication with the interior, which is inconceivably rich in valuable woods, gums, ivory, gold, etc., prompted the formation of a company to open trade with that promising region.

Portugal, as stated in an early part of this book, held possession, for centuries, of the lower Congo, their district extending inland about one hundred miles; but their trade was of no consequence fifty miles from the coast, and so little had this profited them that they seemed to set no value on the trade of the interior or its possibilities. Within a few months after Stanley's return, therefore, "The International Association" took steps to profit by his discoveries.

This Association was the result of an assembling in 1876, at Brussels, of the principal geographical societies of Europe and America, in response to an



invitation from Leopold II., King of Belgium. The intention was to extend the civilizing influences of Christianity through Central Africa, and the opening up of trade over all available routes, whether by land or river.

King Leopold sent a letter to Stanley inviting him to attend upon His Majesty, to which the explorer at once responded, and the interview that followed resulted in the organization of another expedition under the command of Stanley, and in the interest of the International Congo Association.

The Association, which had assumed, with consent of the powers, a national character, adopted as their ensign a blue flag with a golden star in the centre, and this Stanley bore as the emblem of his authority to negotiate with the native tribes for exclusive privileges.

#### UP THE CONGO.

On returning from his second expedition in Africa, and following down the Congo, it will be remembered that Stanley left the river some fifty miles from its mouth, and marched overland to the coast at Embomma. He had not, therefore, followed down the river to its mouth. On his return expedition to the Congo in 1878, therefore, he landed his company of 250 men at Banana Point, the river's mouth, and in launches he commenced an ascent of that famous stream to note particularly to what extent it was navigable, and to learn the prospects for opening a profitable trade with the 40,000,000 people believed to reside in the Congo basin. The results of his undertaking, which was attended by few adventures, may be briefly summed up as follows: He found the river navigable for crafts drawing fifteen feet to Vivi, a distance of 115 miles. At this point cataracts begin, seven of which occur in the next 200 miles, around or over which it would be impossible for any crafts to pass except by the digging of canals. After this interval of interruption the river widens at Stanley pool, where Stanley founded the station of Leopoldville. Along this route, and to a distance of four hundred miles from the river's mouth, he established twenty-two stations, over which he raised the flag of the Association, and thus opened a secure way for both trade and missionaries, and in which region slavery is prohibited.

The great difficulties encountered by Stanley in this expedition was in making a passage around the cataracts, to accomplish which it was necessary for him to draw his boats sometimes for miles overland, and to cut a way through the dense wood, involving an incredible amount of labor. In one place the hills rose so high and abruptly above the cataracts that the only means of effecting a passage round them was by digging and blasting out an angle at the base, a work that required several months to perform. When he reached the stream above the cataracts his astonishment was as great as it was discouraging to find that M. De Brazza had preceded him, and by a treaty with the tribes had secured exclusive privileges to the French government for trade on the south shore of the river, and claimed a protectorate over an area of thirty-five thousand square miles of territory, over which he had indeed raised the French flag.



Stanley was first apprised of the treaty made between De Brazza and the Congo tribes on his arrival at Gordon Bennett river, where it joins the Congo. While being hospitably entertained by two chiefs, Gampa and Babnjali, he was visited by a colored sergeant named Malamine, dressed in uniform, and accompanied by two negro sailors from the Gaboon. Hearing of Stanley's presence in the country, they visited him, bearing the French colors, and after a polite greeting presented him with two papers. One of these was a copy of

DE BRAZZA CONCLUDING A TREATY WITH THE NATIVES.

the treaty, and the other a request, signed by De Brazza, to show hospitality to any white person found within the protectorate.

DIFFICULTIES PRECIPITATED BY THE TREATY.

Stanley, while doubting the validity of the treaty, had no disposition to come in conflict with De Brazza, and therefore asked Malamine if there were any objections to crossing the Gordon Bennett river, and being answered in the negative, he passed over to the other side by means of a bridge made of vines,







et by hostile natives, who threatened to attack his party, and would so but for the timely interposition of the son of a chief named ho, with sixty musketeers, had been sent to bring Stanley to the of the river, where he was promised protection. While thus resting e village on the south bank, Stanley was visited by Gaucien resenting King Makoko, who came to discuss the benefits likely to a settlement of terms with the International Association. Stanley, d him that he could entertain no proposals because the territory had ed to De Brazza. At this Gaucien became furious with rage, and ent declaration and demonstration denied that any such treaty had and boldly asseverated that if even King Makoko himself should ompact towards selling territory, he would be sacrificed to the ven-is people.

sputes occasioned by the treaty with De Brazza were so bitter that ountry was thrown into distraction, rendering it next to impossible y binding settlements with the natives, who now viewed all strangers ion, if not hostility. Stanley therefore concluded to return to Eng-he fruits of his accomplishments. By establishing so many stations ng the Congo, he had opened a route to Central Africa and made o extend a profitable commerce between Europe and the people of region. Besides this, he discovered Lake Mantumba, a considerable er, and explored the river Malundu, known on the maps as Ikelembu, nce of one hundred miles. He found it to be a stream about the Arkansas river, and deep enough for any fresh-water craft. His uaintance with the country, thus acquired, led him to estimate the of the Congo basin at forty-nine millions. Throughout this populous is, rubber, ivory, woods of great value, fruits, etc., could be exchanged bly for articles of European manufacture, and all the people were the establishment of trade relations. Stanley's report, on his ngland in 1882, was therefore very flattering, and has led to great reen the English, Dutch, French, Portuguese and Germans, all of ns have kept agents in the Congo region ever since. This rivalry the establishment of the Congo Free State, and the country is open ns and will be speedily settled up. Already lines of steamers have shed on the river, and a railroad is projected, in fact being built, a Point to Leopoldville, which will furnish transportation to millions its into Central Africa within the next ten years.

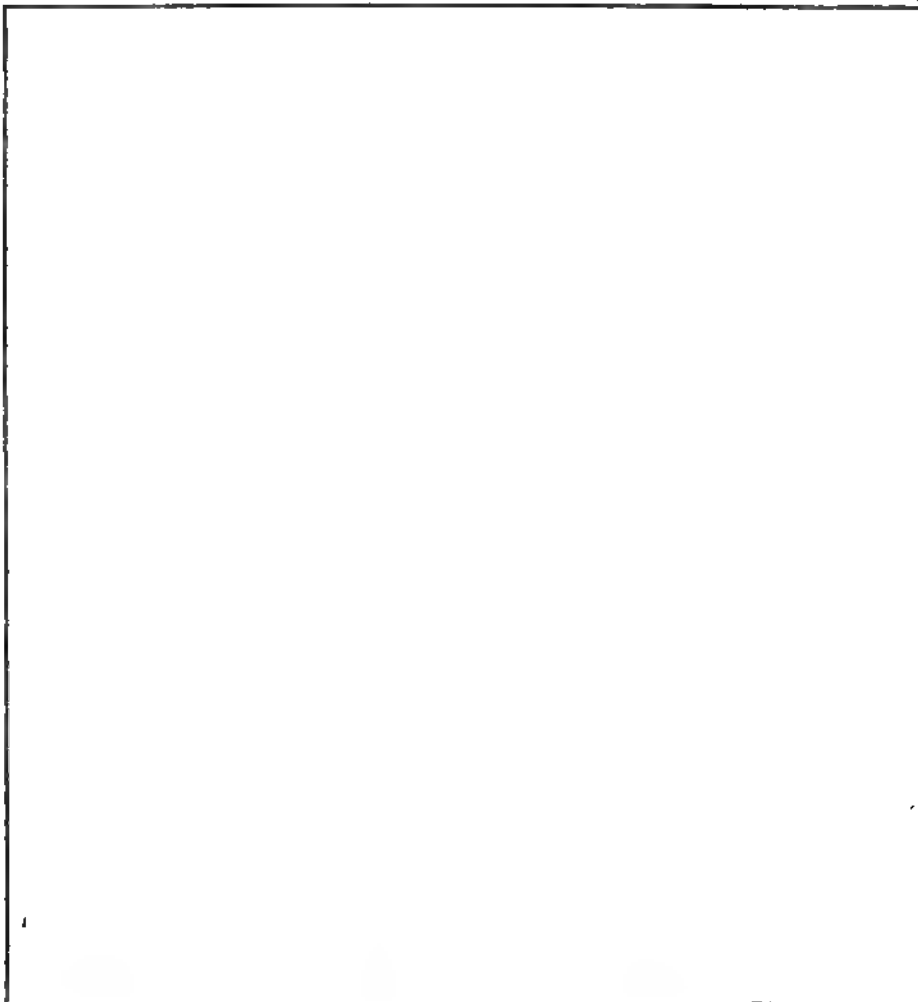
## CHAPTER XIII.

### CHINESE GORDON.

GENERAL CHARLES GORDON, whose fame in the world, was the successor of Sir Samuel Baker in the service of the Porte, sent to the Soudan in 1874 to suppress the slave trade and bring into subjection to Egyptian rule the rebellious provinces in Ethiopia.

No man has had a more remarkable career than Gordon. Distinguished, when we consider the many different flags he bore and the diversified commands that he held. His life was a century romance, reflecting the glamor of the crusading and he was a Peter the Hermit in pious devotion, a Lancelot in barossa in impetuous courage. But though he was one of the best if the metaphor be not too florid, he was in quiet scenes a baboon, thus within him were those warring elements that, like hot air of air coming together to produce a cyclone, swept him into the actions and left upon his brow the marks of heroic struggle. Nature seems to have made him a great military leader, endowing him with sagacity and almost unexampled courage, yet his heart was a woman's might well have served the most pious nun. And with woman's pathy there was joined the greatest charity, devotion, loyalty, and all the attributes that belong to a truly generous nature. Though a thunderbolt in battle, and was as anxious on the eve of action as a child that is held under curb when he hears the rattle of musketry, the spirit that moved him to valorous deeds found satisfaction in the quietest life. He was, enigmatic as it may appear, intensely displeased with every thing that did not invest him with the mark of honor. He had no thirst for distinction, he was insensible to fame as the most rigid ascetic of olden times, he had no desire whatever. Thus, when he was offered the price of \$50,000 per annum by the Khedive he refused it, but accepted more than two-thirds of this sum he gave away in charity to the poor people of the Soudan, whom he was sent to subdue and govern. When he returned to England, from China, with a few hundred pounds that he had earned in such hard service, he expended it all in founding a school for the poor in London. But with all this, he was adapted to command and to lead, and we shall see.

We are not surprised to learn that Gordon was descended from a family of warriors, of heroes; that his great-grandfather was a Highland soldier who distinguished himself at Preston-Pans, and that his kinsmen were in the forefront under the banner of the Pretender. And his grandfather fought on the bloody field of Culloden, but the service he performed, alas! is not recorded. From Scotland the grandfather came to America, where he was soon after killed in an accident; but he left many sons, some of whom fought at Minorca, and at the siege of Louisburgh, and others perished with Wolfe on the Plains of Abraham. The father, Henry William, born 1786, was a member of the Royal Artillery, and last of his generation. He married Elizabeth Enderby, of Blackheath, by whom he had five sons and six daughters. Three of the sons entered the army, the youngest of whom, born in



GENERAL CHARLES GORDON.

1830, was our hero, whose career, I regret, space permits me to only briefly sketch.

#### IN THE CRIMEA AND BESSARABIA.

Gordon was sent to Balaklava to serve in the Crimean war, reaching his destination January 1st, 1855. His first service was as a subaltern in the trenches, but a month later he was assigned to the engineer corps and placed in charge of the construction of new batteries in advance of the trenches. There is little history obtainable from which to learn all the real services he performed before Sebastopol, but that he displayed his characteristic heroism is evidenced

by the fact that he was decorated with the Legion of Honor after the fall of that great stronghold.

In May, following the close of the Crimean war, Gordon was appointed assistant commissioner, and sent to join Major Stanton in Bessarabia, where he helped to mark the new boundaries between Russia, Turkey and Roumania, a service in which he was engaged for eleven months. In April, 1857, he assisted in the delimitation of the boundary of Asia, and was thus for the first time brought into contact with uncivilized tribes, and especially familiarized himself with the Kurds. This experience with Asiatic people aroused in him a desire to visit China, which he had the opportunity of gratifying in July, 1860. On his arrival at Hong-Kong he learned of the capture of the Taku forts, and shortly after of the massacre of several distinguished Englishmen who had first been taken prisoners by the forces under Sankolinsin. This was one of the first inhuman acts committed by the Chinese in their resistance to the English, who had sent a fleet to effect an opening of the ports of China. In consequence of this massacre, the allies marched on Peking in October and invested the city. In this engagement Gordon took a leading part, and was present at the sacking and burning of the Summer Palace, which followed the capture of the city, October 12th. Thereafter he served as commander of the royal engineers, his duties taking him far into the interior, and to places which white men had never before visited.

#### A GREAT CHINESE PROPHET.

After the effectual opening, by treaty, of the Chinese ports, Gordon still remained in the country, and circumstances arose directly which placed him in command of Chinese troops sent to suppress the Taiping rebellion.

The events which led to this uprising against the government are not wholly unlike those which led to the war in the Soudan, as will be hereafter seen. During the Opium war of 1842, when firearms were first introduced into China, a native schoolmaster, named Hung-tsue-schuen, of Taiping, announced himself as called by the gods to overthrow the Manchoo race and to take possession of the Dragon throne. He described many revelations made to him by the spirits, and succeeded in enlisting the active assistance of 20,000 converts to his pretensions, who spread the new dispensation with the greatest persistency and at the expense of the largest self-denial. Growing stronger in numbers, they at length, while ostensibly travelling about the country on a proselyting tour, began breaking idols and effacing Confucian texts from schools and temples. Hung now claimed that he was the Heavenly King, the Emperor of the Great Peace; and having defeated the mandarins in his first collision with them, his forces so greatly augmented that, with the legions at his command, he began a devastation of the country.

Hung's success gave color to his heavenly commissioned pretensions, while affording at the time a ripe opportunity for piracy and all manner of lawlessness. He marched at last upon Nanking, which speedily capitulated to his



enormous army, and in this city he established himself as the Heavenly King, and there he continued in the usurpation of the sovereign prerogative until 1860. He had avoided any connection with the war between England and the government, pretending that he was attempting to establish the Christian religion in the country, hoping thereby for English and French interference in his behalf. But when this hoped-for aid was finally denied, he became insolent, and in 1860 threatened Shanghai and all the consular ports.

#### THE EVER-VICTORIOUS ARMY.

The English and French had been applied to for assistance by both the Taiping rebels and the Imperialists, but they wisely abstained from taking sides, though holding themselves ready to protect the commerce of the ports, and foreigners who had entered the country to trade. The mandarins of Shanghai, therefore, became so alarmed for themselves and their interests, which were so alarmingly menaced by the rebels, that they commissioned two Americans who happened to be in Shanghai at the time, named Ward and Burgevine, both of whom were adventurers, the former having served under Walker in Nicaragua, giving them authority to raise a contingent for the defence of the city. In addition to this they were offered a large reward for the capture of a strategic place called Sung-Kiang, twenty miles from Shanghai, which was in the hands of the rebels. The two Americans raised a force of 100 men, chiefly sailors, who, being well armed, made an assault on the place at night, but were repulsed with a loss of half their number. Not discouraged by this disaster, but gaining a knowledge of the temper and power of their adversaries, the Americans increased their force by the addition of several thousand Imperialists, with which they again threw themselves against the fortifications of the rebels, and this time succeeded not only in gaining an entrance to Sung-Kiang, but in massacring a large number of the rebels and putting the rest to flight.

The success that had attended their enterprise prompted Ward to name his force the "Ever-Victorious Army," a title which seems to have been fortunately bestowed, since its lists of victories so largely increased that Ward, as generalissimo, continued to act on the aggressive and pursued the rebels until checked and turned back by a new army, under one of the Taiping leaders, that had marched down from the interior to assist in the intended attack on Shanghai. Ward's army was thus forced back into Sung-Kiang, where it was invested by a large force, while another rebel contingent marched on Shanghai, committing every conceivable depredation on the way.

#### THE ATTACK ON SHANGHAI.

The army of the rebels, headed by the fanatic who had styled himself the Faithful and the Heavenly King, rushed down with an impetuous dash upon Shanghai, crying for vengeance against the government, and particularly against "the foreign dogs," who were supposed to be operating with the Imperialists. Mutual interests now forced the allies to fly to the protection of



the city, which if taken would certainly be looted and burned. The French and English accordingly joined the Imperialists, and on August 18th, 1860, they met with heroic resolution the shock of the rebel charge. A desperate battle followed, in which the so-called Heavenly King was repulsed, but not entirely beaten. Rallying his forces on the following day, the rebel king returned to the charge, when the desperate fighting which distinguished the preceding day was repeated. But this time the results were more decisive, for the rebels were dispersed with great slaughter and driven by the pursuing allies until they had to retire to Soochow.

After a short period of inactivity at Soochow, the Heavenly King went to Nanking, from which point, in October, he sent forth four immense armies to attack the Imperialists along the Yangtze river, in a district of some four hundred miles. The ports along this river had been opened up to foreign trade by the Pekin treaty, so that the British Naval Commander, Sir James Hope, ascended the river with his fleet, and, obtaining an interview with the rebel king, obtained from him a promise not to interfere in any way with the trade of that river, and also not to make any demonstration on Shanghai for the period of one year, both of which promises were faithfully fulfilled.

But the year 1861 was full of disasters to the Heavenly King, who in trying to capture Hankow was driven from that metropolis back again into the neighborhood of Shanghai. The rebel king now notified Sir James Hope that upon the expiration of the year's truce he would move upon Shanghai, which, despite the warnings given him in reply, he proceeded to do in January, 1862.

The allied forces—French and British—resolved to defend the city and also to form a junction with Ward, who was still at Sung-Kiang, with a force of 1000 well-drilled Chinese soldiers. The result of this alliance was the rout of the rebels again, who were driven to Ning-po. The fighting continued, however, but in September, Ward was killed in a skirmish, and was succeeded in command of the Ever-Victorious Army by Burgevine, who, however, was cashiered for looting the local Chinese treasury of Shanghai, in January following.

Up to this time the two American adventurers had been in practical command of the allies, but with their disappearance the British Government was formally applied to for a new commander. This step was rendered the more necessary by a refusal of the British and French to lend any aid towards a suppression of the rebellion, more than to guard the frontier within thirty miles of Shanghai, where the foreign interest was entitled to protection.

The request for a new commander of the Ever-Victorious Army was conveyed to general Staveley, who referred the matter to the Horse Guards, but in turn it was sent back to him for action. The result was the selection of Gordon, who was soon after given the title of General, and was raised to the post of Mandarin.

#### THE DEFEAT OF HOLLAND.

Before taking active command of the army, Gordon asked for a month's time, to be spent by him in an examination of the surrounding country. During



\*\*\*\*\*

this preparatory work, fitting him the better, by giving him a knowledge of the topography of the region through which he was soon to inaugurate a vigorously aggressive campaign, for the work he was about to undertake, Gordon suffered a Captain Holland, of the Marine Light Infantry, to take temporary command. Holland, hoping to gain at once a reputation for skilful generalship, collected a force of 7500 men with which he attacked the walled city of Taitsan, the attack resulting in his inglorious defeat and the loss of all his cannons and ammunition. This victory greatly elated the rebels, while correspondingly depressing the Imperialists, and produced such a reaction that Gordon hastened to take command of the now demoralized army, before one-half his month's leave had expired.

Gordon found it necessary to reorganize his army, and after infusing it with some of his own indomitable courage, he led it, though only 1000 strong, in an attack on the rebel stronghold at Fushan, on the Yangtze river. This place he bombarded until it was evacuated, and then without halting he marched on Chanzfu, inland some ten miles, which he relieved, to the intense delight of the citizens, who had been surrounded for several weeks by the rebels and until starvation was threatening.

#### THE SIEGE OF TAITSAN, AND HORRIBLE TORTURES.

With this success, which brought to his aid the confidence of the Imperialists, Gordon was able to make the amplest provision for his army in the way of providing pay and effective arms for his soldiers. He now had a well equipped army of 3000 men, with which he determined to lay siege to Taitsan, although it was garrisoned by a force of 10,000 rebels, among whom were many English, French and American renegades. His first act was to cut the line of communication between Taitsan and Quinsan and Soochow, and then to move a line of breastworks towards the city. His approaches were gradual but constant until within one hundred yards of the walls, when he opened a tremendous fire on the battlements, silencing the guns of the enemy and permitting him to bridge the moat that surrounded the walls with gun boats that had moved up the river to his aid. In two hours after the attack opened a breach was made in the walls, but at dreadful expense, for now the battlements were remounted, from which a storm of leaden hail poured down upon the assailants. Twice the Imperialists were repulsed, but cheered on by their heroic commander, they charged again to the breach and at length were swept through and over the walls by the impetuous ranks that closed up from behind. The city was taken by this irresistible assault, and several thousands of the rebels made prisoners. Among these were seven special offenders whom the Mandarins decreed should suffer the penalty of a slow and torturous death. Gordon had no sympathy with the manner of punishment that the Imperialists, according to all Chinese customs, inflicted upon their enemies, but his influence, great as it was, could not prevent it. The seven unfortunates, who had themselves inflicted a similar torture upon Imperialist prisoners who had fallen into their

hands, were taken to a place near Waikong, and were there tied up by their arms and legs and exposed to public view five hours before decapitation. To increase

PREPARING A PRISONER FOR TORTURE.

the torture, while thus hanging, arrows were forced through their bodies in various places, and a large piece of flesh was cut out of the right arm of each victim,



so that when they were finally brought before the executioner they were so far exhausted as to be insensible to their last but more merciful punishment.

After the brilliant victory at Taitan, Gordon's name became a household word in China, and he appeared to them as the matchless, the unconquerable, the Ever-Victorious Englishman. With this reputation he was able at length to force the Mandarins to treat their prisoners of war with more humane consideration, so that tortures like those described were not repeated.

Gordon's next effort was the reduction of the great fortifications around Quinsan and capture of the city, which he accomplished in a three days' attack, in which the enemy lost 5000 men, while his own fatalities numbered only two killed and five drowned.

After garrisoning this large city and most valuable strategical point he continued his victorious march towards Soochow, the capital of the empire, and the most important city on the grand canal. In this place was the flower of the Taiping army with a force estimated at 30,000. Although he now had at his command hardly 10,000 men, and the city which he had resolved to invest was the best fortified of all the cities of the kingdom, yet he seemed to have the utmost reliance in his ability to effect its capture. Accordingly, he sent two of his small gunboats up the canal, which with little opposition captured the canal outposts of the place. He then, with his main army, swept around to the eastward and planted his siege guns against the other outposts. Simultaneously with the beginning of a bombardment of the outer posts he made an assault upon Leeku, which soon capitulated, and with its fall followed that of Wauti, which completed the investment of Soochow.

#### A HELLISH NIGHT.

The most serious obstacles were yet to be met, for though the outposts had been reduced and the siege fairly begun, the strength of the main fortifications was yet to be determined, as well as the resolution of the defenders. Eleven days of investment had given neither side any advantage, when Gordon determined to make a night attack, which he did by assaulting the north-east angle at one o'clock in the morning. An advance was made on the outer stockade, which progressed favorably until the advance guard had clambered upon the breastworks. All had been still up to this time, when suddenly hell itself seemed to open and from its sulphurous bowels gushed out a sheet of flame that gave to creation such murderous missiles as grape-shot and bullets. It was an awful moment, in which the riot of death held high carnival, against which even Gordon himself could not make the magic wand which he was supposed to carry effective. But though he could not stem the tide, he fell back gracefully on its current, and with his shattered contingent rushed back to the guns that thundered both death and applause. Though repulsed, with serious loss, Gordon had given blow for blow, and when morning broke there was a row of dead men on either side of the broken walls.

Even though the rebels had beaten back their enemies, they felt that a



capitulation of the city was only a question of time, and so general was their fears of disaster attending the result of further defence, that several of the Taiping generals became anxious not only to surrender, but they actually sent a proposal to Gordon to come over to the Imperialists, with several thousands of their men. In order to accomplish this proposed desertion, they requested Gordon to make an attack on the east gate, by which the deserters would be able to separate from the other rebels, and thus escape from the main body without a knowledge of their intention being discovered.

In pursuance of the proposal received, Gordon brought his siege guns again into action on the point indicated, and opened such a tremendous fire that the stockades were soon reduced and many large breaches made in the walls; but an entrance to the city was not yet open, and more desperate fighting would be necessary before reaching the inner walls.

An interview was arranged between several of the rebel generals and Gordon, at which the former promised to abstain from action during the next assault if they were guaranteed immunity from harm by the Imperialists upon the city's capitulation. This agreement was received with favor, the more so because Gordon's available force was now only 5500 men, and the inner wall of the city was protected by a deep moat of appalling width. To demonstrate their sincerity, the deserting generals even arranged to surrender one of the gates of the city, but in this promise Gordon did not place the greatest confidence, though by way of enforcing compliance he put on a bold front, and declared that if it were not done he would not be responsible for the conduct of his soldiers.

#### MURDER OF THE DESERTING GENERALS.

On the following day the attack was renewed, but so little resistance was offered that Gordon made no stop until he entered the city and set the Imperial flag on the walls. He found the place in the wildest confusion, which was doubly confounded by the looting soldiers and the high-leaping flames that shot up from hundreds of burning buildings. By heroic resolution Gordon finally restrained the rapacity of his soldiers and gradually restored order, but when he came to make inquiries about the deserters to whom he had promised protection he found that they had all been murdered, and that too by order of General Ching, of the Imperialist force, who was present with Gordon when the promise of immunity was made. This act of treachery, in which his own honor was deeply involved, so sensibly affected Gordon that he burst into tears. But grief was almost immediately followed by a spirit of vengeance, which he vowed against the perpetrators of this most damnable act. Gordon therefore armed himself, and went in quest of Ching, whom he determined to kill and thus compel an atonement for the crime. His anger was also likewise directed against Li, who was governor of the province, and was present at the interview with the deserters, adding his approval of the protection thus promised, but who assisted in the execution. Gordon sought for these two high officers in every quarter of the

2

c

1

t

i

e

e





plished when Soochow fell. To relinquish what had been gained would lose to him the honor so gloriously won, so that a keen appreciation of the situation, which came only after more mature consideration, at length led him to resume command of the Ever-Victorious Army and renew hostilities against the rebels.

On the 19th of February, 1864, Gordon quitted Quinsan with a force of nearly ten thousand, and marched against the rebel strongholds in the mid-interior, where he must depend for supplies almost wholly on such forage as he could obtain. He had not proceeded many miles towards Yesing before he discovered that the country had been ravaged by the rebels to such an extent that millions of people had been left in a starving state. Indeed at one village he found the inhabitants not only without shelter, but so reduced by lack of food that the survivors were feeding off the bodies of the dead. But the desperate poverty of the people was at least one advantage to Gordon, for it made them anxious to join the Imperialists, both for revenge against the rebels and to relieve their indescribable distress. Thousands accordingly signed their allegiance to the Emperor, and though generally without arms, gave Gordon considerable assistance.

#### THE STORMING OF KINTANG.

On March 1st the Imperialists entered Yesing, and four days later Liyang also capitulated. After a rest of only two days, Gordon again resumed the march and soon threw his army against the great city and stronghold of Kintang. Here the rebels made a desperate resistance, beating back three terrific assaults of the Imperialists, in the second of which Gordon was badly wounded in the leg, and in the last the Ever-Victorious Army, deprived of its heroic commander, was beaten and forced to retreat back to Liyang.

Gordon was badly hurt, but his restlessness and indomitable courage would not suffer him to keep his couch for more than a week, and with his leg in a swollen, feverish and still bleeding condition, he again headed his little army and at once began driving the rebels from village to village and into their capital strongholds. The country through which his operations had to be made was one vast desolation, with starvation on every side, and cannibalism a necessity at almost every home. To subsist his army was possible only by beating the enemy from place to place and capturing their supplies. He was therefore forced to conduct his movements with the utmost rapidity, and keep constantly on the enemy's flank, or at their heels.

#### BLOWING UP THE GATES.

Gordon finally drove the rebels into Waissoo, which he captured after a brief assault, then marched on to Chanchu-fu, which was held by twenty thousand of the Taipings, who were commanded by Hu-Wang, one of the bravest and most desperate men in all China. This place was invested, but it held out for several days and repulsed the assaults made against it until the Imperialists began to believe its walls impregnable. Communication was established with several of the rebels who, like those in Soochow, expressed a wish to desert,

STORING OF KINTANG.

and this, through Gordon's strategy, led to an exposure of the north gate, which was blown down and gave entrance to the Imperialists, who swarmed upon the rebels and, killing thousands, took other thousands prisoners, many of whom, including Hu-Wang, were beheaded.

About this time an order was received from the British Crown withdrawing permission, given two years before, for English officers to take service under the Chinese Government. Had it come a month earlier the rebels might have ultimately gained control of the government, but with the fall of Chanchu-fu there was not enough vitality left for the dying snake of rebellion to wag its

#### BEHEADING THE PRISONERS.

tail any longer. It now fell to pieces with astonishing rapidity, those who had thus far held out being anxious to surrender in order to escape the punishment that would follow capture.

#### TRAGIC END OF THE FALSE PROPHET.

Nanking was now the only stronghold in the hands of the rebels, and this city was invested and on the eve of surrender when Gordon dismissed his army, as being no longer needful to the government, and retired to Shanghai. Here he was received with demonstrations of homage by the merchants of that place, who made him some splendid presentations, notwithstanding it was well known with what reluctance he accepted any substantial favors. In addition



to this the Emperor presented him with an address embodying an acknowledgment of his distinguished services, and invested him with the rank of Ti-Tu (the Yellow Jacket), the highest within the power of that potentate to bestow.

On the fall of Nanking, which occurred a few days after the dismissal of Gordon's army, the great Hung, once a village school-teacher and later the Heavenly King, the so-called vicerent of God, the head of the Taiping rebellion, committed suicide by shooting himself through the head. This was his miserable end, but he deserved a more tragic fate. No other human being has been charged with perpetrating such cruelties as he. Prisoners who fell into his hands—so they were not foreigners—were put to inconceivably horrible tortures; flaying alive was the more common method he employed, but as the humor possessed him he broke the bones, crushed the flesh, drove spikes into the body, and burned and harrowed his victims. His last act, preceding that of his own taking off, was the hanging of all his wives, nearly one hundred in number. Thus lived and perished the great false prophet of China, so horrifying in his every aspect, so inhuman in character, that the tragedy of his ending had the one good effect of destroying the hope of any succeeding fanatic bound by his abominable creed.

## CHAPTER XIV.

### IN THE KHEDIVE'S SERVICE.

EACE having been restored in China, and foreign trade relieved from the incubus of a rebellion that had so long paralyzed it, Gordon felt that his next duty was to his own country. Accordingly, in January, 1865, he sailed for home, and on his arrival there he was met by the acclamations of his countrymen, who hailed him as one of England's greatest heroes. In the same year he received the appointment of commanding Royal Engineer at Gravesend, where he remained six years superintending the construction of the Thames defences. In 1871 he was made a member of the European Commission of the Danube, and spent eighteen months engineering improvements at the mouth of that river.

In 1873 the Ashantees became very troublesome and were planning an attack on Cape Coast Castle, and otherwise seriously interfering with British trade on the coast of West Africa. A general request was almost immediately voiced by the press that Gordon should be appointed to take command of the forces it had been decided to send against the Ashantees; but while the popular demand was being urged there was a request for his services in a new field, where energy, adroitness and courage such as his were particularly necessary.

Sir Samuel Baker had returned from the Soudan, as already described, but though partially successful in establishing Egyptian sovereignty in the Soudan, much yet remained to be done, and that too immediately, or else all of Baker's work would be speedily lost, leaving the Soudan in more chaotic condition than before. In 1873 Gordon left Galatz, where he had been serving as vice-counsel of the Danubian Commission, and at the solicitation of Nubar Pasha in the year following entered the Egyptian service. The Khedive proposed to give him \$50,000 per annum for his services, but he refused to accept more than \$10,000, the sum which he was then receiving from his own government.

### THE INSINCERITY OF THE KHEDIVE.

Baker had succeeded in bringing all the tribes of northern Africa—south as far as the central lake basin, and west to Lake Tchad—under Egyptian rule, but his efforts at suppressing the infamous slave trade in that large district had proved futile, principally because of the open countenance lent to the trade by the Egyptian government, which issued licenses to the slave traders and fostered their horrible traffic. But there was such a cry from all civilized countries for its suppression that the Khedive was forced to assume a position

1

4

4

.

1

2

4

1

]

.

1

4

.

1

4

.







strange sights and sounds that greeted his ears. Along the banks were rows of stately and statuesque whale-headed storks, cranes and beautiful egrets.

---

A SPORTIVE HIPPOPOTAMUS.

From these singular specimens of the feathered life with which the banks abounded his surprised eyes wandered along the shores that were animated

with grotesque reptiles, huge crocodiles basking themselves, or clumsily wading through the mud and clambering over each other. Soon there broke upon his vision other yet more startling specimens of Nilotic life; gigantic amphibians that brought a realization of the leviathan of Scriptures. Crossing the river, or rustling the reeds along the banks and breaking down large swaths of grass under their ponderous tread, were giant hippopotami, the lords of this wondrous river.

His interest in these moving scenes of animated nature had heretofore been that of a spectator, exciting in him a more reverential admiration for the works of One who had thus diversified the world with such surprising creations; but his reverie and wonder were suddenly disturbed by the unexpected uprising of a hippopotamus, whose great head struck the bottom of a small boat in tow of his vessel, and in which several sheep were being transported to provide meat for the expedition. The force of the impact was such that the boat was lifted several feet sheer of the water, and the sheep were thrown from both sides into the river, no doubt more astonished at the rudeness than was Gordon. It was now time for a demonstration of active interest in the moving scenes of nature, and thus while men were sent at once to recover the sheep, Gordon seized his rifle and opened fire on the beast that had so discomfited his pious reflections.

April 2d the district occupied by the Dinka tribe was reached, and several of these naked wizard worshippers were seen, but it was with the greatest difficulty that a chief could be induced to come on board even to receive a splendid present of beads. Two days later, however, several others were met that made themselves most offensively familiar, their misery no doubt serving to make them less timid.

#### THE MAN-HUNTERS OF FASHODA.

Gordon reached Gondokoro April 16th, and was met by those at the mission with songs and dances, but most of the people gave him sullen looks, which indicated their unfriendliness to his purpose. Here the old slave-traders ruled supreme, while their acts of rapine had rendered the country insecure even within half a mile of the town. Thus Gordon was in danger from two sources, his intentions as yet being unknown to the people that he had been sent to protect.

But despite the danger of his surroundings he set fearlessly to work to win the confidence of the blacks, and by first sending them presents of beads, rings and cloths, and following this by giving supplies of grain to those most sorely pressed by hunger, he soon came to be known as a friend to the oppressed. He had not been many days in Gondokoro before it became too apparent that the Arabs in the place were operating as much in the interest of the Government as in their own. They were detected in stealing cattle from the natives and in kidnapping and making slaves of the owners; and then sharing their booty with officers very close to the Khedive. Directly after making his first

this kind, by accident he gained possession of a letter from some of Fashoda, announcing to their correspondent their success in 20 head of cattle and half that number of negroes, which were then to Gondokoro, en route for Cairo. He waited his opportunity, and all of these spoils at Gondokoro a few days later, Gordon confiscated and liberated the slaves. As the latter were now far from their homes, several of them were taken into his own service, and the rest, such as desired to do so, were allowed to depart. This act, which was followed by the imprisonment of the chief slavers, had a great influence among the natives favorable to the purpose of his appointment. Henceforth he was nowhere so secure as when among the tribes, who manifested their affection by touching his hands and even kissing his nothing. He established another station at the Sobat river, where he remained two months, doing many acts of kindness to the natives, but on turning to Gondokoro he found the garrison in a deplorable state. His officers aged in an intrigue against

## THE FORT AT GONDOKORO.

Two of his men, Raouf Bey and Abou Saood, were ready to rise in rebellion, and so insubordinate that he was forced to make an example of them by dismissing them and reporting their intrigue to the Khedive.

Getting rid of Abou Saood, Gordon reinstated Raouf Bey, upon his promise of future good behavior, and then went about establishing new stations, which he founded at Sobat, Bohr, Lado, Rageef, Fatiko, Duffili and Makrake, which latter post was on the frontier of the Niam-Niam country. Up to this time he made his expedition more than self-sustaining through reprisals from the ivory dealers and collections of license from the ivory dealers.

## OPENING A ROUTE TO THE LAKE REGIONS.

Col. Long had been sent to visit the great Uganda king, M'tesa, and his reception by that potentate was so cordial, and so encouraging for friendly and



aga with the purpose of wresting Unyoro from him and giving it to who it will be remembered gave Baker such valuable assistance, and named his Va'keel in 1872. But almost at the moment of making this Gordon learned that the station of Rageef was in danger from a attack by a chief named Bedden. To save this post, therefore, Gordon rapid march to Rageef, and as the most effectual means for breaking of this hostile chief he decided to raid his cattle pens. This new warfare was successfully accomplished, and the chief's submission was ly afterwards secure by a him of twenty cows which id thus captured. The im- f such a move against the : will more clearly appear fact is understood that all ral tribes of Africa set a lue upon their cattle than of their other possessions; ey regard them with an greater than that which for one another. A chief e resignedly bear the loss ife, children, and liberty n the capture of a single s herds. This singular esti- d attachment is therefore n advantage of by travellers ough into hostile contact atives, and particularly by e-dealers, who steal cattle . them again upon the sur- them of so many slaves.

#### SHOOTING HIPPOPOTAMI.

the successful cattle sortie  
ref, Gordon was compelled

#### THE SOUDANESE'S LOVE

his journey to Duffili for a time, to await a rise in the Nile that would n to bring his boats up from Khartoum and over the Duffili rapids. his short period of military inactivity he amused himself, and at the : supplied meat for his soldiers, by shooting hippopotami, with which abounded. Not being an enthusiastic sportsman he did not commit destruction of these animals, and therefore has left us accounts of hunting adventures, all his energies and desires being inseparably con- h an effort to suppress slave trading.

From Rageef Gordon went north to Lado, from which post he proceeded to Kervi with one hundred soldiers, and there founded another station, but remained only a short while when a report of the river's rise reached him and he started again for Duffili. The trip up the river was an extremely slow and laborious one, owing to the fact that heavy boats, called *nuggars*, had to be used, which were especially built to withstand the charges of hippopotami.

To add to the other difficulties and harassments that afflicted him on the journey to Duffili, Gordon had to contend with treacherous Arabs, who composed his soldiery, and with hostile tribes that constantly hovered near, ready

#### THE STATION AT DUFFILI.

to strike him at every opportunity. In making his camp at night he was forced to guard against assault by setting up posts four feet in height and stringing telegraph wires along the top so as to stop any rush that might be made upon his camp at night. To have entrusted himself to Arab pickets would have been most imprudent, because at no time could they be depended upon, hence he was compelled to practically protect himself by cunning expedients, such as have been described.

#### THE KILLING OF LINANT.

The further he proceeded southward the more hostile became the tribes, while his situation grew constantly more dangerous. At no time was his force



well armed though they were—to contend with the swarming tribesattle, hence he avoided a conflict by every possible means. The were howling their incantations and curses, shaking their magic d sending their curses upon the invaders, which greatly encouraged lly cowardly natives who drew so threateningly near that Gordon was hrow a bullet among them occasionally. While thus fighting in a manner, Gordon was joined by Linant, who had come down with a wenty-five from the station of Makade. With this increase in his ent thirty of his men across the river, hoping to find his steamer east channel, but on their landing the natives rushed down upon

#### HARASSMENTS ALONG THE NILE.

them. The cowardly Arabs were immediately panic stricken, and Gordon had to cross over to their assistance. He was attacked in turn, but meeting the enemy with a galling fire, they fell back precipitately. But though repulsed the natives continued their harassments, crawling through the grass on their bellies, and discharging their arrows and lances with fatal effect, and then darting back into the high grass like so many rats.

Linant, who was a brave fellow, seeing that a much longer continuance of this unequal fighting might result disastrously, requested permission of his chief to recross the river and make reprisal on the enemy by burning their villages and stampeding their cattle. Receiving permission, on the 25th of

August Linant took thirty-six soldiers, two officers and three regulars, with which force he entered upon the hazardous enterprise of invading the villages. About midday Gordon saw Linant on a hill beyond the river, being able to distinguish him, through a spy glass, by a red shirt which he wore and which Gordon had lent him. Late in the afternoon firing was heard and several

#### OFFERING INDIGNITIES TO THE HEAD OF LINANT.

natives were seen running towards the river, while in another place Gordon saw one of his own party gesticulating wildly, evidently in the greatest excitement, and he sent a canoe to bring him across. When the fugitive, which he proved to be, had landed, he explained to Gordon how Linant and his whole party had been killed, he alone escaping, a story which was soon after verified, except that four of the party, instead of only one, had escaped. Partly

for this loss of his able and courageous Lieutenant, Gordon rizard who stood on the apex of a hill exciting his people to and had the satisfaction of seeing him fall forward on his face, ed to be a piece of great fortune to Gordon, for, with the death of ivulnerable prophet, the natives fled, leaving the General to ourney. But he had not received full satisfaction, and er punishing the hostiles, which he was soon after able to do val of the Governor of Fatiko with five hundred men. With Gordon attacked the villages and, drawing the natives out, ws and 1500 sheep, besides the chief's daughter. At this k the enemy were scattered, but they reassembled, and putting Linant party, which they had killed, on poles, set them up many indignities, the head of Linant receiving their prin- nto the face of which they spat and then cursed it. But they rsed by a second attack, and were seen no more.

#### AN INSULT FROM THE KHEDIVE.

ly reached Duffili and camped between two high hills, but he ing up either the steamer or nuggars, as the Fola Falls were ssable for two miles. However, he consoled himself with the ained that the river was navigable at certain seasons of the had now formed a line of stations, besides subduing the natives, ite was open and connection might be kept up between his mid-African post. Owing to the unhealthy location of ad to change his camp to Fashelie, a high point nine miles found and captured a gang of Dongola slave dealers, which he n in irons. Scarcely had the prisoners departed when Gordon ating letter from the Khedive, so full of complaints that he essages in reply, informing His Majesty that he would be in and begging that his successor might be immediately appointed. nem, however, another letter came from the Khedive, couched ectful language and so commendatory in spirit that Gordon determination to resign, and resolved to continue the prosecu- he had been commissioned to perform.

#### KING KABBA REGA DETHRONED.

ined in the vicinity of Duffili until 1876, when he moved on to e to Foweira, proceeding thence with the purpose of making a Rega, who was at Mrooli. Three days after his arrival at oined by Rionga, a truly kingly-appearing savage, and together . Mrooli; but their approach was heralded in advance, and with rn of cowardice Kabba Rega took to his heels, but carried his i, and took refuge at Masindi. The throne and capital having ned, Rionga was duly enthroned as king; but he betrayed so



he started with two boats for Magungo and the lakes. Reaching the shores, he hoisted the flag, and then sent Gessi to circumnavigate the Victoria,

## STAMPEDED BY ELEPHANTS.

From Lake Victoria Gordon proceeded to Lado, at which with a singular adventure. Elephants about this district were and on the outskirts of Lado was a cut in the high bank where servants to reach the river to draw water, and frequent travel a very inviting approach for elephants coming across from the other side at night time.

The killing of a villager in the neighborhood, a short while which a wounded elephant pursued and overtook the man and killed him to his death, had served to give the natives great uneasiness. At least intimation of the approach of a herd threw them into a panic. A few nights after Gordon had encamped at the place of his last visit, the alarm was sounded that three elephants were crossing the river, making their way towards the cut in the bank. The camp was in a bustle, and if the natives had been depended upon they would have pursued their most riotous intent unmolested; but Gordon's sentries manifested sufficient courage to stand their ground, and when they rushed out of his tent to the attack a volley was fired at them as they reached the shore. While none of the animals were killed, they were driven back to the other bank, to the intense relief of the natives and little less satisfaction to Gordon, who remarks: "You see how easily they got frightened they would break down my house in a moment if they had a deal of damage."

Gordon continued his operations in the region of Lake Victoria from one station that he had established to another, always pushing forward, until the expiration of his commission, October the 6th, when he returned to Khartoum, thence to Cairo, where he reported to the Khedive, and he proceeded directly to London.

## CHAPTER XV.

### GORDON'S SECOND EXPEDITION IN THE SOUDAN.

ONDON received Gordon with demonstrations of intense delight. His services, distinguished though they had been in the employ of foreign governments, were none the less appreciated, as exhibiting the generalship and governing instinct of one of the ablest of Englishmen. At this time affairs in Bulgaria were in a chaotic state, with the public insecurity of that province so great that it was proposed to make him the governor, the general belief being that no one could restore peace throughout the province so quickly as he. A proposition, looking towards his appointment, was accordingly about to be made to the Powers, but which was prevented by the receipt of letters from the Khedive calling him again to Egypt.

Gordon had resolved never to re-enter the Egyptian service again to assist in suppressing the slave-trade, unless he was given command over all the Soudan, as his previous experience had shown the futility of all his efforts when his power extended over only a limited district, outside of which the slave trade was permitted to flourish without restriction. In response to the Khedive's invitation, Gordon proceeded to Cairo in February, 1877, and was not only cordially received, but to secure his services again the Khedive granted his every request. By the desire of Gordon, therefore, Ismail Pasha Yacoub was removed from the office of Governor-General of the Soudan, and this office was conferred upon Gordon, who was thus placed in absolute command of a district which was 1640 miles long and 700 miles wide. He was provided with three deputies, one of whom should act as governor of the western Soudan, another for Dafour, and the third should have charge of the Red Sea littoral; thus dividing the Soudan proper into three districts, in all of which Gordon should establish a government with the special view of suppressing slavery.

### ENDING A WAR IN ABYSSINIA.

In addition to the functions of his office of Governor-General, Gordon was given a special commission to restore peace in Abyssinia, which was then distracted by a rebellion against King John, the successor of Theodore. This rebellion was the result of the elevation of a plebeian to the throne of Abyssinia, made possible by the success of English arms, and the promotion to a chieftainship of a native named Kasa, who had given assistance to Lord Napier in the war against Theodore. Kasa had been rewarded by a liberal gift of muskets and ammunition, with which he armed a large and desperate following,

RECEPTION OF GORDON BY THE FATHER OF MURDER



and then proclaimed himself king, under the title of John. The rightful successor, the heir of Theodore, raised an army to resist the pretender, but his forces were routed in battle, and the heir was put to torture. King John now rapidly subdued the several provinces, excepting alone Shoa and Bogos, and instituted a rule that was more nearly anarchy than government. Encroachments were being made upon Egypt, so that it became necessary to protect her own subjects on the Abyssinian border, to annex Shoa and Bogos, which was done in 1874. This act aroused the enmity of Walad el Michael, hereditary prince of Bogos, who joined with King John in a crusade against Egypt.

In the first battle that followed the Egyptian troops were badly beaten, but in the spoils that were taken King John refused to divide with the prince, who deserted with his army, ostensibly to the Egyptians, though taking no active part, but holding himself in readiness to take advantage of either. The Abyssinians were now beaten in turn, and the triangular dispute became so ominous of evil to his rule, that John sent an ambassador to Cairo to treat with the Khedive. But the Egyptian ruler refused to receive him, and when he appeared in the streets the populace pelted him with stones.

This was the chaotic condition of affairs when Gordon was sent to Magdala, as the Khedive's representative, to treat with King John. In the middle of March he reached Masawa by way of the sea route, and from there proceeded to Keren, which was the capital of Bogos, by camel. The prince, learning his mission, and hoping to secure the favor of Gordon in an adjudication—which it virtually was—of the difficulty, sent out 200 cavalry to receive him, by which he was conveyed in state to the city. Here he was treated with such genuflection as begat his contempt, for he was not a man to court fawning favors. As he came into Keren a band of musicians met him, and ten officers were specially ordered to assist him in dismounting. An escort of 200 infantry and 60 cavalry was also provided to constantly attend him, and altogether such distinguished consideration was shown him that he writes: "I can truly say no man has ever been so forced into a high position as I have. How many I know to whom this incense would be the breath of their nostrils! To me it is irksome beyond measure. Eight or ten men to help me off my camel, as if I were an invalid! If I walk, every one dismounts and walks also; so, furious at such obsequiousness, I get on again."

#### REMARKABLE DIPLOMACY.

The prince's reception of Gordon was hospitable in the extreme, not only by the military display as described, but also by personal attentions. This cordiality was Gordon's opportunity for bringing his diplomacy into use with the best possible results. He accordingly brought the prince into his tent and there read to him his plans for a settlement of the troubles. In this decision Gordon notified the prince that Egypt, in deference to the wishes of the European Powers, desired to end the war, and the proposition of settlement which he was instructed to make was to give the prince a government

separate from that of Ki  
civilized tribes. This pro  
asked for time to consider  
At the same time Menele  
had raised an army to d  
John was compelled to lea  
afraid his absence might b  
that his uncle, Ras Bario  
Gordon's favor, for his s  
opposed vengeance of the c  
temporarily, which was all

He could no longer  
services were immediately  
which had grown again to  
frightful proportions since  
his departure from the  
place a year before. The  
ourney to that capital was  
made at the rate of thirty  
miles per day, through  
countless perils and with  
the most insignificant, be-  
cause cowardly and  
treacherous, following. At  
every station on the way  
countless petitions for re-  
lief poured in upon him,  
and near Kassala a num-  
ber of his camel-drivers we  
region between Khartoum

Gordon arrived at K  
installed as Governor-Gen  
no other speech than a de  
the balance level." This  
the oppressed people, who  
distributed no less than \$:

The Khedive resolved  
the Egyptian Government,  
mansion and an attendar  
this it formulated a code c  
his presence, all of which  
tion. This courtly defer

which greatly increased the natural difficulties of his surroundings. These were of a most discouraging nature and might well oppress him with grave fears and doubts. All the officers of the district had been purchasable by the slave dealers, and this custom of bribery had not only to be abolished, but the venials must be punished. He had also to disband 6000 Bashi-Bazouks who composed the frontier guard, and who were encouraging the slave trade instead of using any effort to suppress it. Besides these herculean tasks he must subdue the vast district of the Bahr Gazelle, which was at the time under the sway of the slave traders. Could he do it?

Gordon began his great work by first bringing Khartoum itself under his rule. By his generosity he had won the hearts of the natives, and he now

---

#### GORDON SEEKING A FRIENDSHIP WITH THE NATIVES.

made himself popular with the people of the place by devising a means for supplying the town with a rude kind of water-works which gave the citizens an abundant supply of pure water, and in cleaning the place of its long-accumulated filth that had made it a very court of death. Thus, under his orders Khartoum had been quickly transformed from a city of evil and disease to a place both orderly and healthy, the change being so grateful that the people hailed him as a benefactor.

#### BATTLE WITH THE LEOPARDS.

Hearing that Dafour was threatened, he left Khartoum to succor his small force there. His army consisted of only 350 poorly armed ragamuffins, and against these was opposed the great slave dealer Sebehr Pasha, with a force of

fully 11,000 men. But notwithstanding these frightful odds, he marched through the country scattering gratuities and so sympathizing with the people as to win their support. In this manner, instead of fighting his way through them, as a man of less diplomatic turn of mind might have done, he was winning the most substantial battles, and putting his real enemies to discomfiture. Upon arriving at Dafour, he found himself able to muster an army of 10,000 natives, who had been drawn to his assistance by the widespread knowledge of his generous acts. Even Suleiman, the son of Sebehr, with 6000 armed blacks, sought a junction with him, but Gordon suspected treachery and rejected the offer, whereupon Suleiman began plotting his murder. But Gordon took decisive steps to bring all the hostile slave traders to terms, by dispatching a force of 8000 natives and 1500 troops against the self-crowned sultan, Haroun, who was pre-



tender to the throne of Dafour. Shortly after making a feint against Haroun he was joined by the Razagats, who could muster 7000 horsemen, and he now projected an attack against Suleiman. But before carrying this resolve into execution he learned that the Leopard tribes were threatening Toashia, his own stronghold, and he turned his troops towards this new enemy. On the march his army was caught in a terrific rain and wind storm that continued through the night, and so demoralized his troops that the divisions became separated, and it was two days before they could be brought together again. The columns were then re-formed and the march resumed. Two days later the stronghold of the Leopards was reached and a fight was begun, in the first charges of which the Leopards drove Gordon's cowardly troops back to the stockades they had thrown up before the engagement was opened. But though beaten in open battle, Gordon rallied his ragamuffins and contrived to bring them between the Leopards and a creek from which all the water supply had to be procured. Every assault they now made was repulsed, and as the heat was really terrific, thirst began to tell upon them more seriously than bullets. It was only a short while when overtures of surrender were made by the Leopards, which Gordon refused to consider except with an acknowledgment of absolute submission, a condition that they were not long in accepting.

#### RAPID ACTION BUT DAYS OF TORMENT.

The Leopards were vanquished, but it was like killing one fly in a swarm. On every side the enemy was both numerous and vigilant; nearly every station was sending to him for help, and yet his own army was too cowardly to even care for itself. Gordon had not only to command, but to execute also. His troops, the most miserable, disorderly, thievish and disgraceful set of vagabonds, were one day swearing their loyalty and the next day plotting his destruction. The slave dealers, on the other hand, had a great army of well-armed and courageous soldiery, schooled to danger by the raids they were employed to make, and brave because they knew the temper of those whom Gordon commanded. It was a terrible condition. Two hundred well-armed, well-drilled and stout-hearted soldiers might easily defeat 20,000 of such cowardly curs as composed his army.

There was no morale, no discipline, no fighting qualities, and the officers were no better than the troops. With these Gordon could do little more than use them as a show, and even the spectacle of a horde of such men could inspire little terror. Everything therefore depended upon his own personal resources, but these fortunately he possessed to a phenomenal extent. He not only put spies into the camps of his enemies, but set some of his faithful ones to scatter the seeds of discontent among them. By these means he stirred up a hostility between Haroun, Suleiman and Sebehr, until they came to look upon one another with suspicion, and were ready to aid in an attack against each other. This was his only course to prevent his own annihilation, besides, it aided immeasurably in the accomplishment of his purpose.



While thus rapidly marching from place to place, giving relief to beleaguered garrisons and exciting the active sympathy of various tribes, upon which source he was compelled to rely for recruits, Gordon became a witness to many acts of what may be denominated refined cruelty. The whole country was blighted by plunderers, who not only kidnapped the natives but pillaged granaries and drove off cattle, until village after village was seen in which the inhabitants were starving to death, every article of food having been stolen from them.

Besides these sights of distressing poverty there were others almost daily witnessed that excited no less compassion. Gangs of slaves, shackled in galling yokes, were common spectacles. These were promptly set at liberty, and their masters made prisoners, but there were dying slaves by the wayside, women and children who, being exhausted with hunger, thirst and feebleness, were ruthlessly brained by their inhuman drivers to prevent them from falling into other no less rapacious and cruel hands.

#### BREAKING UP A THIEVES' DEN.

Shaka was the headquarters of the slave traders of the Soudan. Here they held their markets, committed their greatest excesses, defied the government, and held a high carnival of iniquity, in which the most inhuman savagery was conspicuous. Men, women and children were crowded into stockades, packed as closely as hogs in railroad cars, and with as little attention to the filth that became a natural consequence as shippers give to their stock. The babe died in its mother's arms, children were trampled to death beneath crowded feet, and yet the corpses were suffered to lie in the mass of mud, wallow and offal, the whole putrescent under a fiery sun, no one caring, for human life was cheap. Though his force was insufficient to contend with the army that the slavers had gathered about them at this place, yet Gordon determined to march against it. He accordingly gathered his ragged troops together and made a forced march towards Shaka, but before reaching the place his approach had been announced to Suleiman, who came out to meet him. This young son of Sebehr was not so much afraid of Gordon as he was ambitious to secure a governorship by appointment from the Khedive, and as he held command of the stronghold of Shaka, Gordon thought he might turn the young man's ambition to advantage. Accordingly, when Suleiman reached Gordon, coming as a visitor to his camp, he was cordially received, and an interview followed which resulted in a promise made by Suleiman to abandon the slave trade and give besides active sympathy towards its suppression. Of course Gordon placed little dependence in this promise, except as it might temporarily relieve the iniquity practised at Shaka, nor was he deceived. Suleiman did break down the slave pens, and made a spasmodic effort to relieve the place of its stigma, which afforded Gordon the opportunity of making more substantial reforms in garrisoning the place with a contingent from his own force and the appointment of a sub-governor for the district.







liality, being taken immediately to the palace, and at a dinner which directly upon his arrival he was placed on the right hand of the

The real object of his summons to court, which he very soon learned, make him a figure-head in an inquiry into the Khedive's finances, and resented as an imputation upon his honor. He declared to the effect that if he was placed at the head of a commission of inquiry he would go to the bottom and expose every misappropriation. This honest action so discomfited the Khedive that without further ado he sent Gordon

#### BUYING SLAVES IN THE SHAKA MARKET.

On the 15th, Menelek and Walad el Michael, the Prince of Bogos, on his previous mission, finally arranged these complications, and returned again to Khartoum, receiving another summons to repair to Cairo to undergo an examination of his conduct in the Soudan before the Council of Ministers.

#### DEATH OF SULEIMAN AND RESIGNATION OF GORDON.

It is now February of 1879, a year after his last departure from Khartoum, that in his absence another revolt had been made in the Bahr Gazelle district by the Arabs, with Suleiman at the head. He therefore proceeded to Khartoum to organize a possible expedition and there confiscated all the property of the Zebahr

family, and sent his trusted lieutenant, Gessi, in pursuit of Suleiman, who had proclaimed himself Lord of the Province of Dafour. In addition to this usurpation he had surprised and massacred an Egyptian garrison at Dem Idris, and raised an army of 6000 men to establish himself in the position which he had thus assumed. Gessi was an able commander and as fearless as he was energetic. With a force of 300 regulars, 700 irregulars, or tag-rags, and two small cannons, he went in pursuit of the wily Suleiman. On the march he increased his force considerably by new enlistments, and at length engaged the enemy at Dem Idris, December 28th.

He easily beat Suleiman, and following him up several other severe battles were fought with equally fortunate results to Gessi, until the country about Dem Idris was cleared of the slavers and 10,000 slaves liberated.

Strange as it appears, nevertheless when Gessi had performed such signal

services towards suppressing the slave trade in the Egyptian Sudan, and had overcome the son of the arch slave dealer of that region, the Khedive insisted on Gordon appointing Zebehr, the father of Suleiman, to the governorship of Dafour. This act confirmed Gordon in his previous intention of relinquishing his office, as it proved conclusively the real desire of the Khedive to perpetuate the curse of slavery. But Gessi

#### TRACK OF THE SLAVES.

was now calling on him for aid, so at the risk of offending the Khedive, Gordon not only refused to make the appointment requested but left Khartoum for Shaka, where the slavers had again established themselves, with the purpose of breaking up the cursed traffic there a second time. But only a day before reaching Shaka he received news from Gessi, who had attacked Suleiman at a place named in honor of the slaver, Dem Suleiman, where he beat him so badly that all the booty of the place fell into his hands, and Suleiman himself narrowly escaped capture.

Suleiman now had the effrontery to send emissaries to Gordon, but instead of these accomplishing their object they were court-martialed and shot, though

one of them was Zebehr's chief secretary. Soon after this Gordon and Gessi met, and for the latter's splendid services Gordon decorated him as Pasha, and bestowed upon him the honorarium of \$10,000. But Gessi remained idle scarcely a day, for increasing his force again to 300 regulars he set out to renew the pursuit of Suleiman, whom he at length found in a village with 700 men. Gessi boldly sent him a demand for immediate surrender, which was promptly

#### RETURN OF GESSI AFTER THE DEATH OF SULEIMAN.

complied with, and Suleiman and ten of his officers were sent as prisoners to Gordon, who quickly disposed of them by a court-martial that ordered them to be shot. It was less than two months after this that Haroun was attacked by Gessi at Dafour and killed, so that with the death of these two slavers and pretenders there was peace in the Soudan. Tewfik Pasha was now appointed to the Khedival dignity of the Soudan, and Gordon surrendered his office of Governor-General and returned to England.

## CHAPTER XVI.

### GORDON'S LAST EXPEDITION.

SIDERING the herculean labors that Gordon had performed, and the honors so nobly won and awarded, and particularly the nervous exhaustion from which he suffered, it is not surprising that he desired a long rest, and that he pictured to himself at least a few years of elegant leisure, which would have been an experience never thus far in his life realized.

His arrival in England was followed by an ovation that would have stirred the pride and pleasure of any other man, but Gordon cared nothing for honors, and tried to hide from the public, where he could obtain the relaxation that his tortured mind and body so greatly needed. The great objection to personal popularity, however, is that it involves the loss of every bodily comfort. To be a hero is to invite the persecution of public attention, and also invidious criticism, the two so warring with one another that the object suffers alike from both. This was the unfortunate position in which Gordon found himself, and the hoped-for rest, as a consequence, was never realized.

In May, 1881, there was a shaking up of British officers in India. Lord Lytton had resigned the vice-regal rule, and was succeeded by Lord Ripon, who desired Gordon to accept a private secretaryship, which office was somewhat analogous to that of Prime Minister. Gordon, strange to say, accepted this subordinate position, but in the belief that the duties were so little exacting as to afford him the means for a longed-for rest. He soon discovered his error, however, and resigned while on the way to India, but went to China instead, at the invitation of Mr. Hart, Chinese Commissioner of Customs at Shanghai. While en route, in the Indian Ocean, the steamer on which he had taken passage encountered a terrific storm and several great waterspouts, which came so near wrecking the vessel that Gordon always regarded the escape as a special interposition of Providence. A war was threatening between China and Russia, during the time of his visit, which Gordon very largely assisted in preventing by his opportune counsel with Li, the Governor-General of the Taiping rebellion period, and now Prime Minister.

Gordon was several months in China, returning to England late in the winter, and was almost at once invited to the Belgian Court to discuss a projected international expedition to the Congo, to which Stanley was also invited; and here it was that the two great explorers and administrators first met. Stanley, it will be remembered, was placed permanently at the head of this



company, so that Gordon sailed for the island of Mauritius, to repose for a time in that most paradisiacal resort. On his way, and while passing through Suez, he visited the tomb of his great lieutenant, Gessi, who had died in the French hospital at Suez, April 30th, from protracted sufferings brought on in his campaigns against Suleiman. Arriving at Mauritius without special incident, he remained there, experiencing a delightful rest for a period of ten months, when he was recalled to England, made a Major-General, and sent to the Cape to look after affairs there, that were in an unsettled state because of an uprising of the Boers. He arrived at Cape Town in due time, and was installed as Provisional Governor of the Colonial Government, May 18th, 1882. Here he remained until October 5th following, in the mean time having restored

AMONG THE BOERS IN SOUTH AFRICA.



the district to peace, and secured the lasting friendship of the people whom the Home Government had expected him to fight.

ON THE MOUNT OF OLIVES.

Having always been of a devout turn of mind, and a fatalist, in that he believed in fore-ordination as it relates to the present as well as to the future, he had long wished to spend a season in Palestine and familiarize himself with the places there made sacred by the presence of Jesus. His opportunity had

THE MAHDI AND HIS FAKIS.

now come, so that directly after his return to England from South Africa he departed for the Holy Land, and there interested himself not only in a tour of the noted places, but employed much of his time in researches and a survey of the Holy Sepulchre, the Tabernacle, and the walls of Jerusalem. Most strange to relate, with all his reverence for the beliefs of the ages, he wrote several papers embodying results of his investigations, in which he set out to prove that the places pointed out to tourists as certain holy sites, and which for a thousand years have been accepted as such, could not have been the scenes of the actions and ministrations as reputed.

After several months thus spent in Palestine he returned to England and began to labor among the poor in London, even opening a school at Gravesend and taking the place of teacher to hundreds of children who had never attended school. While thus engaged he was for a second time summoned to the Belgian Court of Leopold II., and asked to take charge of the "International African Society," and to proceed to the Congo with the view of assisting in suppressing the slave trade in that district.

In response to this appeal of Leopold, he asked a leave of absence from his Government, without forfeiting his commission as Major-General, and this being granted, he again set sail for the Dark Continent. But at this very moment a cry went up for his presence again in the Soudan, in which the English Government joined, and instead of proceeding to the Congo, he went again to Cairo to resume the Governor-Generalship of the Soudan.

#### THE FALSE PROPHET.

Events leading to this sudden change in Gordon's engagement, and which sent him to the Soudan again instead of to the Congo, need to be here described: One year after the resignation of Gordon as Governor-General of the Soudan, a new and most unexpected disturbance of affairs in Lower Egypt was begun by the uprising of a fanatical sect under the banner of an enthusiast named Mahomet Ahmed, who boldly, and with surprising success, proclaimed himself the long-looked-for prophet that was to bring all the world to an acknowledgment and adoption of Islamism. He had really been for some time planning a crusade in the Dongola district, but so quietly, after the manner of the great Mahomet himself, that Gordon had never heard of him, or if he did, certainly no mention is made of him in any of Gordon's letters.

Mahomet Ahmed, also written Achmet, was a native of the province of Dongola, but laid no claim to being of royal blood. On the other hand he made a pretence of being a Christ, if not Jesus himself, and to carry out the pretension more fully, he said his father was like that of Christ, a carpenter. He himself was apprenticed to an uncle whose trade was that of a boatman, but he ran away from that service, and became the disciple of a faki (head dervish) who lived near Khartoum. As the result of a close study of religion, he was himself made a faki, and in 1870 took up his residence on the island of Abba, near Kana, on the White Nile. He speedily began to acquire a reputation for great devoutness, and so became wealthy, gathered disciples, and married freely, selecting wives from the families of the most influential sheiks of the vicinity. In the earlier part of 1881, Gordon having gone, he began to assert the claim that he was "the Mahdi"—the long expected redeemer of Islam whom Mahomet had foretold—and claiming a divine commission to reform Islam, and to establish a universal equality, a universal law, a universal religion, and a community of goods. Setting himself to gather about him a following, he addressed appeals to his brother fakis, one of whom informed the Government of his schemes and pretensions, adding the belief that



he was a madman. Raouf Pasha, the then Governor of the Soudan to take cognizance of him as the result of this information; and stage of his career that the Mahdi steps out into the arena of history. Colonel Stewart thus characterizes him: "In person the and slim, with a black beard and a light brown complexion. Lik

golawis  
writes w  
Judging  
conduct  
policy,  
he has  
natural  
manner  
has m  
merge  
usuall  
tribes c  
tact. I  
had bee  
the m  
some tir  
Stewart.  
portion  
gives  
tion of  
why a  
natic fir  
a follo  
Soudan.  
and Do  
writes—  
and oth  
within t  
northern  
Soudan-  
hammer  
Maliki

#### A DONGOLAWIS WOMAN.

religion, however, owing to the prevailing ignorance of the people mostly of an emotional and superstitious nature. Hence the influence of the fakirs or spiritual leaders, who are credited with a power, and are almost more venerated than the prophet." As for the strength of the Mahdi's following seems to have been the slave owners—the sheiks and chiefs who had flourished on their

tices under Zebehr, and whom all the efforts of Baker and Gordon had not put down—threw in their lot eagerly with any enterprise that struck at the Egyptian rule, under which a term had been definitely fixed for the emancipation of the slaves.

The Mahdi easily repulsed the detachment Raouf Pasha sent out to bring him in, and at the end of 1881, defeated in the most summary style a stronger force under Rashid Bey that had been dispatched to drive him out of Gebel Gadir. But these were petty successes compared with the great victory he gained in June, 1882, over the main Egyptian army of the Soudan, which Abdul Kadir, who had superseded Raouf Pasha, had gathered for the purpose of crushing him, and the command of which had been entrusted to Yussuf Pasha. Very few of the Egyptian soldiers escaped, and all their commanders were slain. Thus early did the Arab fanaticism display itself. The attack at Gebel Geon was led by the dervishes, headed by an enthusiast of exceptional dash and fury, who was known as "The Dervish," and of whose conduct Colonel Stewart reported, "I hear that the desperate and fearless way in which he rushes on a square armed with Remingtons is something marvellous."

After his victory at Gebel Geon the Mahdi pursued the offensive. He overran the open country unchecked, but failed to achieve any success against places that had been fortified, even though the fortifications were feeble. In assailing El Obeid he met with a severe repulse, losing 6000 of his warriors in one assault alone. During the months of the campaign which the battle of Tel-el-Kebir ended so summarily, there were discrepant rumors concerning affairs in the Soudan. Now there were reports of the dispersal of the Mahdi's bands; reports, again, of their threatening Khartoum and the towns on the White Nile. Then, later, in the winter season of 1882-3, came definite tidings of the surrender to the Mahdi of the town of El Obeid, after the garrison had endured desperate straits. The surrender, however, once consummated, most of the garrison, with the Commandant Iskander Bey at their head, took service under their conqueror. With the proverbial zeal of the renegade, Iskander Bey became the medium for endeavoring to gain over officers in the Egyptian army in which he had himself held a commission. After the fall of El Obeid the Mahdi remained himself inside the Kordofan Province, but his emissaries were active in other parts of the Soudan.

#### DESPERATE BATTLE BETWEEN HICKS PASHA AND THE MAHDI

The unchecked march of the Mahdi, his decisive victories, and the rapid increase of his followers, rendered the situation in Lower Egypt distressingly grave. It was feared, because believed, that he would soon overwhelm all the Soudan, and then direct his victorious and wildly fanatic army against Upper Egypt, which was undoubtedly his ambition. Something must be done at once, and, to check the growing power of the prophet, Egypt must look beyond her own territory for help. To this end the Khedive sent for Colonel Hicks, a retired officer from the Indian army, and offered him the position of commander-

VILLAGE OF QUEEN CROOK



were greeted with a tremendous yell from our troops, who had stood firmly and unflinchingly, and I may say as steadily as any troops could. Now the enemy moved off to the right among the long grass, and our front was cleared. Shells burst among them. Soon all were out of sight, except a few who walked about unconcernedly, and actually singly came up, after the rest had retreated, to within a few yards, brandishing their spears in defiance. One after another those fanatics were shot down. . . . Nordenfeldts and Remingtons are no respecters of creeds or fanatical idiosyncrasies. Sheik after sheik had gone down with his banner, although the Mahdi had assured each that he was invulnerable, and their faithful but misguided followers had fallen in circles around the chiefs they blindly followed. Twelve of the most prominent leaders—nine from Samoar and three from Kordofan—had left their bones to whiten on the field amidst three hundred of their followers."

#### ANNIHILATION OF HICKS PASHA'S ARMY.

The first battles against the Mahdi were won by Hicks Pasha, but his army was alarmingly small as compared with that of the enemy; besides, his Egyptian soldiers were the most arrant cowards imaginable, while those fighting under the Mahdi's standard were fanatically brave, believing themselves either invulnerable, or, if slain in battle, that they would be immediately transplanted to Paradise. Hicks Pasha and the few English soldiers with him had the gravest fears of success in operating against the Mahdi, with a government at their back that gave them the meagrest support, and a soldiery that was too effeminate to battle with the weakest enemy.

In pursuance of orders, on September 9th Hicks left El Duem for El Obeid, the Mahdi's strongest position, and which was fully two hundred and thirty miles from the nearest Egyptian post, and thus in the very heart of the enemy's country. Hicks asked for re-enforcements, but these could not be furnished, so, with his feeble, undrilled, cowardly tag-rags, he had to face the dread alternative of disobeying orders and being in disgrace, or probable annihilation. Brave man as he was, he chose the latter. The last information that came back from the doomed column was a message sent by O'Donovan, the London *Times'* correspondent, who dispatched the following from a point forty-five miles south-west of El Duem:

"We are running a terrible risk in abandoning our communications and marching two hundred and thirty miles into an unknown country. But we have burnt our ships. The enemy is still retiring, and sweeping the country bare of cattle. The water supply is the cause of intense anxiety. The camels are dropping." And so ended O'Donovan's work in the profession which he adorned; so closed too, the scanty record of this fateful advance!

Authentic details may never be forthcoming of the stupendous catastrophe which befell Hicks's column; and a lurid cloud of mystery may hang over the last scenes for all time. No European present in the fighting that wrought its annihilation is known to have survived.







such purpose as that. He went for the double purpose of evacuating the country, by extricating the Egyptian garrisons and re-constituting it back to these sultans their ancestral powers, withdrawn or suspended period of Egyptian occupation. General Gordon has in view the removal from the country of no less than 29,000 persons under military discipline, and the House will see how vast was the trust which was reposed in the hands of this remarkable person. We cannot exaggerate the importance attached to his mission. We are unwilling—I may say we were determined on nothing which should interfere with the pacific scheme; a scheme, however, absolutely the most politic and which promised a satisfactory solution of the Soudanese difficulty, by at once extricating the garrisons and restoring the country upon its old basis of local privileges." His instructions were put in the form of a letter of instructions issued by the British Government, under the seal of the British Government, and placed in Gordon's hands the day previous to his departure.

#### TO THE RELIEF OF KHARTOUM.

Gordon had intended to proceed to the Soudan by way of Suez, Akaba, and from that port across the country to Berber; but his plans were disarranged by circumstances which required his presence in Egypt. He reached the Egyptian capital on the 25th and attended an audience with the Khedive on the following day, at which that ruler again bestowed on him the high office of Governor-General of the Soudan, so that Gordon was appointed British High Commissioner, but the Khedive's representative also, to conceive and execute without restriction, which delegation of fairly full authority was a necessary condition of his service.

In Cairo, Gordon was convoyed by General Graham as far as Assouan. He then travelled with Colonel Stewart across the Nubian desert, on a distance of two hundred and forty miles, to Abou Hamed, and then to Berber. While making this journey, news of another dreadful disaster reached the Home Government. On February 4th, General Baker's force, while marching towards Tokar to relieve the garrison of that place, was attacked by a detachment of Osman Digna's Arab levies, which resulted in the loss of two-thirds of Baker's force, and a complete dispersion of the remainder, so that reorganization was impossible. This news caused Gordon great concern, and gave the British Government equal concern, as little was felt that Khartoum would fall into the hands of the Mahdi in the meanwhile, unless something could be done to arouse the people in the Sudan to make a resistance to the false prophet. To this end, before leaving Egypt, Gordon confirmed Hussein Bey Halifa Governor of the province, and forwarded orders to Khartoum removing Hussein Pasha from the post of British Generalship, and appointed Colonel de Coetlogen in his stead. He also issued a proclamation, and had it posted all over the city, proclaiming the Mahdi Sultan of Kordofan, remitting one-half the taxes, and per-



mitting the trade in slaves to be carried on. This action, though opposed by his nature, as perpetrating a great wrong that he had before tried so hard to suppress, was the only course left open to Gordon; for the power of the Mahdi was now grown so great that it was practically irresistible with the force available, while the people would join in any measure calculated to fully restore their immemorial slave-trading privileges. Gordon's purpose, therefore, was to placate both the Mahdi and the people, hoping thereby to save the garrisons

#### VICTIMS OF THE SLAVE-TRADING PRIVILEGES.

from massacre, and give a truce to hostilities until the evacuation of the Soudan could be accomplished.

#### HORRIBLE SCENES OF OPPRESSION.

It was on the morning of Tuesday, February 18th, that General Gordon made his entry into Khartoum. In one of his letters home he describes how, when entering Keren, arrayed in the splendid "gold coat" of a field-marshal, and in the pomp befitting the Governor-General of the Soudan, the humor of his fancy had suggested to him some resemblance in the eyes of the populace between him and "the Divine Figure from the North" who was just then a good deal in the mouths of men. A veritable "Divine Figure" he must have

shone in the sight of the people of Khartoum as he came among them on this February morning. What a change for them from the regime of Bashi-Bazonkery; of the pashas, of the stick, the lash, the prison; from the grinding taxation and the denial of even a form of justice! No wonder that, as he passed to the palace from the Mudirieh, where he had been holding a levee to which the poorest Arab was admitted, the people pressed about him, kissing his hands and feet, and hailing him as "Sultan," "Father," and "Saviour!" There was a whole-souled energy and an uncompromising thoroughness in everything that this man did. With the best will in the world to redress grievances,

FESTIVAL DANCE IN HONOR OF GORDON.

another man would have gone about the work in a methodical, ungalvanic fashion; but Gordon did not know the meaning of routine. There on the shelves were the Government ledgers, on whose pages were the long records of the outstanding debts that weighed down the overtaxed people. On the walls hung the kourbashes, whips and bastinado rods—implements of tyranny and torture. Gordon wiped out the evidence of debts and destroyed the emblems of oppression in a fine impulse of characteristic ardor. A fire was made in front of the palace, and the books and bastinado rods thrown on this funeral pyre of Egyptian tyranny.

GORDON HOLDING A COUNCIL WITH HIS OFFICERS.

He had so but begun the day's work. From the council to the hospital, thence to inspect the arsenal. Then he dealt with the misery of the prison. In that loathsome den two beings were rotting in their chains. Young and old, condemned the proved innocent and the arrested on suspicion, he found in one mass of common suffering. With wrathful disgust came his summary work of liberation. Before night came the chains scores of the miserables, and the beneficent labor was bettered. Ere this busy day closed, Gordon's energy had left him hardly inside of Khartoum. He had arranged that the Soudanese in their native land, and had appointed to the command a negro officer who had distinguished himself in Mexico unde- settled that the Egyptian soldiers were to be sent across the man, where was Hicks's camp before he started on his ill-fate they and their families were to be sent down the river in a also were to go the European civilians who cared to leave.

#### THE CRY FOR HELP.

Everything for a time appeared auspicious for a peaceful Soudan and of the complete success of Gordon's mission. The change of the situation was not only inspired by the loyal people in and about Khartoum, but was more reassuring when to El Obeid to invest the Mahdi with the Sultanship of with a present of a rich cloak, given by the Mahdi as an light he felt for the dignity bestowed by the appointment. to the Home Government were therefore filled with assurance safety of Khartoum and a peaceful solution of the question against the Egyptian Government.

But when Gordon's hopes were brightest the most distant from Cairo, which pictured the situation as being suddenly a serious and alarming character. The Mahdi was again with a force of 300,000 dervishes, as his soldiers were called marching towards Cairo, with an avowed purpose of sweeping and Infidel from off the earth. Berber was besieged, and the ing El Fasher, Dawa, Masteri, Foga, while Om Shanga and surrendered.

Telegraph communication being cut off, Gordon sent the Nile to ascertain the feeling of the northern tribes. As far as Webel Aul, but beyond that point the people were very much was filled with alarm for Gordon's safety, but refused to seek his aid, though message after message besought him to do the situation became more critical. Within Khartoum, however, by the issuance of paper money, to relieve the stringency and by the collection of exorbitant taxes, trade had revived and the









.

1

1

1

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

|

—

e smaller, until at last mouths were unfed, and gaping streets for some chance nourishment. Discontent is the and from discontent conspiracy developed that threw Gorny. Man could do no more than he. Like a hero he suffered friends; like a martyr he bore the odium that came from is, his power as commander, diplomat and man. The end out little did so brave a man foresee the baseness of the ne morning of January 26th, 1885, weak from fasting, hag-

DEATH OF GORDON'S BODY SERVANT.

rushing into the city, to complete the capture. Unex- ed, the brave soldier could make no defence, and hence the steel of his assassins; and thus he fell, no more a hero in England is the shame that she should exact such a sac- served more honor than in most generous humor she could

of Gordon's death have never been authenticated; a hundred d, but the carnival of massacre that followed simultaneously on threw every spectator into a chaos of horror, and blinded

the mind's eye by a confusion of fear that made described that Gordon had one faithful attendant: a poor, was armed with a matchet, or broad-bladed sword, defend his master, but was bayoneted by two of Gordon's; but frightful enough is it to know that Gordon died who should have been his friends—his soldiers and his

It is not necessary, nor relevant, to describe the Gordon's death, it being only important in this connection to late in the fall of 1884 English sympathy was excited and the government finally sent an army under Charles his relief. In fact, however, the army was expected movements toward Cairo, and to give protection to Soudan, rather than to rescue Gordon. This intention manœuvres in which the army indulged so long before transports on the Nile to relieve Khartoum, the investment known to Lord Granville for several months. But a because too late,—the English fleet reached Khartoum but not till January 28th, or two days after the fall of our hero, when by a vigorous shelling the rebels were city recaptured. The army was now put to some real execution in every battle that followed, many thousands and the Madhi's power overthrown completely in the S of operations was transferred to the Equatorial Province his spiritual and militant supremacy. Thus did the Egyptian Soudan end finally, though incidentally, in the purpose for which he was sent there by England a

## PTER XVII.

### OF EMIN PASHA.

ng thing, for which I will not say that although Emin Pasha selected positions for at least six months in the Soudan, yet not once is his name mentioned in Gordon's letters, nor does it appear in the diaries or journals of the expedition in Africa. This unaccountable mystery in the light of present events has for twelve years occupied the mind of the Equatorial Province, to which I have made a recent request of Gordon himself. It is interesting, in whatever aspect we view it, and in every respect it is even more enigmatical.

It is Eduard Schnitzer, and his family from Silesia. Eduard lost his considerable patrimony, which enabled him to travel to Breslau, Koenigsberg, Vienna and other cities, and was especially interested in the sciences, and exhibited marked proficiency. He studied medicine at the Koenigsberg University, and then came to Berlin to enter upon the practice of the profession, but was so far from satisfactory that he gave up the hope of mending his fortune, but turned to a Turkisk port in Albania, where he found success for four years.

In his profession quite profitable, and was engaged for the military, so that he was sent on to Syria and Arabia, in which expeditions he was the constant companion of the commander. In Constantinople, and in Janina of Epirus, which considerably changed his views. In 1875, but he again disappeared, and his friends knew nothing of his

Dr. Schnitzer's travels had been so extensive, and his acquired languages so great that he became a master of French, English, Turkish, Arabic, Persian, and several Slavonian idioms, besides occidental customs and manners that entirely destroyed every appearance of his Germanic descent.

#### JOINS GORDON IN THE SOUDAN.

In 1876 the doctor visited Cairo, and there by chance met General Gordon to whom he offered his services. So favorable was the impression he



EMIN PASHA. (DR. SCHNITZER.)

and so it was that Gordon  
knowledge  
that his  
were immediately  
engaged, and  
that time the  
has been to  
the interests  
Khedive. The  
mention made  
in the Egyptian  
prints is the  
ing brief  
by Martin  
late Austrian  
at Khartoum  
writing to his  
government  
Egyptian agent  
says: "A C  
Dr. Schnitzer  
calls him  
Moslem from  
Constantinople,  
such is named  
Effendi, has  
been in getting  
in touch with General

It seems, from circumstances since made public, that Gordon almost immediately formed the highest opinion of Emin's abilities both as a planner and administrator, for the latter part of 1876 Gordon sent him on a most important mission to Uganda, with instructions to bring back three men who had gone, contrary to Gordon's orders, to the capital of the country with the intention of annexing the country to Egypt. It was known



nd purpose of this force would be considered as an invasion, and likely create an intensely hostile feeling, which it was particu-  
le to avoid. Emin so well acquitted himself, however, on this  
ion, that the troops were brought back, and by a gift of many  
kindly assurances, M'tesa, King of Uganda, was brought into  
lationship with Emin, besides giving promises of aid, in case of  
the Egyptian contingent.  
was so pleased with the success of Emin's mission, that as a mark of

#### A UGANDA VILLAGE.

on he made Emin surgeon-general of the Equatorial Province, with ad-  
rs of sub-governor. Soon after he sent the doctor to another enter-  
greater importance, in which a yet more diplomatic adroitness had to  
for Gordon himself hardly expected the mission to be successful.

#### THE MISSION TO KING KABBA REGA.

vious chapter, describing Baker's services in Central Africa as  
eral, the reader will remember that an account was given of the

treachery of Kabba Rega, King of Unyoro, who viciously attacked Baker, but was in turn routed and driven out of his capital, Malindi, and his uncle, Rionga, installed in his stead. Though Kabba Rega was dethroned as described, he never lost his influence with his subjects, so that, after Baker left the country, he raised an army with which he easily defeated Rionga, and recovered the rulership, in which he continued with greater security than before. But the king's enmity against Egypt was intense because of Baker's action—as the representative of the Khedive—and as Kabba Rega was, next to M'tesa, the most powerful ruler in Central Africa, his authority was greatly feared. Besides, he was harassing the Egyptian frontier, and had made all effort at

extension of the borders or advance towards Lake Albert exceedingly dangerous. To placate this king, or, if possible, to win his friendship, was so necessary, that, reposing the greatest confidence in Emin, Gordon decided to send him to Unyoro with this pur-

#### EMIN AND HIS ESCORT EN ROUTE FOR UNYORO.

pose in view. Any other man than Emin might well have recoiled from such an undertaking, but being, like Gordon, a fatalist, he did not hesitate to set out, with a small escort, and succeeded in reaching Malindi after a journey of nearly three months. Here he found Kabba Rega in no amiable frame of mind, but by careful address and a bestowal of presents, Emin finally concluded a peace with the king, which was so well observed that Gordon was soon after materially assisted by Kabba Rega, as have other travellers in the region since, notably the Church Missionary Society representatives.

#### APPOINTED GOVERNOR-GENERAL.

The success of Emin's mission to the King of Unyoro was recognized by Gordon in a most gracious manner, not only by the most complimentary considerations, but by his appointment, in 1878, as Governor of the Equatorial

the rank of Bey, which position he retained up to the time  
1 to Pasha.

1 took charge of the administration of the Provinces, he was in  
indeed dangerous, position of one who finds himself at the  
dly body surrounded by a powerful and hostile force. The  
peace was a narrow strip along the Nile from Lado to Albert  
small country east of the Nile, occupied by the Shulis tribe.  
ouraged, Emin laid aside all fear, if indeed he ever experienced  
such a word, and set about the work of extending his authority  
peace. So resolutely did he apply himself that by 1880 most

and promoting  
of the sta-  
tions founded  
by Gordon,  
some forty in  
number, had  
been rebuilt,  
and a weekly  
post between  
them estab-  
which  
rfectly  
In  
peace  
down  
the  
th the  
of a  
ling  
even  
lave  
had  
ffectu-  
oted

#### EMIN HAILED BY UNYORO WARRIORS.

Besides this beneficent work, the Equatorial Provinces, which in 1878  
a deficit of nearly \$200,000 per annum, had not only become self-sus-  
; but actually exhibited a surplus of \$40,000. This result was due to  
matured consideration of the people's need, and a rigid application of  
y, combined with well directed labor. He had divided the whole province  
stricts, in each of which was a military station where the tax of grain  
ttle was collected from the natives. His own capital was fixed at  
ten miles north of Gondokoro, which he greatly improved and made  
well built town, all the government buildings and the mosque being of  
and roofed with corrugated iron, though the other buildings were chiefly  
auts, such as are common among most of the African tribes.





## HEROES OF THE DARK CONTINENT.

ranging from the perfectly naked, shiftless, cannibal Niam-niam, to the fairly well governed, clothed and housed Wagandas who, though not the most central kingdom, are undoubtedly the foremost people of the dark regions of Africa.

Many of these tribes are communistic and live in villages composed most commonly of huts, or poles bent in the shape of a domed hut, and thatched with palm leaves. These habitations are variously shaped, however, even while retaining the general dome design, for some terminate in a sharp apex, others are round and pointed, many are oblong, with high and wide doors, and yet the entrance is so small as to admit a person only when crawling on his hands and knees. Not a few are raised on posts several feet from the ground to shade for a large group of villagers sitting underneath; while,

to cap the climax of human eccentricity in the construction of dwellings, a few have their homes in caves excavated in the hill-sides.

Most of the tribes along the Nile are pastoral, and

### STATION AT KIRRI.

herds of cattle which they never, or very rarely kill for meat, but use the milk, by drinking it pure, or making butter, cheese, curds, &c. A great quantity of butter is made, it is never eaten, being used exclusively for anointing the hair and body, for an African without grease is like a woman without jewelry. Some of the tribes pay considerable attention to grain, of which *doorah*, a sorghum maize, is the principal product. The farmer is not worried by invasions of crows, cut-worms, locusts or grain-eating insects. Several species of birds attack the plant when it first peeps above the ground, and so great would be the ravages, if no protection was afforded, that the agriculturist is compelled to adopt measures more effective than scare-crows. In the centre of the field—which is usually a high platform is erected, to which is attached radiating to every point of the field. Boys are stationed there, and when flocks of birds make a swoop to attack the plants they shout and string sharply and thus frighten the winged pests. Hippo-

potami and elephants are the most serious curse to the grain-fields, however, for these cannot be frightened away.

#### NATURAL DRESS OF THE NATIVES.

Around nearly every village is a *zereba*, or hedge of thorns, which serves the double purpose of a defence in case of attack, and as a corral for cattle at night. Among the warlike tribes these hedges are grown so thick that a passage through them is impossible, affording all the protection of a fortification, and having only a single entrance, which is easily defended.

#### CATTLE COMMON TO THE NILE REGION.

In addition to the butter that is used for greasing the body, many employ ochre or other mineral pigments, also ashes, burnt bricks, etc., with which the legs, arms, breast and face are colored in almost identical resemblance to many of the Indian tribes of our country. This use of grease and coloring matter takes the place of clothes, for in so warm a country, clothing being a discomfort, a comfortable substitute is found by giving color to the skin that serves to hide a disgusting nakedness. A thought of indecent exposure no more occurs to him than it does to an animal, and as Baroud Bey observes, "any

3

8  
C

1  
1  
8  
1  
1  
1  
1  
1  
1



with spears, bows and poison-tipped arrows. The latter are also fiendishly barbed to make the greatest lacerations. Blacksmiths are common among nearly all the tribes, and though they work iron by the most primitive methods, contrive to make very useful implements. *Molots*, or hoes, hand-plows, spears, iron-pointed arrows, are the principal articles that they manufacture.

## DEFENDING THE GRAIN FIELDS.

Throughout this large district, at least south of Gondokoro, large game is plentiful, which gives evidence that the people are not good hunters. Elephants and hippopotami are very numerous and give nearly all the tribes infinite trouble by seeking the granaries, or rioting among the growing crops, destroying field after field in the night-time, and giving themselves small concern for





by a crocodile. Emin Pasha reports that six women lost their lives in this way during the first few weeks of his stay in Lado, while more than a dozen very narrow escapes were reported. In one instance a crocodile even mounted the bank and crawled up to a porch of one of the houses on which two young gentlemen were taking an afternoon nap, evidently with the intention of break

#### STALKED BY A LEOPARD.

ing his fast on human steak. Fortunately, the young men awoke in time to disappoint the courageous reptile, but they were scared to the point of death.

#### THE KINGDOMS OF UNYORO AND UGANDA.

The Baris, Madi and Shooli tribes are hunters and pursue with special zest hippopotami and crocodiles, which they kill for food quite as much as for extermination, but as a rule the Nile people reject crocodile flesh as unclean; not, however, because of its natural offensiveness, but because every such reptile is placed under a ban for having eaten human flesh. They say: "Why, the crocodile may have devoured my grandmother; shall I then eat the flesh that was nourished on my grandmother?"

The Dinkas are a pastoral people, but nevertheless they are extremely poor, thin to a cadaverous appearance, effeminate, and altogether so repulsive that it is little wonder they are regarded only as fit to be slaves. The Shir



tribe is only one degree improved, though in some respects they are to be commended, especially as they are noted for their affectionate dispositions and the strength of family ties, which is equal to that found among the most highly civilized people. They are also plumper and better formed than the Dinkas, but are no more courageous.

The Shooli, Lango and Umiro tribes are vigorous, independent and brave, by which characteristics alone they have avoided absorption by their powerful

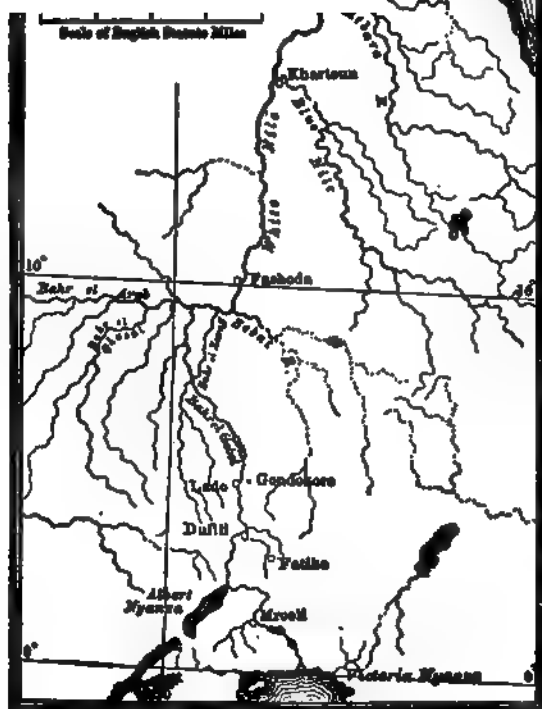
#### ATTACKED BY A CROCODILE.

neighbors of Uganda and Unyoro. Like all the more northern tribes, they maintain and are largely influenced by their Cajoor priests, who were at once rain-makers, medicine men and purveyors of magic in a hundred forms. The office of Cajoor would be a very pleasant one, in that he is regarded with the most reverential awe, were it not for the exceedingly discouraging fact that it frequently happens he forfeits his reputation by attempting things which he is unable to perform. He is often called on to heal a sick chief, or to produce rain when the country is suffering from a long protracted drouth; or to bring disaster upon an invading enemy. Failure of his magic to work these bene-

monly punished by the people seizing the Cajoor and burning him

#### BURNING A CAJOOR IN UGANDA.

Uganda and Unyoro, which for many years have remained intact through an alliance offensive and defensive, are the largest and most prosperous kingdoms of Africa. Since the visit of Long to M'Tesa in 1875, that potentate has been outwardly a Moslem, or was up to the time of his death in 1886, although



NILE REGION, IN WHICH GORDON OPERATED.

Stanley has claimed him as a Christian. His son, and successor, M'wanga, has been a pronounced Moslem and built several mosques in his kingdom, so that nearly all his subjects now profess that faith.

Kabba Rega, the ruler of Unyoro, has been less pliant than M'tesa, and has remained insensible to Mohammedan influence. He has preferred to occupy a neutral position in order to reap like advantages from both Moslems and Christians, receiving each alike and giving encouragement for both to win his favor by liberal gifts. In fact, the king is still a hearty believer in fetiches though he does not expose his idols so openly as formerly. In his palace are still found many *greegrees* and rudely carved wooden images of men and animals, to which he pays his devotions, and consults on occasions of need.

#### THE SITUATION OF EMIN PASHA.

Through the several tribes thus hastily sketched, Emin Pasha (a title subsequently given) had to make his way, and as their friendship was essential to the success of Gordon's undertaking, it fell to Emin to overcome their natural hostility and secure their sympathy. His easy acquisition of language was a masterful advantage, and by speaking their own tongue he obtained a hearing from all the tribes which might not otherwise have been accorded. Thus Emin, at length, was hailed as a friend and his missions facilitated by the chiefs of every tribe between Khartoum and Duffili. This feeling he further promoted, when he was assigned to the Governorship of the Equatorial Provinces, by seeking the welfare of the



native population and by removing, at great expense of time, treasure and suffering, the distressing consequences of centuries of unrestricted slave hunting.

Until the uprising, or rebellion, of the so-called Mahdi, in 1882, as already described, the Egyptian Soudan, as well as Emin's provinces, was in an orderly

CEREMONY OF CONFERRING TITLE OF PASHA ON EMIN.

and thoroughly peaceful condition. This most unfortunate occurrence, in a remarkably short space of time, utterly destroyed the peaceful and civilizing effects of Gordon's rule, and plunged the whole country into greater savagery than before, because to barbarian instincts was now added the more exciting and cruel disposition of religious fanaticism.

Though the Mahdi's rebellion had its seat in the Soudan, its baneful

influence spread far and wide, until Emin's provinces became involved. Gordon and his followers had to sustain the brunt of battle, but an invasion of the Equatorial district was attempted by the rebels, but which was successfully resisted by Emin through the bravery and fidelity of his negro soldiers.

#### INDUSTRIES INAUGURATED BY EMIN.

But news from the north, reporting repeated victories by the Mahdi's troops, unsettled affairs in Emin's provinces and resulted in cutting his communication with the civilized world. Mwanga, son of M'tesa, and the new King of Uganda, at once developed hostility to all Europeans through his open sympathies with the Mahdi, and to prevent the possibility of relief coming to Gordon's

way of Zanzibar, which must expose his own kingdom, he put a force to guard the south-east route and closed every avenue leading in the kingdom. Thus the last news that we received from Emin was dated in 1883. For his successful resistance to the rebels, the Khedive bestowed upon Emin the title of Pasha, which honorable promotion reached him before communication between him and the outer world was cut off.

#### EMIN'S APPEAL FOR HELP.

Emin, who was now practically a prisoner, though still the recognized ruler of his provinces, were Dr. William Junker and Captain Casati, Russian who chanced to be in the Lake region at the time of the Mahdi's invasion. All three were, for a long time, supposed to be lost, until Emin decided to send a brief letter to Mr. Allen, Secretary of the British and Foreign Anti-Slavery Society, in which his beleaguered position was described. Dr. Junker succeeded in getting through the Uganda lines and reaching Emin, following which escape the King of Uganda withdrew his lines of defence from the route and again permitted communication between his kingdom and the coast. In this same year (1886) Emin sent several communications to Europe, and to Dr. Junker, who was then in Vienna, describing his situation; which letters resulted in an earnest appeal being made by him to the International Society for government aid to relieve him. At the time the tribes of the lake region were still hostile to Emin and were inflicting much harassment through the intrigues of Arabic slave dealers, and personal liberty was little restricted. He might any time, indeed, have been expelled from his country, a thing which the slavers were eager for him to do, but he would not bring himself to even consider such a step. To leave the country would be to abandon the stations he had established, and the natives would have a lawful claim upon his protection. His sense of honor and duty forbade him to remain and share the fate of his subjects, whatever it might be. To take his people out of the country was an impossibility. He had no means of provisioning so many on the long route to Zanzibar, and if this could be met, another equally great still remained, for women and children could not endure so long and fatiguing a march without hundreds of porters the way. Emin, accordingly, honestly and wisely awaited the result of his appeal for aid, and in the mean time continued his geographical and scientific studies.

#### A DREADFUL FIRE.

In the fall of 1886, Emin discovered the great Kubik river, the source of which was found to be somewhere in the Usongora Mountains. He desired very much to follow up the stream to its head, believing it would lead him into an unexplored region, but his ambition in this direction was diverted by an extensive fire that did great destruction by sweeping an enormous district, destroying villages, crops and vast stores of ivory, and which almost annihilated

Wadelai itself. Emin had therefore to turn his attention to relieving, so far as lay in his power, the new suffering to which his people were thus suddenly brought. He solicited aid from a neighboring Usongora chief, who responded with such substantial means that Emin was able to rebuild Wadelai, and to

#### FIGHTING THE GREAT FIRE.

bring the people who had suffered most by the fire into a fairly comfortable condition again.

When the true situation of Emin became known in Europe, it was believed that Egypt, which he had so bravely served, would immediately dispatch a force

by way of Zanzibar for his deliverance; but with the bare offer of a promise to advance attempt his relief, and with inviting proposals.

The indifference exhibited by the Egyptian Government, which seems to have become utterly unmindful of Emin's services in extending the sovereignty of that nation to the great lakes, and in carrying the beneficent effects of civilization over such an immense district aroused England, and caused to be set on foot well directed means for rescuing the heroic Pasha. Government action was however, anticipated by private persons who thoroughly equipped a large expedition for the purpose, and placed Stanley in command, recognizing his incomparable fitness for such an undertaking.

#### TO THE RELIEF OF EMIN.

Learning from latest reports that Emin, after his losses by fire, had moved southward from Wadelai, Stanley decided to enter Africa by way of the Congo and take his expedition up that river as far as its navigation would permit, and then strike across the country over a route with which he was somewhat familiar. Stanley dispatched messengers far in advance of the expeditionary force to apprise Emin of his coming, as it was not known how critical was his real extremity and an announcement of succor near at hand might have the effect of either hastening a meeting, or in inducing Emin to hold his position a while longer.

The messengers thus sent forward met Emin at the southern extremity of Lake Muta Nziga, as he was returning from a trip to Usongora to visit the chief who had helped him to rebuild Wadelai. The news thus brought to Stanley's advance was such as to increase his anxiety to meet his deliverer repressed route Stanley would take to reach the lake.

reasonably conjecturing that, since nearly all his letters describing his critical situation had been sent from that place, Stanley would no doubt make every effort to push on directly for that station. But even after learning from the messengers of Stanley's approach, Emin wrote to Dr. Falkin, of Edinburgh, under date of April 17th, 1887, reiterating his previously expressed resolution never to abandon his work in Africa, and to remain in his position even after Stanley's

#### WAITING THE RETURN OF STANLEY.

arrival. He declared the same in letters also written to Dr. Junker and to the British Anti-Slavery Society. This resolution, however, was no doubt made in the belief that Stanley's purpose was to relieve him by furnishing new recruits and supplies of ammunition to last for a protracted period, which would enable him to hold his position for an indefinite time; and not with any idea that Stanley would give such assistance as would permit him to leave the stations garrisoned and to remove all the people who desired to make their escape to the coast.

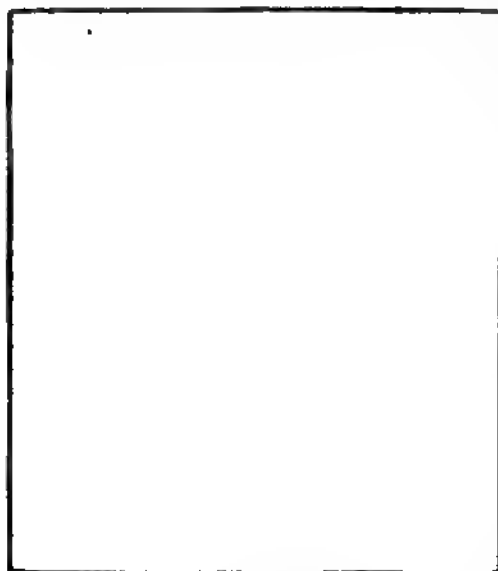
## OTHER RELIEF EXPEDITIONS.

Emin's anxiety for Stanley's safety after a time seemed to exceed that of his hope for speedy relief, so many months having now elapsed since a meeting with the messengers, and still without any further news whatever of Stanley. Emin knew the dangers that lay in the way, not only from the powerful and warlike tribes through which Stanley must pass, but also from other perils, such as famine, pestilence, and the almost insurmountable obstacles of raging rivers, dense thickets, unexplored country, and, lastly, possible mutiny. Being

## THE USOGA CHIEF'S SLAVES REBUILDING WADELAI.

unable to bear the suspense any longer, Emin, in September, started out in search of the intrepid explorer. The last news that came from Emin came in a letter dated November 2d, and was written from Kibero, on the eastern shore of the Muta Nziga. From this time, for more than a year, all traces of both Emin and Stanley were lost, so that the public mind again became restless with the fear that both had perished. Nor was this anxiety without cause; for the long silence of itself was foreboding of ill, while other events were known to be transpiring in the Central Lake region which gave the sombre aspect to the situation. From Stanley Falls, and the station at the mouth of the Aruwimi

River, where a part of the expedition, under Barttelot, was encamped. Stanley's return from his trip to Albert Lake, came letters full of sad news. Stanley had started across the country to communicate with Emin Pasha's promise to return in four months, leaving the principal part of his expedition at Stanley Falls, which he made the base of his operations. But month after month rolled by without any report of him being received, until his lieutenant Aruwimi and the upper station believed him to have met with disaster. This belief grew so strong that Barttelot decided to proceed in quest of him. In attempting to move that part of the expedition under his command, disaster resulted, in which Barttelot was killed, as will be more fully related in the next chapter. These facts were communicated to the promoters of the expedition in Europe, and of course caused the gloomiest feelings among the friends of the great explorer. But to intensify the fear which already prevailed,



MAJOR CHARLES WISSMANN.

At this critical juncture came letters from Lord Cromer, written from the seat of power in Egypt, describing a very reign of terror which was then prevailing over nearly all the interior of the region. Mwanga, the successor of the late King, urged by Mohammedans, had attacked the Protestant mission stations, killing many of the missionaries and burning Bishop Hannington. He had thrown all friends of the expedition into prison, and the condition of affairs, Stanley would have fought his way not only among savage tribes, but must meet a more formidable foe in the form of thousands of well-armed Arabs, who would oppose his march. These facts thoroughly justify the prediction that Stanley had fallen a victim either to the duplicity (who was known to look with an evil eye on the efforts of the British Association to suppress the slave trade), or to the overpowering numbers of hostile natives, re-enforced by Arabs in Uganda and Unyoro, who might crush a much larger force than that which was known to accompany him. Nor was there great reliance placed in the loyalty of his soldiers. Most of them were, or had been, in the service of Tippu Tib, and their sympathies and interests would seem to be naturally with the Arabs; for though slaves themselves they took savage delight in making slaves of others, while the rapine was encouraged by Arab masters. Thus the situation was a very alarming one.

At length, an expedition was proposed, to go in search of both explorers. Out of this proposition grew the organization of two expeditions under German auspices: one, under command of Lieutenant Wissmann, to ex-



by the Congo; and the other, led by Dr. Peters, to begin the search by proceeding by way of Zanzibar, the two expecting to meet somewhere in the lake regions.

#### CAREER OF LIEUTENANT WISSMANN.

A decisive result was expected from these expeditions, and with good reason, for though Dr. Peters had no experience in African explorations, yet he was an intrepid leader, with great executive abilities, and possessing many accomplishments that made him an available man for the most hazardous undertakings.

But while every confidence was reposed in Peters, public expectation centered chiefly in Wissmann, whose experience was equal to that of Stanley himself, as a short sketch will show.

Lieutenant Charles Wissmann was born in Frankfort-on-the-Oder, in 1853, whose father was a German inspector of military stores, whose duties compelled him to change his residence so frequently that young Charles was not put in school but received instruction from private tutors until the death of his father in 1866, when Charles attended consecutively the high schools at Erfurt, Kiel and New Ruppur. Upon reaching the age of eighteen he joined a cadet corps in Berlin, and two years later was attached to a regiment of Mecklenburg infantry. He was distinguished for his knowledge of the natural sciences, to a study of which he applied himself most industriously, setting these much above his interest in military affairs. Nevertheless, in 1873, he was promoted to a second lieutenancy, which permitted him to resign from the army, and through the influence of Dr. Pogge he offered his services to the African Society of Berlin. Upon an acceptance of his services by the society he was appointed topographer to Dr. Pogge's expedition, with which he sailed for St. Paul de Loando to make a journey into West Africa.

The expedition commanded by Dr. Pogge reached St. Paul early in 1881, and proceeded directly through the Ulunda States and up the valley of the Tschicapa, across by Kassai, Lubilosh, Lomani and on to Niangwe, where they arrived on May 5th. At this point Wissmann left the main body and continued his journey eastward until he reached Zanzibar on the 15th of November, 1882, thus making the trip across the continent in less than two years.

#### WISSMANN'S SECOND EXPEDITION.

On his return to Europe in January, 1883, Wissmann prepared at once for another expedition into Central Africa, a proffer of his services to the International African Association having been accepted. Considerable time was spent in organizing the expedition, which did not leave Europe until early in 1884, for the Portuguese interior station of Cassange. He plunged into the Dark Continent again with his accustomed enthusiasm, and following mainly his former route, by way of Kassai, reached Lubuka, the residence of King Mukenga, on November 10th, thus making a wonderfully rapid journey of over one thousand miles. Resting at Lubuka for a month he followed up the Lulua river a considerable distance, on the left shore of which he founded a station which he named Luluaberg. Continuing his journey he came upon the Saukura



river and lake, which he believed to be a new discovery, but afterwards found that the lake was the same as that discovered by Stanley and by him named *Lake Leopold*.

Wissmann returned to the Atlantic coast at the end of 1884, and retired to Madeira for a time to restore his shattered health, but his recuperation being rapid, in the fall of 1885 he returned to the Congo with the purpose of exploring the country lying north-east of the Lulua river. He penetrated far into the interior without meeting any serious obstacles until he reached the Baluba nation, where he was so fiercely assailed by the natives that he was forced to retreat for a distance of one hundred miles down the Lulua. Here he stopped for a time at a friendly village and then started across the continent. On the way he explored several tributaries of the Lulango river, and ascertained the sources of the Tschnapa and Lomani rivers. He then proceeded on to Lake Tanganyika, the shore of which he reached in April, 1887. After a short stay at Ujiji, Wissmann again crossed the lake and visited Nyangwe, which is two hundred miles west of Tanganyika, where he remained a month exploring the vicinity, and then turned eastward again and reached Zanzibar in August following, thus having crossed the continent twice, and once penetrated to the Central regions, so that altogether he had the experience of quite 12,000 miles of travel in Africa.

#### STANLEY TO THE RESCUE.

Wissmann's fourth expedition into Africa, which was made in 1888, with the purpose of finding Stanley and also to search for and relieve Emin Pasha, as already explained, was conducted with dispatch and wise management, but it nevertheless failed in its prime mission. Wissmann proceeded to the great lakes, but found the country in such a turbulent state, with Emin a closely guarded prisoner in the hands of the Mahdi, and his own force too small to attempt aggressive measures for Emin's relief, that he made haste to reach the east coast to report the news and hurry to Emin's aid a force large enough to compel his release.

Dr. Peters, in the mean time, had pushed forward through a thousand obstacles, as far as Lake Victoria, where he was so beset by large bodies of hostile natives that he was compelled to abandon all efforts at further advance, and to employ all his energies to beating back the enemy. His position was therefore as critical as was Emin's, for he had divided his force and one half of it had been driven back to the main highway leading to Zanzibar, over which it retreated to the coast. At the present writing reports have been received of the massacre of Dr. Peters and all the people with him, by a force of 1200 Somalis against which he vainly fought for several days.

Stanley's return at last with Emin and 560 persons composing the command has relieved the doubts and dark forebodings of the millions who believed for a long while that both were dead, and from his own reports we are able to follow, with accurate detail, his changing fortunes, the perils that



1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### STANLEY'S EXPEDITION FOR THE RELIEF OF EMIN PASHA.

TANLEY'S last expedition, from which he returned December 4th, 1889, after an absence of nearly three years, full of honor, and the glory that the civilized world gratefully bestows, was more important than any of his previous undertakings in the Dark Continent, not only because of the import of his mission, but also for the wonderful discoveries that have resulted therefrom. New rivers, new mountains, new tribes of people, have been added to our geographical and ethnological knowledge; new routes to the interior opened; new and richer fields for agriculture, trade and missionary effort described, and the world's pulse quickened by an acquaintance with alluring possibilities, which have set civilization in a quickstep pace towards the golden opportunities which Central Africa seems to invite.

It is in these mighty results that we perceive the unlimited importance of the expedition, rather than in the triumph of the undertaking to relieve Emin Pasha, though to this latter attaches the interest of a wondrous tale.

As explained in the previous chapter, the news of Emin's imprisonment at the hands of the Mahdi set the world to planning for his release. But there was something re-enforcing this humane aspiration, and for the prompting we have not far to search, as it is well explained in the sad story of Gordon's death. The English people had nothing but condemnation for the parliament that left Gordon to his fate, for the public heart, more sympathetic, more just, than the official directory, cried, "Shame! Shame!" and paid the homage of their sorrow over the grave of that heroic man. Therefore, when an appeal for help again reached them, like a wail from that dark region, men, not parliament, answered the distress call and resolved to dispatch immediate aid to Gordon's successor. A dozen or more expeditions were<sup>6</sup> proposed, not only in England but in Germany also, and the matter had profound consideration before the council called by King Leopold II., sitting as ruler of the Congo Free State. But these active preliminaries did not prevent private parties from carrying into execution a well-matured plan for relieving the imprisoned Pasha; and as private enterprises progress with greater rapidity than those under government direction, we are not surprised that the organization of an expedition was accomplished by individuals before the governments of England, Belgium or Germany had perfected their plans.

Sir William McKinnon, of Edinburgh, President of the British East Africa

Association, offered to contribute the sum of \$50,000, in addition to a like sum offered by the Khedive, towards equipping an expedition to rescue Emin, which generous proposal brought letters from other liberal Scotchmen and Englishmen, which finally led to the organization of what was called the "Emin Pasha Relief Committee" to which fund there were twenty-five contributors, composing a company of which Mr. McKinnon was made president. Singularly enough, the arrangements for completing the organization were made chiefly by cable, as Mr. Stanley was in America at the time under engagement to lecture. Mr. McKinnon therefore sent him a dispatch requesting him to take command of the enterprise. What other than a favorable response could the distinguished explorer make, even though it conflicted with his private interests, since his very heart was wedded to ambitions which travel in Africa could alone gratify? Besides, who else was so admirably qualified for the undertaking, and in whom would the world have such confidence? Whatever may have been his real feelings, certain it is that Stanley immediately cancelled all his engagements and entered at once into perfecting the details of the organization, and preparing the expedition for movement at the earliest possible moment.

H. M. STANLEY—FROM A PHOTOGRAPH TAKEN IN JANUARY, 1887.

## HONORS T

After an acceptance, by Mr. Stanley;  
 dition, as a special mark of public cor  
 Corporation of London, in Court of Cor

13th,

of th

quet

the l

conve

in a

stanc

mour

ostrie

phan

pane

mon

Afric

the

Cong

from

SIR WM. M'KINNON.

Mr. Stanley made his preparation  
 accepted the services of eight Englis  
 Jameson, Barttelot, Johnson, Nelson, Wi  
 a three-years' leave of absence from t  
 panied by two officers of the Belgian  
 army, who were enlisted at the request  
 of His Majesty, King Leopold II.  
 Among the special articles with which  
 Mr. Stanley provided himself was a port-  
 able, steel whale-boat, which was built  
 under his directions in thirteen days.  
 This boat was 28 feet long, 6 feet beam  
 and 2 feet 6 inches deep. It was built  
 throughout of steel, and divided into  
 twelve sections, each weighing 75 lbs.,  
 to facilitate its transportation. The  
 sections were fitted on the edges with  
 india-rubber, so that, when brought to-  
 gether and bolted, the joints were water-  
 tight. The boat pulled ten oars besid  
 capacity was twenty-two men and 1000 l  
 put together in thirty-five minutes, and t  
 than half that time. Mr. Stanley's





detached so as to permit its easy carriage by three or four men. Another provision, next in importance to the rapidity and accuracy of its firing, was the shield with which the gun was provided, rendering the operator almost secure from the arrows or even bullets of an enemy. The accompanying illustration will show more clearly than worded description the appearance of the gun and the manner of handling it.

#### DEPARTURE FOR AFRICA.

Stanley left England on the 22d of January and proceeded directly to Cairo, where he held an audience with the Khedive, and also with Dr. Carl Junker, who had recently returned from the interior, having been one of Emin Pasha's lieutenants and by escaping, as already noted, brought back the latest news concerning the beleaguered, or imprisoned, Governor of the Equatorial Provinces. In this interview Dr. Junker related that he left Emin on January 1st, 1886, at Wadelai, and succeeded in securing a steamer, upon which he fled up the Nile, passing the stations of Fatiko, Lado, Fashoda, Duffili, Tashoro and Magungo, and thence to Chibero, on Albert Lake. He visited Kabba Rega at this latter place and there met Sig. Casati, the Italian explorer, and agent of the Khedive. After leaving Kabba Rega, Dr. Junker travelled across Uganda and thence to the south shore of Victoria Lake to Ukumbo, the French missionary station, where he was kindly received and assisted. In this journey he met several Europeans, among whom were Rev. F. Mackay, and Fathers Louderal and Delmon, in the Uganda country; Vicar Apostolic Goreau at Ukumbo; Rev. F. Gordon and a Mr. Wyce at Ut Salala; a Mr. Grescher, who has since been killed by Arabs, at Taboro, and several missionaries at Mpwapa. Besides the information thus secured from Dr. Junker, Mr. Stanley was also presented with an excellent map of the lake regions by the doctor, which he found to be of great value because of its remarkable accuracy.

Dr. Schweinfurth was also in Cairo at the time of Stanley's visit, and in company with Dr. Junker called several times upon the latter. At these friendly visits the most eligible routes for reaching Emin Pasha were frequently and exhaustively discussed. Both Schweinfurth and Junker strongly advised the route leading from Zanzibar to Lake Victoria, and over which Stanley had already travelled, but notwithstanding the fact that Dr. Junker had recently escaped over this same route, Stanley looked upon it as much less secure than the approach from the west, on account of Mwanga's hostility, who held every avenue leading out of his kingdom eastward. He therefore explained his intention of proceeding by way of the Congo river, believing that with the steamers at his disposal he might reach the head of that stream in thirty-five days, after which he would have only a land march of 360 miles, from Stanley Falls.

Yet another route was discussed, viz., that which leads from the east coast through Massai land, over which Mr. J. Thomson travelled, and by which he makes the distance to Wadelai 925 miles; certainly the shortest route, but not



nearly so available as that by the Congo river, which affords excellent means for transportation of large quantities of stores, such as Stanley carried with him.

While Mr. Stanley did not see proper to accept the advice of Doctors Junker and Schweinfurth, he was none the less grateful for their kindly interest, and was particularly thankful to the former for the very valuable information given respecting the situation of Emin Pasha, the stations, the routes, the hostility of Mwanga, and the location and numbers of Europeans in the lake region.

#### OFF FOR ZANZIBAR.

On the 3d of February, Stanley left Cairo en route for Zanzibar, accompanied by sixty-one black soldiers of the Egyptian army. Many distinguished persons were at the station to bid him God-speed, among the number being Sir E. Baring, Lady Baring, Generals Baker and Stephenson, Pigrane Pasha and several European residents of the city. Dr. Junker, also accompanied him as far as Suez, at which port Stanley, with Dr. Parke, of the Army Medical Department, and his soldiers embarked for Zanzibar, and on his arrival at that city he engaged a considerable number of East African servants, known to him in his former journeys.

Besides engaging a large party of Zanzibaris porters and soldiers, Stanley also had the good fortune to secure, for a round sum, the services of Tipo Tib, the great slave-hunter and ivory dealer, who had before acted as Stanley's guard, with a force of five hundred armed Arabs, when the latter made his celebrated march through the land of dwarfs and cannibals, as already described. This man had, since his last service with Stanley, become the most powerful slaver and merchant in all Africa. He had traversed a greater portion of the interior in a quest for ivory, taking slaves incidentally, and so overawing the natives by murderous attacks and acts of rapine that all the chiefs and nearly all the African kings stood in the greatest dread of him. During the past several years he had also held the post of governor of the Kasonge district, under appointment by the Congo Association. As a Mussluman he assumed the prerogative of a Sultan, and had a harem with forty dark-eyed houris, which he had no disposition to abandon; hence, when engaging with Stanley, he made it a condition of his contract that his forty wives should bear him company on the journey.

Considerable time was spent in Zanzibar procuring supplies and men, so that Stanley did not embark for the mouth of the Congo until February 27th. His company, on leaving Zanzibar, consisted of the following persons: Dr. Parke, 61 trained Soudanese soldiers, 13 Somalis, 3 interpreters, 620 Zanzibaris, 40 Arabs, and Tipo Tib and his forty wives.

The trip around the Cape of Good Hope was a tedious one, and it was the middle of March before the expedition reached Banana Point, at the mouth of the Congo, where Stanley found seven English and two Belgian officers awaiting him. These, however, had not been idle while awaiting his arrival, for they





immediate action. Accordingly, Stokes and Mwanga embarked at Ukumbi with about fifty Buganda, arms and ammunition being supplied partly by Stokes, and partly by the priests themselves.

"Meantime, our people in Busagala had been drawn into war before the return of the messengers whom they had dispatched to us. These messengers, on their way to this place, had to pass through the country of the Bazongora, commonly called Baziba, from whom they have received two or three canoes to enable them to come here. Tidings soon reached Kalema that the Baziba had sent canoes to this quarter in order (they supposed) to fetch Mwanga. Accordingly, Kalema lost no time in dispatching an army to punish the Baziba for their action, which was regarded as rebellion. The Christians

---

---

VILLAGE OF BUSAGALA.

got word of Kalema's force being on the way to attack their friends, the Baziba, and went at once to the rescue. They attacked Kalema's army and completely routed it, following up their victory far into the interior of Budu. Some then proposed returning to Busagala, but the majority advised marching right on to Kalema's capital. The counsel of the latter prevailed, and the Christians crossed the Katonga, which is the westernmost boundary of Buganda proper, where they were met by another larger force, sent by Kalema, under the command of his chief minister. A fierce battle ensued, and, although the Kalema forces were much larger, the Christians were again victorious. Their leader, named Nyonyintous, and many others were slain. Among the leaders

(392)

**KALEMA BURNS HIS BROTHERS AND SISTERS, AND HIS OWN CHILDREN.**



## S OF THE

of the bittered  
ed, viz.: Ch  
Bishop Han  
Gabunga, an  
to the king  
nvariably fals  
country.  
rtened by the  
ody to Busag  
gence of the  
th of the mo  
ssengers who  
me as Mwang  
h he had sen  
ore Mwanga.  
nber were s  
company wi  
d his standar  
e for nearly  
not a few of

**HIS BROTHER**  
aged at his r  
fearing that t  
t was), and s  
were prisone  
princesses, his  
eath in the h  
val, probably  
d not arrived  
e capital.  
r, Mwanga's  
ia to meet his  
spear and shi  
y superior, n  
several Arab  
nga's troops  
arabs set fire t  
hile Mwanga  
ping with his  
**WANGA SECURE**  
ole, mostly f  
y rebelled ag

Kalema. They therefore, without hesitation, swore allegiance *en masse* to Mwanga, who built a fresh camp on the largest island, and held a council as to future operations. He had now at his command all the canoes (many hundred) belonging to Buganda, besides no small following from the mainland.

"Mwanga next proceeded with his fleet along the coast of Buganda, burning and pillaging ports, rounded the promontory of Ntebe, and, advancing up Murchison bay, finally encamped on an island named Bulinguye, opposite his former temporary capital, Munyonyo. Kalema had watched his movements, and

#### MWANGA'S CAMP ON BULINGUYE ISLAND.

sent a small force under an Arab named Hamis, to prevent Mwanga from landing on the mainland at Munyonyo. It will perhaps be remembered that it was at Munyonyo where Mwanga was stationed some three years ago when he ordered a general massacre of the Christians.

"The island of Bulinguye now became Mwanga's headquarters and there he was when we last heard from him, surrounded mostly by his Christian followers, who are his chief advisers. There he is being gradually joined by many Buganda, almost all his former chiefs—deposed from office by Kalema,



them explaining the position of affairs, Mwanga being eager to have their assistance. Now is the opportunity, if they are able to avail themselves of it. Could they succeed in placing Mwanga in power, they would have him as their dependent and ally, and thus exercise a most salutary control over his actions in future, besides overthrowing the present fanatical and intolerant Arab sway in Buganda.

"More recently, Mwanga's troops landed at Munyonyo, and burnt the old capital there, as also a large vessel or dhow which Kalema had nearly com-

#### UGANDA MOHAMMEDANS AT THEIR DEVOTIONS.

pleted. A battle also took place on the mainland to the east of Murchison's Bay, in which Kalema's forces were defeated and many of their guns captured.

"Mwanga has now sent to Busagala, inviting all the Christians there to come to his aid. This they will undoubtedly do, but even with their aid, I do not think it likely that Mwanga will venture to face Kalema's army in open encounter. He means, I understand, to retire to Sesse, and there establish himself, meantime waiting for re-enforcements, and expecting aid from the white men in Busoga. Stokes means at once to go to his assistance with a cargo of arms and ammunition. Meanwhile, Mwanga has sent a deputation to ourselves and



to the French priests at Ukumbi, inviting them and us to repair to Sesse in order to carry on Christian instruction among our respective communities of converts."

Mr. Mackay, the writer of the above letter, received a communication from Mwanga, under date of June 25, 1889. Translated, it reads as follows:

"I send my compliments to you and to Mr. Gordon. After compliments, I, Mwanga, beg of you to help me. Do not remember by-gone matters. We are now in a miserable plight, but if you, my fathers, are willing to come and help to restore me to my kingdom, you will be at liberty to do whatever you like.

"Formerly I did not know God, but now I know the religion of Jesus Christ. Consider how Kalema has killed all my brothers and sisters; he has killed my children, too, and now there remain only we two princes [Kalema and himself]. Mr. Mackay, do help me; I have no strength, but if you are with me I shall be strong. Sir, do not imagine that if you restore Mwanga to Buganda he will become bad again. If you find me become bad, then you may drive me from the throne; but I have given up my former ways, and I only wish now to follow your advice.

"I am your friend,

"MWANGA."

In the above letter it is made very clear that, had Stanley entered the Victoria Lake region, he would have had to fight his way, if, indeed, he had been able to beat back the natives, which is decidedly improbable; for, in addition to a large following of the black king, his troops were armed with guns, and not a few breech-loaders, while the Arabs might have been depended on to give him great assistance.

#### REASONS COMMERCIAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL.

A second reason which influenced Stanley in the selection of the Congo route is found in the fact that, in his expedition up the Congo, in 1880, he had established many stations that were known to be still flourishing; had completed treaties with the natives that gave him assurance of their friendship, and besides being familiar with a large part of the Congo, knew that, for so large an expedition as he was conducting, the river afforded him the easiest means of conveyance, with the many boats at his command.

But besides the two reasons explained, there may have been a third one, looking towards both a commercial and geographical advantage. Central Africa, or the lake regions, are represented as being of surprising fertility. The lakes themselves are vast inland seas, upon which the largest vessels might be put in service to carry products that the country yields in prodigal profusion, but which might be made to produce, under tillage, enough grain and cotton to supply the world. This wondrously favored district cannot be reached by the Nile because of many impassable cataracts, and the impenetrable "sud," or vegetation, that collects in the stream. The overland route from Zanzibar is 1000









The members of Tipo Tib's household, or, in other words, his *harem*, be admitted, were the most interesting attaches of the expedition. So it must be confessed, were a little *blase*, as the French say, or, to be more courteously, they were past that age when plumpness of form and freshness of features are most commonly found. But the majority were lithesome, fair, vigorous and (is it to their discredit?) not above making favorable responses to the overtures of the natural male flirts that belonged to the expedition. Tipo, so far from being a bearded pard or Blue Beard, seemed to extract pleasure from the satisfaction which the officers exhibited in the innocent amours of his wives. Having indeed a good thing, he was unselfish enough to share it with his companions. Some of these houris were dressed most becomingly in Arabic costume, while others exercised a freedom only compatible with an oppressively hot climate, and herein possibly lay much of their charms. Anyhow, those having the least dress certainly attracted the most admiration. But the reader must not overlook the fact that in nearly all hot countries, and in Africa especially, the most flagrant exposure of person is not regarded as being the least indecent. Custom governs, and in Africa, along the equatorial line, much body decoration is employed, but practically no covering. The Georgia colonel who, it is related, appeared on dress parade in a cocked hat, paper collar and big spurs—with nothing between the collar and the spurs—would cut a fashionable rather than a ridiculous figure among the African tribes.



than three hundred from the coast. It is a station founded by Stanley in the interest of the Congo Association, and is presided over by Mr. and Mrs. Ingham, who have charge of the mission. It is admirably located, and presents a charming aspect from the river. The station was created at a cost of barely \$500; yet so admirable has been its management that it is a much more interesting, inviting and prosperous place than Manyanga, only a few miles further north, which had cost the Association \$50,000.

#### SUPERSTITIONS OF THE NATIVES.

Though the natives at Lukunga and the region thereabout are under subordination and influence of the missionaries, they have lost very little, if any,

#### LUKUNGA STATION.

of their old superstitions, by which they still continue to be largely controlled.

Mr. Herbert Ward, an attaché of the expedition, and who also spent a considerable time at this station, has communicated, by private letter, many facts respecting the natives of this region, from which I quote the following:

"\* \* \* The most interesting item is, I think, an ordeal which took place the other day close by in this valley. It was a 'N'Ganga N'Kissi,' or medicine

aver. I learn from Mr. Harvey, of the Livingstone Inland Mission, general belief in the Congo is that nearly all sickness and death is the witchcraft. The consequence is that, when anyone is dangerously ill, an arises, 'Who has bewitched him?' The guilty person is supposed etly devouring the spirit of the unhappy sufferer. Should he die, a ' or medicine man, is usually sent for to determine who it is that is of 'N'Doki' (the devil), or is guilty of the witchcraft. The 'N'Ganga' dly a crafty individual of another tribe or from a distant village. He h him an elaborate apparatus, consisting of leopard's teeth and claws, d other skins, a fetish idol, perhaps a rattle, and above all a plentiful powdered chalk. On special occasions he also adds a huge mask made er layers of bark and painted in the most grotesquely horrid manner, rations of cowtails, which latter article seems indispensable to all iests. Sometimes, especially when displaying his art before an audience te persons are spectators, he charges furiously up and down as if ith, and fleeing and chasing imaginary spirits, until his breath is quite ore frequently, however, the 'N'Ganga' seats himself on rising ground displays his paraphernalia, which he cleverly manipulates. He en- make his audience believe that each article about him flies to his hand re wish, and it is not surprising, therefore, to learn that he is a fair n which sleight-of-hand is well practised. Even the mat upon which ems now and then to be alive. He turns and looks at it occasionally manifestations seem to him as it were excessive. His well-feigned ent is not lost upon the throng. The mat, they plainly see, is beyond l, as is everything else, his inspiration being from a superior and wer. Every now and then he pauses in his mummeries and listens ead bent to the earth, and then he will bound up again from his attitude and intently examine the various persons near him, and turn . them with equal suddenness, practically clutching at the air as if lay hold upon some unseen being. He shrieks and wails like one

Usually, before declaring the name of the guilty or suspected person, ent for his services (previously agreed upon) has to be made, and in sactions he shows that his connection with the unseen world has not is interest in the possession of the wealth that belongs to the material is existence. He is not easily imposed upon, either, as regards the r quality of the cloth offered to him as his remuneration. The guilty named, the poor wretch has to undergo the ordeal of poison. He k a certain amount of n'kasa, prepared from a poisonous bark by the ' Should the potion act as as an emetic, the accused is pronounced otherwise, Satan's presence in the man is proved, the victim himself well assured of the fact as his accusers. His body begins to swell from of the poison, and he is either buried alive (though in frequent throat is cut before burial) or is drowned."

1

2



he met Stanley, with whom it was his wildest ambition to make a trip into the lake regions. It was no surprise, therefore, that he should immediately turn his steps, his determination and change of plans being described in the following letter:

"EMIN PASHA RELIEF EXPEDITION,

MATADE STATION, April 3d, 1887.

"You will be astonished to hear that my plans are changed. Instead of returning to you, I am turning round the other way and going with Stanley and the Emin Pasha Expedition.

THE FALLEN MONARCH BESET BY HYENAS, JACKALS, VULTURES AND LIONS.

"I was on my way down country to embark for Old England and thence to America. About two days from here I met two armed Assyrians. Immediately behind them, and mounted on a fine mule whose new-plated trappings glistened in the sun, was Stanley himself. Behind him came a Soudanese giant, about 6 feet 6 inches high, bearing a large American flag. I saluted the Congo king. He smiled, and, indicating the bare ground, said, 'Take a seat.' He dismounted, and, handing me a cigar, we squatted and conversed for half an hour. He accepted me as a volunteer (I had previously, as you know, written to him), and it was at



## HEROES OF THE DARK CONTINENT.

that I should proceed down to this place and see to the remaining loads. I have done so, and now leave for our days.

Eight whites he has with him, two have contributed to me for the privilege of accompanying him through the others are English officers on full army pay as volunteers. In my life was so struck with any sight as with Stanley—Egyptians, Soudanese, Somalis, Zanzibaris, and Congos. It took me two hours to pass them, and then I met Major Barttelot, a young fellow, burnt very dark, with a flannel shirt, top boots, etc. He was carrying a load of baggage now had abandoned. 'I say, are you Ward?' he shouted, 'and now belong to your expedition.' 'I am very glad to hear that,' I replied; 'Stanley has spoken of you; and so you are coming. That's right; very good business!' He seemed to be full of tremendous energy and looked very fit; and I admired him immensely.

Tipo Tib, the notorious slave trader of Stanley Falls, has come from Zanzibar with Stanley, and, in his silken robes, jewelled turban and a very ideal Oriental potentate. It is thought 'good business' that Barttelot would say, getting him for an ally. He had forty-two women with him. Some of them are handsome women. One little girl, dressed out in magnificent costume, appeared to be rather free in her behaviour; she winked at me decidedly, and did not resent a gentle squeeze. I gave her a little present, and we parted on good terms.

## CHAPTER XX.

### THE TRIP TO BOLOBO.

**J**OURNEYING through a wild country may be ple circumstances. It is not therefore to be suppo expedition won its way through Africa by const cleaving a passage through dense forests, over cataracts, in continual peril and harassments. E certainly had to encounter, but the march was relieved by m the abundant supplies he carried with him enabled him t there were not entirely wanting the conveniences that settlem provide. The journey up the Congo to Nyangwe took abo along the river great changes have occurred since Stanley's m that stream twelve years ago. In many places the native from the banks, and large Arab and Zanzibarian settlements place, for Tipo Tib has some rivals, though at present they each other. At frequent places along the banks extensive found, and all round Nyangwe and Kasonge the country is fields, and with plantations of all kinds. Nyangwe is no lo place it was in the days of Livingstone, or at the time of ' Three days' distance from it is Kasonge, Tipo Tib's headqua with broad streets and many fine houses. Here also are other and Arab and Zanzibar immigration is going on at an incre

On arriving at Stanley Pool, where Stanley stopped for launch, named *Henry Reid*, belonging to the American Union, was tendered to the explorer to transport a portion chandise and ammunition from that point to the intended wimi. Mr. Stanley was glad to avail himself of this kindly at his command had such small capacity that the transp Pool had been attended with considerable discomfort for la *Reid* was therefore at once put into commission, and tow besides the steel whale-boat. The lighter, which had previo steamer of the Etat du Congo, was formerly the quarters officers and harem. The dark-eyed houris enjoyed their was, of course, a perfect novelty to them. They frolicked ar the whole of the day, while at night the sound of their ripp be heard for a long distance.







these glowing descriptions. Talking of comparisons, which naturally occur to the reader, Stanley exclaims, "Why, the Rhine, even including its most picturesque parts, is only a microscopic miniature of the Lower Congo; but we must have the Rhine steamer, and its wine and food and accommodations, to be able to see it properly. The Mississippi? The Congo is one and a half times longer, and from eight to ten times broader. You may take your choice of nearly a dozen channels, and you will see more beautiful vegetation on the Congo than on the American river." Besides, there are its crocodiles, its hippopotami, its elephants—"standing sentry-like in the twilight"—its buffaloes, red and white, its parrots, its flocks of ibis, and a thousand other things that are novel and picturesque. "And as for towns," says the great explorer, "I hope the all-gracious Providence will bless our labor, and they will come by-and-by; meantime, there is room enough to stow half Europe comfortably on its spacious borders." The Nile, the Danube, the Volga, the Amazon, Stanley knows them all; and the Congo is still his king of rivers.

To the natural scenery and imposing size of this great river are added many other attractions, not the least of which are the numerous villages of the several tribes along its shores.

Just above Stanley Pool, and opposite the Ba-teke territory, is the land of the Ba-yanzi tribe, who occupy the south side. Here will be found the first fixed settlement of the tribes to be encountered on a journey up the Congo. Their village is very picturesque as seen from the water—"a broad lane leading up to a grove of oil-palms and bananas, with compact and tidy-looking houses interspersed among them; but the favorable impression is rather spoilt on landing by the horrible black fetid mud strewn with decaying offal that one has to cross." The people are a finer looking race than any Stanley had seen on the Congo. Some of the men are "perfect Greek statues as regards their splendid development and pose of their figures." The Ba-yanzi have certain cruel customs, but are in many respects much superior to some other natives of the great river. They make excellent pottery, knives, hatchets, articles of furniture and other things, which they sell to the Ba-teke and the Wa-buma. They are fond of music, and have a native instrument of the dulcimer class, upon which they produce not unpleasant harmonies. They are clever fishermen, and cultivate fruit and vegetables, tobacco, manioc and other products, in which they do a fair trade. According to ethnologists, they are not of the negro race, but belong to the "Bantu" family, which includes the people around Lake Tanganyika and Lake Nyassa, in Eastern Africa, and on the Zambesi.

They are remarkable for their great development of hair, which they treat very decoratively, sometimes fantastically dressing it up from the crown, and again twisting it so tightly as to be almost inflexible and horn-like in appearance. A similar fashion also obtains at Bolobo, which, however, is quite natural since this station is on the north line of the Ba-yanzi country.



HERO TIE'S ADVENTURE WITH A CROCODILE



tion had reached the vicinity of the Aruwimi river, an adventure was met with which came near ending the cruel career of the savage Tipo Tib. While the boats were put in to shore to replenish their store of fuel, the great Arab chief went out on the bank for a recreative walk, and seeing some very beautiful wild honeysuckles depending from the vine that had climbed a large tree standing near the water's edge, attempted to gather the flowers of delicious fragrance. He had scarcely approached the base of the tree, however, when he was struck a violent blow which knocked him several feet distant and fairly into the river, but falling against a prostrate tree which extended into the stream, he was thus prevented from being thrown into deep water. The blow, too, chanced to be only half delivered by reason of the dense brush, so that Tipo Tib was hardly stunned, and he was able to immediately comprehend his dreadful adversary. In another moment he saw a huge crocodile advancing upon him with wide-open jaws, and but for his good fortune in having a gun with him to make his defence, he must inevitably have fallen a victim to the monster. Tipo therefore aimed his musket quickly and sent a ball into the eye of the reptile, but did not succeed, even with such a capital shot, in dispatching it; but he followed the shot with a thrust of his rifle into the mouth of the crocodile, which made the reptile retreat to securer quarters in the water. But though the Arab won the battle, he was immediately after the fight so prostrated with fear that his wives had to fan and coddle him for two hours, and give him the restorative of admiration for his valor.

#### BOLOBO STATION.

One of the principal stations on the Lower Congo, established by Stanley on his first expedition, and where he made his first camp on his last, is Bolobo, which is mentioned several times in the narrative of his relief expedition, because it was made a base of supplies. The Bolobo country commences at the picturesque village of Itimba, which is admirably situated on a small but very thickly-wooded hill. "Then, as you sail up the river," says Mr. Stanley, "village after village appears in a nearly continuous line for about an hour, when the station (Bolobo) comes into view on the open higher ground behind a narrow belt of tall timber lining the riverside. Imagine a strip of the left bank of the river, about twelve miles long, a thin line of large umbrageous trees close to the water's edge, and a gently sloping background of cleared country rising to about thirty feet above the tallest trees. Just above the centre of this strip, on the open ground, is the station of Bolobo, consisting of a long mat-walled shed, a mud-and-water kitchen, a mud-walled magazine with grass roofs, and about seventy huts arranged in a square, on the outside of the inner group of buildings. Above and below it, close to the water side, amid banana and palm groves, are sheltered about fifteen villages. Seven of these—Itimba, Mimgolo, Biangulu, Ururu, Mongo, Mangu, Yambula and Lingenji—are below the station. Eight are above, among which is Mbanga and a few villages of the Banuna tribe. These form what is called Bolobo.

- SKETCHES IN AND ABOUT BOLOBO, AND STANLEY FALLS.

## THE BA-TEKE MUSICIANS.

the station, where the second camp was made, and just beyond the missionaries, lives a small tribe called the Ba-teke, a quiet, who are chiefly distinguished as what may be called natural melody halted among them for two days, and gives an interesting proficiency on native instruments. He says: "They discourse melody from a form of marimba, an instrument of wide-spread range, in principle is so many slips or keys of metal arranged along a sound-board. These instruments are about eight inches long, and three to four They are provided each with metal bars tempered by fire and hammered highly metallic elasticity, and when pressed down sharply with the spring back and give a clear, distinct note. They are also tuned in keys, each instrument differing in scale so as to play in harmony with her. When twanged by practised hands they yield delightfully sweet comparable to the dulcimer, mandolin or zither, and when played well pretty African girl the critical ear might fancy himself under the bower accomplished Madrid senorita."

Among these same people, and in fact among all the tribes within one mile of Lukunga, there is a superstitious dread of the owl, which by is regarded not only as a bird of ill omen, but also the bearer of an evil ometimes sent by an ill-disposed person to plague an enemy. Speaking superstition Stanley relates a very strange incident which seems to have under his own observation. He says:

## THE BIRD OF ILL OMEN.

One day the King of Kanganpaka visited the Livingstone Inland Mission, the very picture of misery and despair. 'What has happened?' he asked; to which question, after a studied silence, he replied in a whisper, the people of a neighboring town had, during the night, sent a bad bird, or spirit in the shape of an owl, which had bewitched his plantain and blighted them. Upon examining the trees they were indeed found blighted and looked as if they had been struck by lightning, every one blackened and apparently dead. But as this had occurred in the long season, when lightning is almost unknown, the mischief had evidently come by some chemical agency, probably only known to the N'Ganga, or the man. The old king begged for some *mundili*, or white-man medicine, to counteract the effects of the wicked spirit. To satisfy his craving for the it, the missionary of the station gave the king some insect powder and him away. Strange to relate, the old king, in the fullest faith of the powder, sprinkled it upon the blasted trees, whereupon in a little while plantains shot out from the seared trunks and flourished finely."

## CEREMONIES OF THE N'KIMBA TRIBE.

beyond the Ba-teke are found the N'Kimba tribe, occupying a district some miles in length along the Congo. They are a naked, shiftless people, and

practise some singular customs which, though curious in origin, are identical with some practised by ancient people in civilized sections of the world. Writing of these ceremonies, Mr. Ward says they are associated with a certain bacchanalian worship, during which the youthful initiates undergo the rite of circumcision, which is quite common among many African tribes. Again he likens the ceremonies to a kind of Free Masonry, which he thus describes:

"All the lads of a town, or group of towns, from ten to twelve years of age, go through an educational course lasting from six months to two years. During this time they are not allowed to wash themselves. They disfigure

#### MAN AND WOMEN OF THE N'KIMBA TRIBE.

their bodies with chalk, and wear a hideous dress of grass. The women and children of the towns are in continual fear of the N'Kimba, who are allowed to parade through the villages at any time of the day or night. Any article of food or clothing required by them can be appropriated without question, if only the things belong to a 'mungwala,' or uninitiated person. At the induction ceremony the candidate is required to drink a certain potion, which renders him insensible. He is then declared to be dead, and is carried into the bush, where the operation of circumcision is presumably performed. After a while he is restored, and by the simple towns-people he is believed to have been raised

from the dead. He then receives a new name, and he professes not to be able to remember his former tribe or even his parents.

"The N'Kimba declare the rainbow is their father. They also adopt a new language, which is of a mysterious nature, and though taught to the males, it is never disclosed to females. It is possible that it is some old or archaic form of the Bantu language, conserved for religious purposes—like the Sanscrit, the old Slav, and the Latin; or it may be nothing more than an arbitrary transmogrification of words such as are found in the Mpongwe, or in such artificial dialects as the Ki-Nyume of Zanzibar.

"An N'Kimba before initiation is called *mungwala*, and afterwards *tungwa*."

#### A GRAND CAVALCADE.

After reaching Kasonge the boats were abandoned and the march overland for another considerable distance began. Between several of the cataracts a steam launch service is maintained, but occasionally there are stretches of many miles where rapids and cataracts are so frequent that no boats of any kind can pass them. Around these therefore Stanley had to make the passage by land, which he was well provided to do. Describing the caravan as it left the great Arab station of Kasonge, Ward says: "First of all proceeded four Somalis carrying their kit; then came Stanley, mounted on a fine mule; behind him was a great, tall Soudanese soldier, carrying James Gordon Bennett's yacht flag, (American, with round yellow circle and anchor,) then followed seven hundred men, presenting the most imposing sight that I ever saw. All the men were fresh and were dressed in their characteristic costumes: Zanzibaris, in their white Arab shirts reaching to the knee, with just a little of their gaudy colored loin cloth visible below it, boxes on their heads, water bottles slung over their shoulders, their guns at their backs; Soudanese soldiers in their dark blue great coats and hoods, their bayonets, cartridge belts, guns and kit; Somalis with their fancy waistcoats and variegated loin cloths; sections of the whale-boat, carried each by four men; donkeys with pack saddles and loads; large-horned goats with similar saddles and loads, and hoes, shovels and axes; the caravan stretched away for three miles, a fine subject for a painter; a most unusual and strange sight along the Congo."

#### STANLEY FALLS.

The expedition continued on without mishap until in due time Stanley Falls was reached, the last station on the Upper Congo. The river scenery about Stanley Falls is very similar to that in the vicinity of Bolobo, but the Falls themselves are very interesting, not on account of any surprising descent, for it is not really great, but because they so nearly bridge the river as to divide it into two main channels. The stakes and nets, as seen in the illustration on p. 418, just below the Falls, serve to mark the various cataracts, and also the favorite occupation of the Wenya people, especially the women, who are devoted fishers. At this place Tipo Tib has one of his principal headquarters, and from here he conducts his most profitable raids upon the neighboring people, from whom he



gathers both slaves and ivory. To convey his booty he keeps a steamer, named *Stanley*, plying between the Falls and Yambuya, though not running regularly, from which latter station the ivory and slaves are sent either up the Aruwimi river and thence by way of the lake regions to Egypt or Zanzibar, or are conveyed down the Congo in large canoes, eighty or one hundred feet in length.

The immense influence, and especially the power which Tipo Tib possessed in this large region, made his friendship absolutely necessary to Stanley, for he had the ability to destroy the expedition at a single blow, or by rendering such

#### TRAVELLING BY CANOE ON THE UPPER CONGO.

assistance as was at his command, to insure its success. Therefore when Stanley found the cunning raider at Zanzibar, he at once obtained an interview and sought to establish friendly relations. It was not long after this meeting before Stanley learned of Tipo Tib's intention of making another raid along the Congo, which the explorer knew the small garrisons at the several stations could not prevent, and which in fact threatened their own destruction. To prevent this and to save his expedition, Stanley entered into a contract with the great Arab by which Tipo was to furnish 700 carriers to convey supplies and also act as a military escort for the expedition from Stanley Falls to Wadelai.

A BATHING PLACE OF BANANA BEER.



Stanley did not really expect Tipo Tib to carry out the terms of this contract, for he well knew the treacherous character of the villainous raider, but he rightly expected that the contract would serve the purpose of a compact of friendship, and that while thus avoiding his opposition to the expedition, would also prevent the intended raid upon the Congo stations.

The results prove that Stanley had correctly estimated the value of this contract. Tipo Tib did accompany the expedition as far as Stanley Falls, but here he halted with promises to furnish an escort when the camp at Yambuya, comprising the rear column, should be ready to move. But how he broke this promise will be seen hereafter.

## CHAPTER XXI.

### THE INTRENCHED CAMP AT YAMBUYA



ON the 15th of June, Stanley, having returned disappointed in securing the seven hundred Tipo Tib, made his permanent camp at Yan of the Aruwimi, which he caused to be intr base for his supplies. Tipo Tib had renew nish the required number of carriers in a n excuses why he was unable to immediately comply with tract. Being for this reason unable to move the whole and anxious to push on without delay to the rescue of l believed to be in a dangerous situation, Stanley divided l columns. With one-half his force, he decided to move a leaving the rear column in command of Major Barttelot Ward, Jameson, Bonny and Troup. Full instructions we who Stanley thought would be able to follow him within a he expected Tipo Tib would supply the necessary carrier

Mr. J. R. Werner, an engineer in the service of th who was a visitor to Yambuya, describes the fort which Lieut. Stairs and Mr. Jameson, as follows :

"This fort, containing all the stores as well as the h was an enclosure some thirty yards square, surrounded by sticks or poles, from two to three inches in diameter, and in length. These were fixed as closely together as possi to insert the muzzle of a gun between them. Facing tl was planted on the edge of an almost vertical descent of that side of the stronghold unassailable; but on the oth was erected six feet from the ground, so that two rows of guns into use at the same time, the palisade being high for the upper row. Opposed to natives who fight with sp arrangement would have been complete; but in an engag have rifles and double-barrel shot-guns, the men would, of much exposed. For provision against this emergency, an high had been thrown up against the outside of the palisa taken from a trench which surrounded the whole, and was fi with water. There is no regular rainy season in this pa showers fall at uncertain intervals, usually every few day was not only useful in the matter of defence, but could be in case the camp was cut off from the river. On the la

rab camp, were two semicircular redoubts, through which the defenders e opened a flank fire on any party attempting to approach the trench. There were five huts inside the enclosure, three of which were occupied by the Europeans and half filled with stores; the fourth was used as a mess-room, much space, however, being filled up with donkeys' stalls, spades, hoes, and various other articles and implements necessary for the expedition. The fifth, on the occasion of Mr. Werner's visit, was occupied by Mr. Troup, who was very ill, and eventually, as will be remembered, had to return home. Supplementing these five huts was a galley and four smaller erections for servants and other natives. The two entrances to the enclosure were about three feet wide, and defended by a door formed of planks made from the bottoms of large canoes.

## FORT YAMBUVA.

They were hinged at the top, and kept open during the day by having their er ends supported on stout poles. It required four or five men to raise and se them. At night they were watched by a proper guard. The trench was ssed by means of planks, which formed a kind of primitive drawbridge. The th side of the enclosure was defended only by a palisade, being covered by men's camp, a second enclosure, longer than the first, round which the pali-e and trench were continued. Within this outer enclosure were the numerous all grass huts occupied by the men, and its southern end was in a line with foot of the last rapid in the river. Among the huts were several of the ical-roofed native huts, representing all that remained of the village which already been burnt by the Arabs. Around the entire stockade the bush been cleared away, so as to leave no cover for enemies approaching from land side. The clearing had been extended on the north for some distance the river, and formed an esplanade."

Stanley left Yambuya on the 28th of June, 1887, by way of the Aruwimi river, over an untrodden path through an unexplored country, with his compass as a guide, for Lake Albert N'yanza, on whose shores he hoped to find and rescue Emin Pasha. The parting between those that started on this perilous journey and those who were left behind was both impressive and affecting, for in that dark region, infested by savages and the yet more to be dreaded foe that lurks in fens, morasses and miasmatic swamps, who might speak a lightsome *au revoir* when separation by death appeared most probable? But if the parting had in it the elements of sadness, it was only a portent of real sorrows and death, which was to be a fulfilment of the gloomiest misgivings, and a fatal ending of the hopes and ambitions of those composing the rear guard.

Stanley marched off, though sad at heart, yet resolute in purpose, kissing his hand to Barttelot as long as he remained in sight, and soon the advancing cavalcade had passed out of view up the Aruwimi river.

The feeling of dread of consequences, though considerable, was somewhat relieved by the belief that Barttelot would soon receive the aid promised by Tipo Tib and be able to move after his chief, though it must be confessed that at no time did either Stanley or Barttelot repose the fullest confidence in the treacherous Arab. But after the advance column had departed, Barttelot set about establishing his camp and kept well employed for several days apportioning the labors of his men, drilling his small force of soldiers and enforcing sanitary regulations. The country about Yambuya was generally level, or slightly undulating, with low hills rising about five miles from the Aruwimi shores. There was considerable game to be found in the well-wooded hills, chiefly antelopes, spring-boks, buffaloes and occasionally leopards, lions, elephants and rhinoceri. These grazed in the rich pasturage of the low lands, but sought the woods for shade, where they were more easily hunted. Therefore after the camp was completed and thorough order established, which was not accomplished for some weeks, Barttelot and Jameson went out for a hunt, being accompanied by a half dozen natives as guides.

#### A RHINOCEROS IN PURSUIT OF THE HUNTERS.

The two met with such poor success the first day that with great discouragement they started on their return to camp; but on the way they met a native from a neighboring village who reported having that morning seen a white rhinoceros in a grassy range about two miles distant. This news had such an exciting effect that the hunters engaged the native to guide them to the spot, and off they set at once in search of the royal game.

It was now growing late in the afternoon, and it was felt that the game must be quickly located if the hunt were concluded before nightfall. The spot indicated was soon gained and the beaters sent out in a semicircle to drive the tall grass. Barttelot was on the extreme right, a little in front of the beaters, while Jameson took the left. In a little while a shout went up which was unmistakable in its import, and in a few seconds out dashed a huge rhinoceros



antelopes were plentiful. Nor were they disappointed; in fact, game of nearly every kind was found, and the party had royal sport. Several antelopes were bagged, and these would prove a great blessing at the camp, where meat had become very scarce, so that the lack of it had indeed been seriously felt.

Towards noon of the second day, when the hunters were taking a rest beside a brook, one of the beaters reported the presence of a small herd of buffaloes near by. Four of the beaters had been sent back to the camp with as many antelopes, and only four more remained with Barttelot and Bonny.

#### A SUDDEN CHANGE OF BASH.

These were directed to surround the herd and to reach elevations from which they could signal the location of the game. These instructions were faithfully carried out, and in a short time one of the men was seen standing on an ant-hill, waving his hands as an indication that he had sighted the buffaloes. Both the hunters were provided with field glasses, through which they were able to clearly observe the beater and to understand his gestures. They therefore spread out and advanced towards a depression in the park, where the game was found to be standing in a shallow pond, whisking their tails as a



r.

and  
ider  
in  
ent  
low  
re  
sec  
its  
id.  
ted  
th  
de  
da  
ter  
ev  
an  
ki  
hi  
"t  
s u  
pe  
ing  
a  
ap  
bu  
wi  
su  
ity  
Ba  
usa  
sa  
rus  
an  
do  
hin  
ho  
n  
not  
the  
hol  
teac  
aw  
g









## CHAPTER XXII.

### AFFAIRS GROW DESPERATE AT YAMBUYA CAMP.

URING the long, long absence of Stanley, the camp became finally both critical and tedious. Stanley had left the last of June, promising to return in November. But month after month had passed and no news of him had reached the camp. The hunting diversions described had not sufficed to relieve the desperate monotony of the camp; the same wearying routine had fallen on the members, food had become scarce, the rain and gloomy weather had chilled the spirit of the bravest, game had become so scarce that the hunt was no longer enjoyed, while absence of news for so long overdue, served to intensify the fears and privations of the camp. But to these troubles must be added others equally great arising out of the evident treachery of Tipo Tib in his refusal to supply Barttelot with the carriers he had promised.

### A SLAUGHTER OF THE NATIVES.

The camp at Yambuya was therefore frequently monotonous, and life at times became almost insupportable because of long enforced idleness and weary, weary waiting for Stanley's return or the promised aid of Tipo Tib. But this condition was not invariable, for at times most exciting events transpired to lend the charm of intense excitement. On February 4th, 1888, Ward writes from the Aruwimi camp as follows: "Jameson's third anniversary of his marriage. We were not able to do much in the celebration line. The Arabs started at early dawn, and then set on fire the village they attacked (in the hood). It was a pretty, if sad, sight to see the place burning. They killed eight men and brought in the head of one who must have been a fellow. Jameson and I sketched it, and we shall pickle, salt and preserve so that the head can be mounted. Another head they lost—dropped in the river. The unhappy natives in hundreds took to their canoes and went up-stream, but are being slaughtered by the Arabs who occupy an island amidst of almost impassable rapids."

But with these horrible sights, which were occasionally witnessed, were other things that relieved the tediousness, though they were not satisfying results of the seemingly endless waiting and delusive promises. The scarcity of food and the demoralization of a long-delayed advance with the slave-hunting raids of the Arabs, made the maintenance of the camp less easy as it became more important. Major Barttelot seems to have been forced into severely punishing his insubordinate followers—an aim gained by reading one of Ward's letters written from Yambuya. He







and eating human beings being quite as common among them as it is among the Fans and Makkarikas. Stanley has entertained the idea that the Man-yuemas have been in contact with Arabs so long that they have abandoned cannibalism, as have others of the Congo tribes. But in this opinion he is evidently mistaken, as the following letter from Ward, written at the intrenched camp at Yambuya, February 26th, 1888, will clearly show. He says:

"I went this morning to Nassibu's camp, which is situated about an hour's

march from our own camp on the Falls (Aru-wimi). He received me with much ceremony, and at my request drummed to the natives, who were in two clearings at the back of his camp. A number came and went through the usual demonstrations at seeing a white man. Among them were about a dozen young women, with pleasing countenances and beautifully-moulded limbs. They would have made worthy models for a sculptor. I selected a man as a model for myself, but it was very difficult to induce him to stand still while I sketched him. I then started for their village with Majuta, Mr. Jameson's boy, carrying my bag, and Fida, a native woman, who has

#### THE WALLS OF NASSIBU'S CAMP.

been with the Arabs for some time, to interpret from Swahili into the native language.

"Almost the first man I saw was carrying four lumps of human flesh (with the skin on) on a stick, and through Fida I found that they had killed a man this morning and had divided the flesh. She took me over to a house where some half-dozen men were squatting, and showed me more meat on sticks in front of a fire; it was frizzling and the yellow fat was dripping from it,





1. Sketched from the Village near Thakoko Camp on the Aruwimi.  
 2. Forest, on bank of river, above Thakoko, on the Aruwimi.  
 3. Sketched on bank of river.  
 4. The Forest, looking up the river from the camp.

5. Bridge (St. Joseph's bridge).  
 6. Great Thakoko forest, looking from above Thakoko.  
 7. A view to the camp of Thakoko.  
 8. Thakoko forest.

9. View of the Thakoko Forest and the River Aruwimi.  
 10. Thakoko Forest, looking from above.  
 11. View of the Thakoko Forest, looking from above.  
 12. Thakoko Forest, looking from above.

# WARD'S SKETCHES ON THE CONGO AND ARUWIMI RIVERS

men (Arabs) have  
raided and burnt  
he went with E  
women. This  
after day passes  
are daily growing  
lie out in the sun  
of dirty loin-  
cloth; and all  
the live-long  
day they stare  
into vacancy,  
and at night  
gaze at a bit  
of fire.

"It was a  
pitiable sight,  
a few days ago,  
to see an emaci-  
ated man crawl,  
with the aid  
of a stick, after  
a corpse, that  
was being car-  
ried on a pole  
for interment.  
He staggered  
along, poor fel-  
low, and squat-  
ted down along-  
side the newly-  
made grave and  
watched the  
proceedings  
with large,  
round, sunken  
when he himself  
'Amekwa rapiki  
bones, yet persists  
He has been told  
he refuses, and  
he said, 'Yes, c  
and just as plain

NINEN

rise as

IFE.

chiefly  
ious m  
on Janu  
pleasan

never  
ted Fe  
rites,  
n the 1  
re been  
old me  
ory to  
life w  
march  
in the  
and  
would  
caugh  
tender  
dead  
captu

A  
"It i  
dull,  
waitin  
orders  
an A  
it. He  
tinues  
elow th  
zibaris  
awful  
conclt  
ve, skil  
id well  
ws :

CAMP, 1  
of St  
seek  
ed abs  
V'yanza



were several Manyuemas belonging to Tipo Tib. But when he gave orders to prepare to march, there was open rebellion upon the part of nearly his entire force. Being hot-headed, as Stanley says, he undertook coercive measures, and ordered some to be flogged and others shot. At this there was an uprising, and in the confusion that followed a shot was fired from a musket. No one seemed to know who fired the gun, nor has it since been determined, because the confusion was very great, and several of the men, including Sudanese, Zanzibaris and Manyuema, had guns, and no one, if they really knew,

#### THE KILLING OF BARTELLOT.

would expose the guilty party. But the result was, alas, too manifest. The bullet had struck poor Barttelot in the back of the head, killing him instantly, so deadly being the shot that he never uttered either word or groan. Thus ended, in deepest shadows, the bright prospects of this young officer, who fell in his enthusiastic devotion to Stanley, and his loyalty to the purposes of the expedition.

#### ABANDONMENT OF YAMBUYA.

Two weeks before this inexpressibly sad event, Jameson died of a fever, no doubt superinduced by his anxieties and the hardships which he had been com-



pelled to undergo in common with other members of the expedition. Troup also fell ill and it appeared that he too must die, but seeing that all hope of the rear column proceeding eastward must now be abandoned, he turned his steps homeward and reached England more dead than alive, but ultimately recovered.

Ward, who had, with the other officers, except Troup, and possibly Bonny, believed Stanley was dead, after giving his best efforts to a reorganization of the demoralized rear column, or the few that now remained, left for England, leaving Mr. Bonny, the sole white man now in the camp, in charge. Bonny therefore, finding that all the responsibility was now upon his own shoulders, decided to follow, as nearly as he could, Stanley's written orders to Barttelot, and in pursuance of this resolve he removed the supplies and the few men yet with him to Banalya, estimating that station to be much more secure than Yambuya, besides at this place he was more likely to hear news from Stanley, as traders passed more frequently from Banalya to the lake region from Yambuya, or even from Stanley Falls. The wisdom of this ren presently appear.





A merchant named Biri, who was a guest in my house, a refugee from Wadelai to Uganda, underwent the same ill-luck as I, but was even less fortunate; he is reported to have killed himself on the road. All my goods, those of Biri, and the ivory belonging to the Government, were sequestered by the robber-king, but we were permitted to provide ourselves with a little grain to keep off starvation on the road. I will say nothing of my writings,

my notes taken during the journey—the grief is too strong. It is the first time I have felt annihilated; my soul yields, and in the face of this irreparable misfortune my mind is confused. Meanwhile, Stanley is near us; Emin Pasha has already received notice of an expedition towards the north. On April 15th he will start with two steamers and a sufficient number of soldiers and make minute researches. Kabba Rega has sent soldiers to intercept Stanley's march. If my health is restored I shall accompany Emin Pasha. I have made him acquainted with the tenor of the letter which you sent to him, and which Kabba Rega intercepted. He thanks and salutes you.

Will Kabba Rega remain unpunished as did Mwanga? May the life of a European be attacked with impunity, and an African king openly violate the laws of hospitality, betray and break his plighted faith?—make himself the executioner of a person living in his country as representative of a civil government, such as the Egyptian? It would be too shameful. CASATI.

SON AND DAUGHTER OF KABBA REGA.

Captain Casati was agent for the Egyptian Government, stationed near Kabba Rega's capital in Unyoro, east of Lake Albert, and all letters from Emin for Europe were sent to him, whose task it was to get them through to Zanzibar; it was this advantage that enabled him to transmit the above communication, though many that were written before had miscarried.



**STANLEY'S INSTRUCTIONS TO BARTTELOT.**

Shortly after receipt of this first news from Stanley came transcripts of two other letters which he addressed to Major Barttelot, and which satisfied our longing to know just what he expected of the Major upon leaving Yambuya. The first letter was sent by three messengers, and the second was dispatched under an escort of twenty men from Boma, on the 14th of February. Neither of these messages, however, reached their destination. The messengers who carried the latter, under a reward of \$50 each for its safe delivery, were detained at an Arab camp which Stanley passed through on his first journey eastward, and both letters were recovered in that place by him on his return trip to



returned to this place, and our deserters, misled by their own tracks downward, until they meet you, or be exterminated. Be not deluded by any statements they may make. So you will have to secure them thoroughly.

#### FIGHTING THEIR WAY.

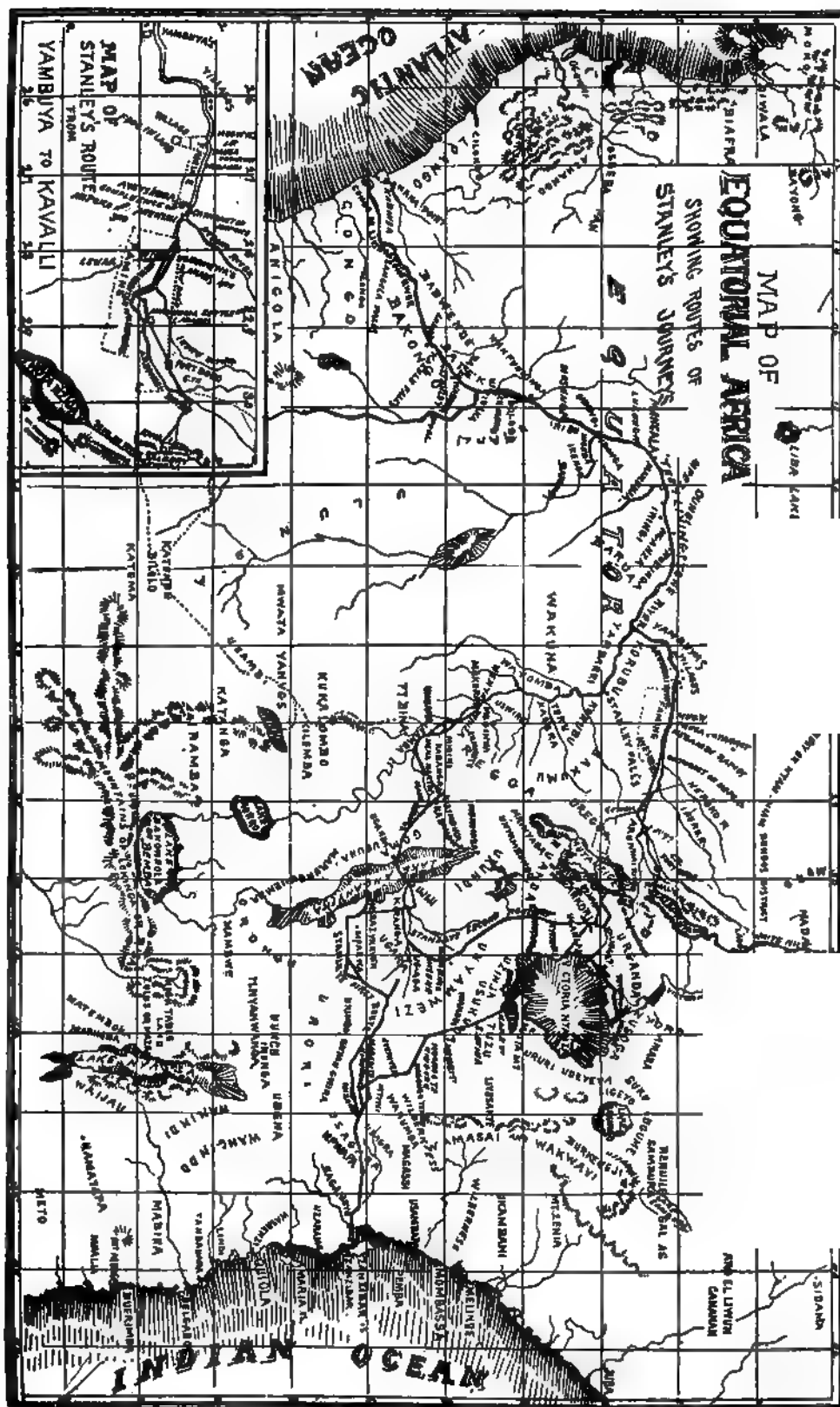
The first day we left you we made a good march, no fight, the foolish natives firing their own village as they thought we were attacking them. We have had probably thirty fights. The first view of us told them to show fight. As far as Panga Falls we did not meet with any serious obstacles to navigation. Panga is a decided fall. We cut around it on the south bank and did not go back again.

We had intended to follow a native path which would have led to our destination with usual windings of the road. For ten days we followed the road, and then took an elephant track, which carried us through a forest totally uninhabited. Fearing to lose ourselves altogether, we followed the river, and have followed the river ever since. From the time we struck the river to Mugwye's country, four days' journey we fared very well. Food was abundant; we made long marches and did whatever we pleased. Beyond Mugwye's, up to Engweddeh, was a very hard march, villages being inland and mostly foodless. From Engweddeh we declined rapidly. People were lost in the bush, as they were slain by the natives. Ulcers, dysentery, and grievous fatal debility, attacked the people. Hence our enormous loss at Panga—30 dead and 26 deserters. Besides which we have 56 behind so used up that without a long rest they would not be able to return from the Lake (Albert). Of the Soudanese, one is behind to-day. All the whites are in perfect condition, though some are a little out of go.

Among our fights we have had over fifty wounded, except four. Stairs was severely wounded with an arrow through the chest, an inch and a half, within a little below the heart, in the right now. We have had one man shot dead by some natives near our camp; another was shot in the foot, resulting in amputation. The third is now in a fair state of health.

#### HEWING A PATH THROUGH THE FOREST

The number of hours we have marched ought to be more than you by this time, but we have had to daily hew our path through the jungle to keep along the river, because the river banks on the forest inland contains no settlements that we know or have heard of. Of canoes we were able to help the caravan carry the boats. The boat helped us immensely. Were I to do the work



collect canoes as large as possible, man them with sufficient up with goods and sick. On the river between Yambuya and the canoes are numerous and tolerably large. The misfortune is that the zibaris are exceedingly poor boatmen. In my force there are few who can paddle or pull an oar, but even these have saved much labor and many lives which otherwise would have been so.

Our plan has been to paddle from one rapid to another; when the water, or shoals, we have unloaded canoes and poled or dragged long rattan or other creepers, through the rapids, then loaded and resumed our way until we met another obstacle. The want of food regularly pulls people down very fast, and they have to carry the loads which has distinguished them while with Africa.

If Tipo Tib's people have not yet joined you I do not mind going very far from Yambuya. You can make two journeys by water, but you can do on land. Slow as we have been coming up the river, through, I shall come down the river like lightning. The current, indeed, for the current alone will take us twenty miles a day. I will get up as many canoes as possible to help us for our second journey. Follow the river closely and do not lose sight of our track. When the river, which takes this passes you, look out for your men, or the goods, or a body, taking valuable goods with them.

I need not say that I wish you the best of health, and good fortune, because you are a part of myself. Therefore, good-bye.

Yours very truly,

*Major Barttelot.*

HENRI

The second letter was written from Fort Bodo, Ibwe, 14th, 1888.

"MY DEAR MAJOR: After much deliberation with regard to the expediency of the act, I have resolved to send twenty couriers with this letter, which I know will be welcome to you and your command. Any note or word from you would be to us.

Fort Bodo is 126 English miles from Kavalli, on the west side of the hours of caravan marching (west) and is almost on the same line as the 527 English miles almost direct east from Yambuya, or 3 days marching."

After giving explicit directions as to the route Barttelot took, he mentions the villages where food might be purchased, Stanley continuing:

"The object of this letter is not only to encourage and give definite and exact information of your whereabouts and to save you from a terrible wilderness whence we have to pass with our lives. I wrote you from Ugarrowwa's a letter some





enable you to understand what our experience was between Yambuya and Ugarrowwa's, therefore I begin from Ugarrowwa's and go east to the N'yanza.

"After leaving Ugarrowwa's on September 19th we had 286 souls with us, and 56 sick at Ugarrowwa's; total, 341. By October 6th we had travelled along the south bank of the river amid a country depopulated and devastated by Arabs; and our condition was such, from a constant pinching want, that we had eight deaths and fifty-two sick, that is, sixty utterly used up in sixteen days. I was forced to leave Captain Nelson, lamed by ulcers, and 52 sick and 82 loads

#### NATIVES IN THE DISTRICT OF UGARROWWA'S.

with him at a camp near the river, while we would explore ahead, find provisions and send back relief.

"Until October 18th we marched in the hope of obtaining food, and on this day we entered a settlement of Manyuema, but in the interval we had travelled through an uninhabited forest, where we lived on wild fruit and fungi. In these twelve days we had lost twenty-two by desertion and death, while the condition of the survivors was terrible.

"We were all emaciated and haggard, but the majority were mere skeletons. On the 29th Nelson's party was relieved, but out of 52 there were only five

## HEROES OF THE

d, many had deserted  
arty only to ultimati  
th we marched from  
und such an abund  
he killing of a bull  
wildest scenes that  
gs for every morse  
y the advance colu  
ement), 56; sick at  
68. On September  
ing, 73.

A SAD STORY OF SUI  
place, Ibwiri, no A  
ffered no scarcity,  
Albert Lake, which  
result of wilderness  
ert January 7th, ha  
ness miseries; one,  
e, Ramaguebin Kur  
en November 24th  
s being a result of  
the Manyuema on  
n this interval we  
ps it was as bad as  
so extreme that w  
aris to sell their r  
ien gave food so sp  
les starving them, te  
d them and tied th  
ch abject slaves to  
Manyuema. Yet v  
n, ill-treatment, to  
ns. Out of 38 me  
turn up, but it is do  
Comment is unnece  
the Manyuema car  
ids behind, as it w  
vere detailed to lool  
of which we could  
But arriving at Albe  
d to retrace our ste  
nt for the boat and  
irs and nearly 100

WOLF 2020.—(See page 456.)

## ANXIETIES.

"You will understand, then, that Emin Pasha, not being found or relieved by us, made it as much necessary that we should devote ourselves to this work, as it was imperative when we set out June 28, 1887, from Yambuya. And you will also understand how anxious we all are about you. We dread your inexperience, and your want of influence with your people. If with my people preferred the society of the Manyema blackguards to me, who am known to them for twenty years, how much more so with you, a stranger to

## WARRIORS CHALLENGING STANLEY.

them and their language. Therefore, the cords of anxiety were strained to an exceeding tension. I am pulled east to Emin Pasha and west to you, your comrades, people and goods.

"Nearly eight months have elapsed, and perhaps you have not had a word from us, though I wrote a long letter from Ugarrowwa's. We were to have been back in December; it is now February, and no one can conjecture how far you may have reached. Did the *Stanley* arrive in due time? Did she arrive at all? Did Tipo Tib join you? Are you alone with your party, or is

## HEROES OF THE DARK CONT

with you? If the latter, why so slow that I understand that you are very far from us.

S.

According to my calculations, we shall be on the Pasha will be settled by April 25; on the 26th, and on the 29th we shall be at Ugarrow. I shall surely, I hope, meet with the return from I send to you with a reward of \$50. In the hands of this letter, I advise you to retain, Ruga—in front, but they should be free of the back to me as soon as you can, because the sooner we will join hands; and after settling we have only one anxiety, which will be to get knowing that Tipo Tib's people are with you quickly on here, and we shall probably meet arrived at some station on our former journey as I take it. Hence, before you get near there, you will surely break up if you are alone, I place (Mugwyas, Aveysheba, or Nepoka Cor) to build a strong camp and wait us; but I will. If you come near Ugarrowwa's you will lose men, rifles, powder, of value; your own boys will betray you, because they will sell dearly that your people, from stress of hunger, will steal everything. Whether of these places above you will get safety and food until you are long as you are stationary, there is no fear of desertion, but the constant insufficiency of food, will sap the fidelity of your men. Everybody's best wishes to you, I send my earnest prayer that all unwholesome and evil conjectures, where you ought to be better will reach you in time to save you from that forest man's hands of the ruthless Manyuema blackguards. To everybody's, also, these good wishes are given, from

"Yours most sincerely,

"HENRY M. STANLEY

Major Barttelot, Commanding Rear Column."



: the tail when  
 iron bars out of  
 Another adjoin-  
 e by having a  
 It is said that  
 slavery by an  
 orn and always

"Doko" region,  
 h extraordinary  
 ears that they  
 make use of  
 one to lie upon,  
 like a blanket,  
 and the other  
 as a covering  
 for the body.  
 Some live in  
 trees and others  
 in subterra-  
 nean galleries,  
 but all alike  
 are represented  
 as being won-  
 derfully cour-  
 ageous and  
 ferocious, while  
 not a few pos-  
 sess such a  
 knowledge of  
 the black art  
 that to their  
 ferocity they  
 add the power  
 most of whom  
 the Fan Canni-  
 th the greatest  
 all who invade  
 Stanley, on his  
 of these much  
 they are held  
 ighout a greater  
 r this proscribed





buya until the arrival of the steamer from Stanley Pool with the office and goods left behind; and, if Tipo Tib's promised contingent of carriers in the mean time arrived, he was to march his column and follow the river, which, so long as it traversed the forest region, would be known by the shade of the trees, by our camps and zaribas, etc. If Tipo Tib's carrier contingent arrive, then if he (the Major) preferred moving on to staying at Yambuya, was to discard such things as mentioned in letter of instructions, and

#### SHARPENING THE TEETH.

making double and triple journeys by short stages, until I should come down from the N'yanza and relieve him. The instructions were explicit and, as the officers admitted, intelligible.

#### FIRST CONFLICT WITH THE NATIVES.

The advance column, consisting of 389 officers and men, set out from Yambuya June 28th, 1887. The first day we followed the river bank, marched twelve miles, and arrived in the large district of Yankondé. At our approach the natives set fire to their villages, and under cover of the smoke attacked th



appearance by firing volley after volley of poisoned arrows at bari's returned the compliment by a round from their muskets our white men quickly into action. Lieutenant Stairs, followed resolute fellows, jumped into a boat and headed for the enemy cealed in the dense brush that grew down to the water's edge standing up in the boat to direct the rowers, a poisoned arrow, head, struck him just below the heart. The shaft was broken extricate it, leaving a large portion of the arrow head in the wound at once brought back and placed under the care of Dr. Park who succeeded in saving his life, although the piece of arrow left was not extracted until fourteen months afterward. Nearly all wounded by poisoned arrows in this engagement died within lockjaw.

On the 15th Mr Jephson, in command of the land part inland, became confused and lost his way. We were not the 21st.

On the 25th of August we arrived in the district of Air-jel camp was the mouth of the tributary Nepoko; and on the 31st met for the first time a party of Manyuema belonging to the Ugarrowwa, alias Uledi Balyuz, who turned out to be a former tent. Our misfortunes began from this date, for I had taken the Cong Arabs, that they might not tamper with my men and tempt them their presents, yet twenty-six men deserted within three days of our meeting.

On the 16th of September we arrived at a camp opposite Ugarrowwa's. As food was very scarce, owing to his having an immense region, we halted but one day near him. Such friendship could make with such a man I made, and left fifty-six men with Somalis preferred to rest at Ugarrowwa's to the continuous march. Soudanese were also left. It would have been certain death for us to have accompanied us. At Ugarrowwa's they might possibly have been paid a month per head was to be paid to this man for their services.

#### THE DEATH MARCH.

On September 18th we left Ugarrowwa's, and on the 19th entered the settlement occupied by Kilinga-Longa, a Zanzibari chiefing to Abed bin Salim, an old Arab whose bloody deeds are recorded in Congo and the Founding of its Free State."

#### NELSON STARVATION CAMP.

On October 5th the expedition was so nearly exhausted for having arrived at an impassable cataract just below the confluence of two rivers Ihuru and Ituri, we made camp and sent men on both sides of the river and discover where navigation might be resumed. On one day the men returned and reported that the river route was





six men sick in the Arab station. On reaching Kilinga-Longa's we discovered we had lost fifty-five men by starvation and desertion. We had lived principally on wild fruit, fungi, and a large, flat, bean-shaped nut. The slaves of Abed bin Salim did their utmost to ruin the expedition, short of open hostilities; they purchased rifles, ammunition, clothing, so that when we left their station we were beggared and our men were absolutely naked. We were so weak physically that we were unable to carry the boat and about seventy loads of goods; we therefore left these goods and boat at Kilinga-Longa's under Surgeon

---

HUTS OF THE IBWIRI VILLAGERS.

Parke and Captain Nelson, the latter of whom was unable to march, and after 'twelve days' journey we arrived at a native settlement called Ibwiri. Between Kilinga-Longa's and Ibwiri our condition had not improved. The Arab devastation had reached within a few miles of Ibwiri—a devastation so complete that there was not one native hut standing between Ugarrowwa's and Ibwiri, and what had not been destroyed by the slaves of Ugarrowwa and Abed bin Salim the elephants destroyed, and turned the whole region into a horrible wilderness. But at Ibwiri we were beyond the utmost reach of the destroyers; we were on virgin soil, in a populous region abounding with food. Our suffering from

hunger, which began on the 31st of August, terminated on the 12th of November. Ourselves and men were skeletons. Out of 389 we now only numbered 147, several of whom seemed to have no hope of life left. A halt was therefore ordered for the people to recuperate. Hitherto our people were sceptical of what we told them; the suffering has been so awful, calamities so numerous, the forest so endless apparently, that they refused to believe that by-and-by we should see plains and cattle and the N'yanza and the white man, Emin Pasha. We felt as though we were dragging them along with a chain round our necks.

#### WHIPPING AN INSUBORDINATE.

"Beyond these raiders lies a country untouched, where food is abundant and where you will forget your miseries; so, cheer up, boys; be men, press on a little faster." They turned a deaf ear to our prayers and entreaties, for, driven by hunger and suffering, they sold their rifles and equipments for a few ears of Indian corn, deserted with the ammunition, and were altogether demoralized. Perceiving that prayers and entreaties and mild punishments were of no avail, I then resolved to visit upon the wretches the death penalty. Two of the worst cases were accordingly taken and hung in presence of all, and others were whipped.



We halted  
corn, sweet po  
the people glu  
killed by an a  
N'yanza on tl  
but, given foo

On the is  
connected with  
promise and  
plenty. On  
the 5th of De-  
cember we  
emerged upon  
the plains, and  
the deadly,  
gloomy forest  
was behind us.  
After 160 days'  
continuous  
gloom we saw  
the light of  
broad day shin-  
ing all round  
us and making  
all things beau-  
tiful. We  
thought we had  
never seen  
grass so green,  
or country so  
lovely. The  
men literally  
yelled and  
leaped for joy,  
old spirit of for

Woe betide  
be; with such  
Numbers will r  
them abject, sh  
Longa's.

On the 9th  
villages were so

## CONTINENT

fields. From  
We seized a  
P. M. on the  
ll-hooks could  
ey were sent p  
ndreds from e  
as about to t  
le effort, and  
d since we left  
night passed  
sides prepari  
row. On the  
roth we att  
negotiations.  
were anxious  
were, and we  
glean news  
threatened to  
dition. Ho  
talking, both  
a respectable  
The natives  
subject to U  
Kabba Rega  
king, Mazam  
country for  
They finally  
and brass re  
King Maza  
answer was t  
day. In the  
hostilities w  
pended.

### THE WA

M. we were st  
that we shou  
y the valley a  
wana " signifi  
doubt, or rat  
little nearer  
and to empha  
bt. Our hill



## A SIGHT OF THE N'YANZA.

At 1 P. M. we resumed our march in a driving rain storm. Fifteen minutes later I cried out, "Prepare yourselves for a sight." The men murmured and doubted, and said, "Why does the master continually talk to us in this way? N'yanza, indeed; is not this a plain and can we not see mountains at least four days' march ahead of us?" At 1.30 P. M. the Albert N'yanza was below them. Now it was my turn to jeer and scoff at the doubters, but as I was about to ask them what they saw, so many came to kiss my hands and beg my pardon that I could not say a word. This was my reward. The mountains, they said, were the mountains of Unyoro, or rather its lofty

## ARGUING WITH A CHIEF FOR THE RIGHT OF WAY.

plateau wall. Kavalli, the objective point of the expedition, was six miles from us as the crow flies.

We were at an altitude of 5200 feet above the sea. The Albert N'yanza was over 2900 feet below us. We stood in 1 deg. 20 min. N. lat.; the south end of the N'yanza lay largely mapped about six miles south of this position. Right across to the eastern shore every dent in its low flat shore was visible and traced like a silver snake on the dark ground was the tributary Simba flowing into the Albert from the south-west.

After a short halt to enjoy the prospect we commenced the rugged and stony descent. Before the rear-guard had descended 100 feet, the natives of the plateau we had just left poured after them. Had they shown as much c



ing must exhaust our stock. There was no plan sug-  
feasible to me, except that of retreating to Ibwiri, build  
back to Kilinga-Longa's for our boat, store up every load i-  
able, leave a garrison in the fort to hold it, and raise corr-  
again to Lake Albert, and send the boat to search for Em-  
the plan which, after lengthy discussions with my officers

On the 15th we marched to the site of Kavalli, on the  
Kavalli had years ago been destroyed. At 4 P. M. the  
followed us and shot several arrows into our bivouac,  
quickly as they came. At 6 P. M. we began a night march, and  
16th we gained the crest of the plateau once more, Kan-  
persisted in following us up the slope of the plateau. W-  
and one wounded.

By January 7th we were in Ibwiri once again, and after  
tenant Stairs and a hundred men were sent to Kilinga-Longa  
and goods up, also Surgeon Parke and Captain Nelson. Out-  
of the officers only 11 were brought to the fort, the rest had

#### FORT BODO—ELEPHANT MARAUDERS.

A site having been chosen at Ibwiri, an entrenched  
June 7th, 1888, which we named Fort Bodo. This work  
small undertaking, for we recognized the importance of making  
a thoroughly secure one. Our men therefore began the  
will. Some collected long poles, others the boards used by  
ing their villages, others cut long vines to be used as ropes.  
men dug the holes in which the uprights of the boma were  
poles having been placed in position, two and two, the  
lengthways between these and secured, lashed home with  
ropes until a secure arrow-proof boma, ten feet high, surrounded  
tion. Four towers were placed—two at the east and west  
the north and one on the south faces—to give efficient fire  
mand over the surrounding country. A ditch, eight feet  
deep, was dug on the north side, and every means possible  
the place secure against surprise. It was also intended to  
afford a depot for grain, so that if necessary a "suffari"  
leave in a day or two's time fully provisioned. For this  
up eleven acres of ground, and planted the same with In-  
The greatest trial was the nocturnal raids of droves of elephants  
three or four acres of banana trees would be destroyed in  
these monsters. It required the close attention of sixteen  
week to keep these elephants out of the plantations. Added  
to the garrison was the the devastating hurricanes, which  
the crops, laying green corn flat on the ground, and a  
quantity of corn to go into the granaries. The Expedition

## DOES OF THE

both day and night. They had tried to no purpose. I saw corn and tobacco, and were able to see many hidden perhaps, four feet to woodcraft. They had been taken off of Ramadan. Education in case of lower field; to-day we of banana beer from ripe bananas under this morning and so on, from day was the chief work who might get Stairs with the boys and adolescents there. I attacked with gastritis by Dr. Parke. Albert N'yanza, A. Nelson, now recovered with a garrison of

### A LETTER FROM

we arrived in Mazamponi decided less with me on all the other chiefs and was supplied guidance that our natives came from given their chief "Yes, to-morrow,"

with us that night, lands filled with a man was Emin, and after a while over black America seen a native rumourth end of the lake

inquiries, but had been unable to obtain reliable information, as the natives were terribly afraid of Kabba Rega, King of Unyoro, and connected every stranger with him. However, the wife of the Nyamsassie chief had told a native ally of his named Mogo that she had seen us in Mrusuma (Mazamboni's country). He therefore begged me to remain where I was until he could communicate with me. The note was signed "(Dr.) Emin," and dated March 26th.

The next day, April 23d, Mr. Jephson was dispatched with a strong force of men to take the boat to the N'yanza. On the 26th the boat's crew sighted Msaw

station, the southernmost belonging to Emin Pasha, and Mr. Jephson was there hospitably received by the Egyptian garrison. The boat's crew say that they were embraced one by one, and that they never had such attention shown to them as by these men, who hailed them as brothers.

#### MEETING WITH EMIN.

On the 29th of April we once again reached the bivouac ground occupied by us on the 16th of December, and at 5 P. M. of that day I saw the Khedive steamer about seven miles away steaming up towards us. Soon after 7 P. M. Emin

#### NATIVES OF THE FORT BODO DISTRICT.

Pasha and Signor Casati and Mr. Jephson arrived at our camp, where they were heartily welcomed by all of us.

The next day we moved to a better camping place, about three miles above Nyamsassie, and at this spot Emin Pasha also made his camp; we were together until the 25th of May. On that day I left him, leaving Mr. Jephson, three Soudanese and two Zanzibaris in his care, and in return he caused to accompany me three of his irregulars and 102 Mahdi natives as porters.





Fourteen days later I was at Fort Bodo. At the and Lieutenant Stairs. The latter had returned from after I had set out for the lake, April 2d, bringing w men out of 56. All the rest were dead. My 20 c with letters to Major Barttelot had safely left Ugarr March 16th.

Fort Bodo was in a flourishing state. Nearly ten ac One crop of Indian corn had been harvested, and was had just commenced planting again.

On the 16th of June I left Fort Bodo with 111 Zan Pasha's people. Lieutenant Stairs had been appointed Nelson second in command, and Surgeon Parke, medic consisted of 59 rifles. I had thus deprived myself of that I should not be encumbered with provisions and have to be taken if accompanied by Europeans, and ev for the vast stores left with Major Barttelot. On the Kilinga-Longa's, and July 19th Ugarrowwa's. The lat Ugarrowwa, having gathered as much ivory as he cou trict, had proceeded down river about three months be Bodo I had loaded every carrier with about 60 pounds been able to pass through the wilderness unscathed.

Passing on down river as fast as we could go, dai couriers, who had been stimulated to exert themselves head, or the Major himself leading an army of carriers, these pleasing anticipations as we neared the goal.

#### SAD NEWS.

On the 10th of August we overtook Ugarrowwa wi 57 canoes, and, to our wonder, our couriers, now redu an awful story of hair-breadth escapes and tragic scenes. had been slain, two were still feeble from their wounds their bodies the scars of arrow wounds.

A week later, on August 17, we met the rear colur place called Banalya, or, as the Arabs have corrupted i white man at the gate of the stockade whom I at first son, but a nearer view revealed the features of Mr. Boi service of the army to accompany us.

"Well, my dear Bonny, where is the Major?"

:"He is dead, sir; shot by the Manyema about a

"Good God—and Mr. Jameson?"

"He has gone to Stanley Falls to try and get son Tib."

"And Mr. Troup?"

"Mr. Troup has gone home, sir, invalided."



with them, but the officers seemed to accept the report, and in January Mr. Ward, at an officers' mess instructions should be cancelled. The only one who was Mr. Bonny. Accordingly, my personal kit, medicine, and provisions were sent down the Congo as "superfluities." immense personal sacrifice to relieve them and cheer them and deprived of even the necessities of life in Africa. I have kept two hats and four pair of boots, a flannel jacket back to Emin Pasha and across Africa with this truly a poor fellow, was all in patches when I met him, but it was who will be in patches this time. Fortunately, not one of me, for their kits are intact; it was only myself that

I pray you to say that we were only 82 days from the and 61 from Fort Bodo. The distance is not very great, fail one. Going to N'yanza, we felt as though we had been giving them; on returning, each man knew the road stimulus. Between the N'yanza and here we only lost men was by desertion. I brought 131 Zanzibaris here, I lost 190 men out of 389; loss, 50 per cent. At Yambuy are only 71 left, ten of whom will never leave the camp. This proves that though the sufferings of the advance the mortality was not so great as in camp at Yambuy. The marchers are all robust, while the survivors of the rear are most unhealthy looking.

#### IMPORTANT DISCOVERIES.

I have thus rapidly sketched out our movements since I wish I had the leisure to furnish more details, but I write this amid the hurry and bustle of departure, and preparations. You will, however, have gathered from this letter of the country traversed by us. We were 160 days in the unbroken, compact forest. The grass land was traversed to the limits of the forest along the edge of the grass land. I saw it extending north-easterly, with its curves and bays to a sea-shore. South-westerly it preserved the same character. The forest area extends from Nyangwe to the southern limit. East and west it embraces all from the Congo, at the mouth to about east longitude 29 deg.—40 deg. How far west the forest reaches I do not know. The superficial extent described—totally covered by forest—is 246,000 square miles in the Congo, between Upoto and the Aruwimi, the forest covers 100 square miles.

Between Yambuya and N'yanza we came across five rivers. The last is that which is spoken of by the Wanyoro, Wanyahha, and people of Karangwe and Ukerewe.



little they will get accustomed to it. Our Zanzi second expedition; why cannot your black women do them; they will do better than the men."

"They would require a vast amount of provisions."

"True, but you have some thousands of cattle and beef. The countries through which we pass in our way are full of food."

"Well, well, we will defer further talk until tomorrow."

#### AN ARGUMENT.

May 1, 1888. Halt in camp at Nsabe. The steamer Khedive about 1 P. M., and in a short time we were again. Many of the arguments used above were repeated.

"What you told me yesterday has led me to retire from here. The Egyptians are very well equipped about 100 men, besides their women and children, and even if I stayed here I should be glad to see the steamers ascend the river for their own safety. To compose the 1st and 2d battalions I am extremely anxious to lead a free and happy life here that they would desire. They have enjoyed luxuries they cannot command in the desert, married, and several of them have harems. My intention is to retire and follow me. Now, supposing the reverse, imagine that my position would be a difficult one for them to their fate? Would it not be consigning them to leave them their arms and ammunition would be at an end. Disputes would arise and more ambitious would aspire to be chiefs by force, springing hate and mutual slaughter until there would be no more of them."

"Supposing you resolve to stay, what of them?"

"Oh, these I shall have to ask you to be satisfied with."

"Now, will you, Pasha, do me the favor to have the pleasure of his company to the sea, and assist him also should we meet?"

Captain Casati answered through Emin Pasha.

"What the Governor Emin decides upon I will do also. If the Governor stays, I stay. If he goes, I go."

"Well, I see, Pasha, that in the event of your going, it will be great."

A laugh. The sentence was translated to him and he replied:



"Oh, I beg pardon, but I absolve the Pasha from  
connected with me, because I am governed by my own cho

Thus day after day I recorded faithfully the interv  
Pasha; but these extracts reveal as much as is necessary  
the position. I left Mr. Jephson, thirteen of my Soudan  
to be read to the troops, as the Pasha requested. Every  
I return with the united expedition to the N'yanza.

Within two months the Pasha proposed to visit F  
Jephson with him. At Fort Bodo I have left instructi  
destroy the fort and accompany the Pasha to N'yanza.  
again on the N'yanza, as I intend making a short cut t  
new road.

Yours respectfully,

Hi





and corresponding actions may be judged—"Obey orders if you break owners." "All I prayed for," said I at the MacKinnon dinner speech, "is that the same impelling power which has hitherto guided and driven me in Africa would accompany me in my journey for relieving Gordon's faithful lieutenant."

#### THE RELIEF OF EMIN PASHA EXPLAINED.

Now, in this White Pasha affair, tell me why I should budge one foot to right or left from the straight line described to you in my letters. Kavalli's, on the Albert N'yanza, almost due east from Yambuyā—that is the objective point, natural obstacles permitting. I have never yet departed from the principle of fulfilling my promise to the letter, where there is a responsibility attached

to it. Have people at any time discovered any crankiness in me? Then why should they suppose that I, who expressed my views that Gordon disobeyed orders—Gordon's wilfulness, you remember the phrase in the Mansion House speech—would be ten times

#### INTERRUPTION OF THE PASHA'S REVERIE.

more disobedient and a thousand times more disloyal, deserving of such charges as "breach of faith," "dishonesty," "dissimulation," by going in the direction of Bahr Gazelle or Khartoum? I should not have gone were it to win the Imperial crown, unless it had been an article in the verbal bond between the Committee and myself. The object of the expedition, as I understood it, was simply the relief of Emin Pasha, so far as the Committee was concerned in the undertaking, but the Egyptian Government added, "and the escort of Emin Pasha and his people to the sea, should he require it."

Now, in the Emin Pasha affair, the latest Blue Book which Lord Iddesleigh furnished me with contained many expressions through Emin Pasha's letters, which seem to prove that he had faithfully maintained his post until he could learn from his government what its intentions were, and that he had force enough with him to depart in almost any direction towards the sea if such was the government's wish: by the Congo, by Monbutto or via Langgø



Land, and Musai—were equally alike to him. But on November 2d, 1887, forty-two days before I reached the Albert N'yanza, he (the Pasha) writes to his friend, Dr. Falkin:—"Do not have any doubt about my intentions; I do not want a rescue expedition. Have no fears about me. I have long made up my mind to stay."

#### A COLD MEETING WITH EMIN PASHA.

All this is very unsatisfactory and inexplicable. He (the Pasha) also said he had sent searching parties in the direction I was supposed to come. On December (1888) 15, 16, 17, I made inquiries of the people at the south end of Lake Albert, and they had seen no steamer since Mason Bey's visit in 1877, consequently this absence of news of him cost us a 300-mile journey to obtain our boat and carry her to the N'yanza. With this boat we found him within three days. Finally he steamed up to our camp, but instead of meeting with one who had long ago made up his mind to stay or to go away with us, he would first have to consult his people, scattered among fifteen stations over a large extent of country. I foresaw a long stay, but to avoid that and to give the Pasha ample time to consider his answer and learn the wishes of his people, I resolved to go back even to Yambuya to ascertain the fate of the rear column of our expedition under Major Barttelot. This diffidence on the part of the Pasha cost me another rough march of 1300 miles. When I returned to the N'yanza, after eight months' absence, it was only to find that Emin Pasha and Mr. Jephson, one of our officers who stayed with him as a witness, had been made prisoners four months previous to our arrival on the N'yanza, and that the invasion of the Pasha's province by the Mahdists had utterly upset everything.

When Mr. Jephson, according to command, detached himself from the Pasha and came to me, I learned then for the first time that the Pasha had had no province, government or soldiers for nearly three years; that he was living undisturbed, and that the people sometimes yielded to his wishes apparently through mere sufferance and lack of legitimate excuse to cast him off utterly. But when he committed himself by a gust of awakened optimism to venture into the presence of his soldiers he was at once arrested, insulted, menaced, and imprisoned.

#### TIPO TIB'S ENGAGEMENT.

In relation to the subject of Major Barttelot and Tipo Tib, I have seen more nonsense than on any other. You remember the promise I made "to do as much good as I could, but as little mischief as possible." Let us see how this applied to the engagement with Tipo Tib. This man had grown rich through his raids, which had been the boldest and best rewarded with booty of any ever made. That error of judgment which led Captain Deane to defy the Arabs for the sake of a lying woman who had fled from her master to avoid punishment, had irritated all the Arabs at Stanley Falls, and especially Tipo Tib and all his relatives, friends, subjects and armed slaves. Tipo Tib was resolved to retaliate on the Congo Free State; he was at Zanzibar collecting material for the most important raid of all—that is, down the Upper Congo.

# THE JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN MEDICAL ASSOCIATION

Who could have stopped his descent before he reached Stanley Pool? Who knew the means of the State for defence better than I did? Therefore it was either a fearfully desolating war, or a compromise and a peace while good faith was kept. If both parties are honest peace will continue indefinitely. To secure Tipo Tib's honesty a salary of \$150 per month was given to him. For this trifling consideration thousands of lives are saved and their properties secured to them. No Congo State is permitted to consolidate until it is readier with offensive means than at this time.

Thank God I have long left that immature age when one becomes a victim to every crafty rogue he meets. I am not a gushing youth, and we may assume that Tipo Tib's prime age is far from dotage. We both did as much as possible to gain advantage. I was satisfied with what I obtained, and

Tipo Tib secured what money he wanted. At the time he agreed I feel certain that he was sincere in his intentions. You remember your Scripture, I dare say, and you remember the words, "There is more joy in heaven over one sinner that repenteth than over

#### ONE OF TIPO TIB'S SLAVE GANGS.

ninety-nine that need no repentance." Who had been a greater sinner than Tipo Tib, at least in our estimation? But he could not sin down the Congo, for pecuniary as well as for more powerful reasons, which cannot be mentioned lest other crafty rogues take advantage of the disclosures.

#### THE APPOINTMENT OF BARTELOT.

After disposing of Tipo Tib, the pirate, the freebooter, buccaneer, and famous raider, I may say a word about poor Bartelot. He was a Major in the British army. His very manner indicated him to be of a frank, gallant, daring, and perhaps somewhat dangerous disposition if aroused. His friends who introduced him to me in London spoke of him in some such terms. They named the campaigns he had been in, and what personal service he had performed. As I looked at the Major's face I read courage, frankness, combative



the A. M. D., a brilliant operator and physician. of the Kiswahili, the language of the Zanzibaris, as Jameson. The only two who knew the language were and they were not due at Yambuya until the middle of been wise to have placed either Stairs, Nelson or Jephthelot, the senior officer, in command of Yambuya? with me I made the best choice possible.

#### CIRCUMSTANCES LEADING TO BARTTELOT

When young officers, English, German or Belgian, many months, there is no abatement of that thirst for work, that impatience to be moving, which characterizes Anæmia has not sapped the energies and thinned the combative at this period than any other. If any quality is at this time. I had to interfere twice between fire strong, plucky young Englishmen, who were unable to keep an Arab from the nigger, before we reached Yambuya. that the Major, forgetting my instructions as to forbidding fire-eaters, and the consequence was that the Major Assad Ferran to interpret for him. Whether the officers know not, but a coolness arose between the high-spirited equally high-spirited nephew of Tipo Tib, which was the result, up, and which, in the long run, led to the ever-to-be Barttelot.

#### STANLEY'S INSTRUCTIONS TO BARTTELOT

In the written instructions to Major Barttelot, July 1887, paragraph III reads as follows:

It is the non-arrival of the goods from Stanley Bololo which compels me to appoint you commander. I shall shortly expect the arrival of a strong re-enforce (people), greatly exceeding the advance force, which must and push on to the rescue of Emin Pasha, I hope no longer than a few days after the departure of the Stanley to Stanley Pool in August (say August 18, 1887, as in time August 14).

Paragraph V.—The interests now entrusted to you to this expedition. All the men (Zanzibaris), who will command, will consist of more than a third of the men needed for currency through the regions beyond the men and goods would be certain ruin to us, and the need to solicit relief in its turn.

Paragraph VI.—Our course from here will be due compass east by south. The paths may not exactly times, but it is the north-west corner of Albert Lake





is our destination. . . . Our after conduct must be guided by what we shall learn of the intentions of Emin Pasha.

Paragraph VII.—We shall endeavor, by blazing the trees and cutting saplings, to leave sufficient traces of the route taken by us.

Paragraph VIII.—It may happen, should Tipo Tib send the full complement of men promised (700), and if the 126 men have arrived by the *Stanley*, that you will feel competent to march your column along the route pursued by me. In that event, which would be most desirable, we should meet before many days. You will find our bomas or zeribas very good guides.

Paragraph IX.—It may happen also that Tipo Tib has sent some men, but he has not sent enough. In that event you will, of course, use your discretion as to what goods you can dispense with to enable you to march.

#### TIPO TIB'S SLAVES MARCHING OUT OF STANLEY FALLS.

(List of classes of goods, according to their importance, here given. Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, the highest numbers to be first thrown away.)

If you still cannot march, then it would be better to make double marches than to throw too many away, if you prefer moving on to staying for our arrival.

#### TIPO TIB'S UNRELIABILITY.

These instructions were supplemented by verbal explanations, giving permission to march the very next day after the contingent from Bololo had arrived, if he could prepare his goods in time—urgently impressing him not to place any stress on the promises of Tipo Tib, if he failed to make an appearance within a reasonable time of the promised date. His carriers were not absolutely necessary, but they would serve to keep our men fresh for other journeys. If Tipo Tib came, why, well and good; if he did not come, ther

## EROES OF THE DARK C

at your goods to your carriers,  
arch the sooner we will meet.  
ith me before the consul, his p  
you last saw him, he promise  
ver day after to-morrow. If h  
ley all will be well; but if he  
man never intended to keep  
him, but come along with what  
age, and European provisions.  
as a day, you will do very wel  
se up in his frank, impetuo  
style. I will stop very few  
up. I wouldn't stop longer f  
accompanied by constant fair  
he forward movement, with wh  
the rear column is too well kno

### MISREPRESENTATIONS ABOUT CA

atrocities reported on the Cong  
ient that I have seen connect  
eson. It is inconceivable no  
Brooke has written a letter to th  
s one part of a sentence whic  
h and Arab, have assured me th  
ve seen on passing through the  
ring out of their cooking pots."  
I should like to ask here is, "W  
ght—hands and feet sticking out  
pendent missionary seeking for  
"untravelled" look about him  
this interestingly sensational it

English" are as undiscoverab  
l 150 so-called Manyema, or 1  
na headmen with me—Tipo Til  
Englishman has seen anything  
t Brooke, or is it Assad Ferra  
woman was delayed by James  
ke ready his apparatus? Wou  
ograph apparatus of even the sn  
he camp at Yambuya, north, so  
ur that date?

go on at this rate forever with  
these scraps. Major Barttelot  
lar as it may seem, the white



present on both occasions during the flogging scene—he never even protested; the second time he gave his verdict—death—at a fair trial, and signed the document consigning him to instant doom.

I have had to execute four men during our expedition; twice for stealing rifles, cartridges, and broken loads of ammunition; one of the Pasha's people for conspiracy, theft, and decoying about thirty women belonging to the Egyptians, besides for seditious plots—court martialed by all officers, and sentenced to be hung; a Soudanese soldier, the last, who deliberately proceeded to a friendly tribe and began shooting at the natives. One man was shot dead instantly, and another was seriously wounded. The chiefs came and demanded justice, the people were mustered, the murderer and his companions were identified, the identification by his companions confirmed, and the murderer was delivered to them, according to the law, "blood for blood." Yours very faithfully,

HENRY M. STANLEY.

## CHAP I

### ADVENTURES

description which St  
to Kavalli, on Lake  
scientific body, and  
march, it does not  
which he reserved  
as well as to add exc  
from Africa to his f  
rom his correspond  
t memorable journey  
rer, whose chief missi  
iarize himself with n  
traditions respecting  
; along the Aruwimi  
since, though possi-  
they were evidently  
in the beliefs of  
atives of all Central  
careful attention to  
critical observation,  
e to give us much  
it tribes which have  
en brought to the  
ethnologists, much  
mass of people. To  
march not described  
the Relief Committee

CRUEL DEVICES AD  
er difficulties encount  
expedition departed  
es of savage warfare.  
angers was that of fil  
ly covered over with  
ad ten men were wor  
t quite through, or t  
DUE NOTES.

To these distressful annoyances, or more properly murderous obstructions, complaint is added against swarming insects, such as gnats, flies and ants, which in some places attacked the expedition in such numbers and with such venomous bites as forced the men to throw down their burdens and fight for life.

## DWELLINGS OF TRIBES BELOW NEJAMBI RAPIDS.

The mornings along the river were generally lowering and very sombre, everything being buried in thick mist, which frequently did not clear off until nearly noon. While this lasted the air was still as death, and gave the insects







forced to many expedients to obtain it. The natives were generally very poor themselves, and while having little to sell, were even less inclined to furnish food for strangers. Hunting, too, was frequently a doubtful resource, because, while in certain sections game was abundant, in others there seemed to be no animal life whatever. The Arabs—about a dozen having followed the expedition after Tipo Tib left it at Stanley Falls—fared worse than the others, because of their religious scruples about eating hippopotamus flesh, which they regard as unclean. But the gnawing pangs of hunger finally overcame the proscription of creed and belief, so that they were brought to partake of the forbidden food. It was a ludicrous sight, to Christians to see a lay Mohammedan acting

#### BLESSING THE DEAD BODY OF A HIPPOPOTAMUS.

the part of priest and blessing the dead body of a hippopotamus preparatory to making a feast, and in the ceremony to see so strong a religious barrier destroyed. A common affliction does indeed make us all brothers.

#### A HIPPOPOTAMUS ADVENTURE.

The monotony of ruthless slaughter, which had continued for several days, was at last disturbed by an exciting incident in which Lieutenant Stairs figured more conspicuously than even his adventure-loving disposition desired. Slow progress was being made by some of the party on shore while others were poling and paddling at equally slow pace in a half-dozen nuggers, Stairs being in the lead, and Stanley following in his steel whale boat, the *Advance*. In a considerable cove, where the river had once made a turn and then swept back again into

STAIRS' ADVENTURE WITH A BULL HIPPOPOTAMUS.

its former channel, leaving a half-stagnant elbow, several hippopotami were seen sporting, and decision was immediately made to attack them. Stairs pushed forward, his approach being hidden by a jutting point, until he had gained a position sufficiently near to permit an effective shot. The nugger was now brought round to an unexpected meeting with a large cow hippopotamus, which Stairs fired at and badly wounded. In its violent struggles the animal turned

THE PRISON OF EMIN PASHA AND MR. JEPHSON AT DUFFILL.—(See page 530.)

over and over in the shallow place until its movements excited the compassion of its companions, three of which came charging to the rescue, with one uncommonly large bull in the lead. The shallowness of the water prevented the huge animals from diving and coming up under the canoe, as is their custom, and forced them to make the approach in full view. Thus when the bull, re-enforced by its almost equally dangerous companions, came rushing towards the



a slender piece of iron sharply pointed at both ends. Fin along some sedgy bank, he cautiously and noiselessly approaches a dozen feet or more of the crocodile. The hunter now drops into position and crawls carefully along towards the reptile's head. Three or four feet he makes a peculiar clucking noise like a crocodile but does not alarm it. His motions are now such

as to lead the crocodile to believe a meal to be at hand. He then turns his head towards the hunter and at that moment the hunter springs into the mouth of the crocodile. He devours it with avidity only to do any harm. He feels all the pain caused by the weapon made angry and in its rage. In this case the crocodile meets its doom, for the hunter is out of reach of the crocodile. It is now its only chance when it is sufficiently near the hunter boldly doubles the forelegs and beats it to death with a sharp piece of iron. The purpose of a

Crocodiles are caught by means of spring-traps made of a strong sapling and a vine with an iron hook and a hoop so set that when the crocodile's head passes through the hoop the bait is seized the crocodile's fastenings and up goes the crocodile just as the hook serves to

#### A CROCODILE SNARE.

and strangulation ends his troubles in the course of an hour.

This same means of catching the crocodile is employed by the South American Indians, and it is also used by some of the

#### THE WAMBUTTI DWARFS.

It will be remembered that in Stanley's first trip across Africa he came near the upper waters of the Congo he met at



## CUSTOMS AND APPEARANCE OF THE DWARFS.

The Wambuttis are fishers and hunters and pursue be great success. In hunting the largest game they go in cor surrounding such animals as the elephant and literally worrying it to death by persistent pursuit and the shooting of hundreds of arrows into it. They possess considerable quantities of ivory as trophies of the hunt, and they manifest no small ingenuity in carving it into fantastic designs for bracelets, anklets, armlets, and even necklaces.

Contrary, however, to tradition, the Wambuttis do not wear beards, and in all respects they have the negroid characteristics of woolly hair, black eyes,

thick lips, flat nose and large mouth. They are certainly very courageous, but not nearly so vindictive and cunningly cruel as Kabba Rega and Tipo Tib represented; but that they are guilty of cannibalism there was not wanting the strongest evidence. Human skulls were frequently to on poles at villages a single in fairly w human arm hanging to side wall . It bore the ance of ha

## DWARF SHOOTING SOCIABLE WEAVER BIRDS.

smoked for a considerable time, but none of the villagers could b to talk about any of their habits. In fact, there was no one in the c who could understand their language.

While the Wambuttis are evidently extremely barbaric, and no do tise cruelties which distinguish all barbarous tribes, yet Stanley h proof of the fact that they also possess the most admirable traits of and are moved by the instincts of love. There was no evidence of p









been able to make an excellent illustration. They wear scarcely as much clothing as their neighbors, nor do they bestow any care on the hair, leaving it to run riot like the indifferent pure Africans that they are. But they nevertheless have some idea of decoration, though it develops, to our tastes, in an increasing unsightliness rather than an improvement. The women affect the pelele, or lip ring, like some of the South American tribes, and by inserting a bit of ivory in the lower lip gradually enlarge the wound until pieces of bone, wood, or ivory, more than an inch in diameter, may be inserted and worn. Besides this singular, so-called ornament, they wear a cincture of hide, with a bundle of grass tied in front to serve the traditional purpose of fig-

SCARED BY MR. WILLIAMS' CAMERA.

leaves, and a cow-tail hangs from the belt behind, which led to the belief among travellers that they had natural tails. The wrists and ankles are invariably encumbered by numerous iron rings, a form of jewelery that is strikingly common among savage people.

Unlike the Quimbandes, these neighbors are an agricultural people, and are also somewhat pastoral, though their herds of cattle and sheep are always very small. They raise grain and tobacco and give considerable attention to poultry. Their dwellings are pretentious in size, but are so fragile in construction and material as to serve only a short time; either a fire burns them



or a wind-storm soon destroys them. They are made almost entirely of grass and bear a striking resemblance to a large wheat stack, except that the apex, instead of being pointed, is made to assume a bushy appearance.

#### THE M'TEITA.

Still further eastward is the M'teit. tribe, who are a picturesque people by reason of the numerous gewgaws the women especially affect, which, while they do not clothe or conceal the body, certainly do highly decorate.

The women are of pleasing features and often real pretty, even to the critical eye of an American. They are especially fond of bead-work, and the belles ornament their bodies with strings of various colored beads wound round and round the waist, breast, neck and head. In front is worn a lappet of cloth or skin, also decorated with beads, and the buttock is covered with a piece of fringed cloth, while the arms and legs bear a very burden of rings made of ivory, iron, and occasionally of copper. The men are not nearly so vain and are content with a plain piece of cloth about the loins—in this respect being more modest than the women—and sometimes a necklace of either beads or a small bit of leather with some equally simple ornament strung upon it.

The M'teita do a little farming and raise a few goats and sheep, but they are chiefly traders, and as such travel considerably in Uganda, Unyoro, Usoga, and other kingdoms about Lake Albert. They construct very crude dwellings of grass, and with this crudeness is also

#### A DANDY.

found an utter lack of comfort or convenience, the floors having no covering except a thin layer of grass, which is not changed often enough to prevent a very foul odor, while the sides of thatch are so loose as to freely admit both wind and rain. But for all this they appear to be a contented, and certainly a hospitable people.

AN M'ETTA MAN AND WOMAN.

(57)

## CHAPTER XXVII.

### THE APPROACH TO LAKE ALBERT.

STANLEY'S approach to Lake Albert was in a marked improvement in the natives, who semi-civilized lake tribes had produced for their betterment, but also the changeable in the game, which became gradually Stanley has said, a considerable part made through an almost desert region, an untrodden wilderness, but one in which held her bounty. Very frequently in desperate straits, for want of food, that the practice of cannibalism among the people of a country. Stanley mentions an incident, to illustrate the hunger from which they bravely endured the privations in consequence allowance so small that his strength on occasion he subsisted for an entire day and in the evening, seated alone in a place where he hardly served, he ate the last little fish and then licked the bowl out as ever a starving animal picked a bone. But when at last he threw the empty box away to see throughly watching him, make a violent scramble for it, a possession they fought as do hungry dogs over a piece of mangle one secured the box, and spent quite half an hour in eating it, just as Stanley himself had done. Possibly a little irritation, but certain it is that they would have prized its contents much more, for hunger was plainly stamped

#### CHEER UP, BOYS!

They became more park-like the spirits of those company. All the way Stanley had sought to sustain promises both of rewards and assurances that they would reach the end. His words were always, "Cheer up, boys; on to the station, where we shall find plenty." Thus Stanley himself appear, as did also his lieutenants, that the influence was such as to keep them on the march. To turn back into a desert wilderness was not to be thought of, hence



## HEROES OF THE DARK CONTIN.

consider any other alternative than that which would no doubt have fallen exhausted by the appeal to their courage as he did. At one place, mutiny, which, but for Stanley's prompt action in visiting swift punishment by his own hand, might have proved when the leader went down under a blow from the handle of the axe, the others, only half persuaded to make resistance, and laden with burdens, and thenceforth continued obediently on.

A show of force is the best preventive of actual violence. Africans never respect a man so much as the one who

### STARVATION PRECIPITATES A SCRAMBLE.

his knowledge is what induced Stanley to take with him as much as the possible need for it. A mere exhibition of weakness would serve to over-awe the natives, and therefore he was fully expected to have to put it to a deadly use, unless against well-armed and hostile Arabs, who it was not unlikely he would have to fight against the Mahdi's forces, who were believed to have been met at the Nile. But Stanley, with his keen perception of every situation, and his

Stanley was not forced to slaughter the natives, and drove his way through the darkest regions with a very small sacrifice of human life.

CHARGE OF A MAD BUFFALO.

As the expedition reached the hills that overlook the great lake basin, which is about twenty-five miles wide, game began to appear, and to procure a

STANLEY ENFORCING ORDERS.

supply of fresh meat, a hunting party was organized to make a drive among the buffaloes, several of which had been seen. The main force and the carriers continued on the route, while Stanley, Nelson and Parke, with a dozen beaters, started on the hunt, intending to move parallel with the marching caravan.

They had covered several miles before a herd was discovered in a position favorable for an attack, as they did not wish to be led away any considerable

**A BUFFALO'S MAD CHARGE.**

distance from the column. At length a drove was descried less than a mile off to the right, and the beaters were sent out to get on the far side and drive them in. They accomplished their purpose so well that the buffaloes headed



## HEROES OF THE DARK CONTINE

the shoulder; but on the next instant it set for Stanley, who fired an ineffectual shot, back to penetrate the armor-like hide. The but instead of turning to attack, which they "loof-whoofing" towards the moving column, the scare of the preceding day was yet fresh, and filled the cavalcade with a terror which is less described. Down went the packs with they went the carriers with a swiftness truly as tumultuous eagerness to reach safety first. The enemy in retreat, took courage and tossed on did no further damage, taking himself off in on of his temper.

### A DISAPPOINTMENT.

Stanley and his party sighted Lake Albert. The perilous journey was at an end, at least for the present. The story, found on preceding pages, is contained in the Kavalli, the station on Lake Albert, and an explanation of his failure to meet with Emin Pasha, and to go in search of him. To this description of Stanley has since reported by private letter the sight of the lake, where food and rest from their heavy burdens the carriers ran at the very hot, some of them actually sped down the lake. Eager were they for the relaxation and refreshment offered. A stop was made of some hours for the repose of the expedition, of men, women and children. The pleasure of a delightful bath, in which the memory of past misery was forgotten.

### A RETURN TO THE ARUWIMI.

After resting in the refreshing waters for a time they remained there for nearly two weeks. Stanley made every effort to procure boats to go on to Wadelai. News of his arrival would reach Emin and he has so graphically reported, all his effort there appeared to be nothing for him to do. On the Aruwimi (also called the Ituri) river he sent a launch, as that was the only craft that had been sent on with an escort, by land, to Wadelai headquarters, some time before, and Stanley had knowledge of his proximity to Lake Albert and Emin would send one of his steamers to Kavalli. Stanley gave direction to a Kavalli chief to



l to plunge again into the wilderness which promised a repetition of the trials and dreadful hardships through which he had just passed. He was only induced to accompany him by his agreement to pay rewards, and by threats of punishment in case of their

journey was accomplished in the manner already partly told, as which took him back to Yambuya in search of the rear descriptions previously given, however, I am permitted to add from Stanley letters just to hand.

On his return to Kavalli with the steam launch he still was in a hurry, because in the mean time Emin had been to that station most immediately without informing the Kavalli chief of his return, and particularly because reliable information, in the form of a report, reached him giving a brief account of a Mahdi uprising in the mean time which had resulted in the capture of Emin, who were then held prisoners at Wadelai. Stanley's launch was too small to cope with so powerful an antagonist as the Mahdi, and he hurriedly left Kavalli again for Yambuya to bring up the rear. He hoped to be able to effect a rescue of Emin, even should a battle be necessary.

#### DEPLORABLE CONDITION OF THE REAR COLUMN.

At a village called Kaffurro, on the Kargagwe river, a branch of the Nile, Stanley says: "My last report was sent off by Salim Beham, part of September, 1888. Over a year full of stirring events had passed since then. I will endeavor to inform you what has occurred. At the camp, after great privations, but nothing to what we had to endure, we found the remnant of the yet remaining members of the rear column in a most deplorable condition. I doubted whether 50 of them remained at the lake; but having collected a large number of canoes, the men were transported in these vessels in such a smooth and rapid manner that there were remarkably few casualties in the rear column. Having repeatedly defeated the Ugarrowwa's raiders, and by the extent of their own strength, gave considerable trouble to the Ugarrowwa's, we suffered a considerable loss among our best men, who had always to bear the fatigue of fighting and the fatigue of the paddling. However, we had been satisfied with the time we had made. When progress by the lake was tedious and difficult, an order to cast off canoes was given. Our journey above the Ugarrowwa's Station, or about 300 miles above the lake, we decided that as the south bank of the Ituri river was the best, to us it would be best to try the north bank, although we had to traverse for some days the despoiled lands which had been a prey to the Ugarrowwa's and Kilinga-Longa's bands of raiders. We had to travel a hundred miles from grass land, which opened up a prospect of







Every twentieth individual suffered from some complaint which entirely incapacitated him for duty.

The Ihuru river was about four miles south-southeast from this place, flowing from east-north-east. It was about sixty yards broad and deep owing to heavy rains. From Andikumu six days' march brought us to another flourishing settlement, called Indeman, situated about four hours' march from a river supposed to be the Ihuru. Here I was considerably nonplussed by a

grievous discrepancy between native accounts and my own observations. The natives called it the Ihuru river, and my instruments and chronometer made it very evident it could not be the Ihuru. We knew finally. After capturing some Dwaris we discovered it was the right branch of the Ihuru, called the Duru river, this agreeing with my own views. We searched and found a place where we could build a bridge across. Bonny and our Zanzibari chief threw themselves into the work, and in a few hours the Duru river was safely bridged. We passed from Inde-

#### DWARIS WOMEN.

man into a district entirely unvisited by Manyuema." Here the writer describes daily conflicts with the Wambutti dwarfs, which he found very numerous in this region, which have already been noticed. The Wambuttis clung to the north-east route, which Stanley wanted to take; accordingly he went south-east and followed elephant tracks.

## EROI

on D  
rest, at  
n Itu  
Bodo  
route  
v then  
sixth  
agers  
untly,  
ke Al  
ay sec  
o corr  
d of f

ay, ha  
only g  
take  
on gr  
ie box  
rest  
to do  
only n  
before  
llapse,  
morni  
; an al  
ople.

i Bon  
gers o  
disaste  
believ  
n they  
ey wer  
en had  
ot goa  
up.  
ered to  
on wh  
ght cu  
: sick  
ingly

and handed over to the charge of Bonny. In the afternoon we mustered everybody besides the garrison of the camp, ten

#### SEARCHING FOR THE MISSING.

Sadia, Manyema chief, surrendered fourteen of his men. Kibbobora, another chief, abandoned his brother, and Fundi, a chief, left one of his wives and her little boy. We left two sick wretches, already past all hope unless food could be brought within twenty-four hours. In a cheery tone, though my heart was told the forty-three hunger-bitten people that I was going back for the missing men. We travelled nine miles that afternoon, having found dead people on the road; and early on the eighth day of the march we met them marching in an easy fashion. But when the pace was altered, so that in twenty-six hours from leaving we were back with an abundance around us of gruel and porridge, boiling plantains, roasting meat and simmering soup. This brought us back to absolute starvation in all my African experience. Twenty-one persons succumbed in this dreadful camp.

#### LETTERS FROM JEPHSON.

On December 23d the united expedition continued the march as we now had to work by relays, owing to the fifty extra men required to reach the Ituri ferry, which was our last camp in the forest. We emerged on grass land, until January 9th. My anxiety about Emin would not permit me to dawdle on the road, making due haste, so, selecting a rich plantation and a good camp east of it, I left Stairs in command with 124 people, including Parke and on January 11th I continued my march eastward. The people of the district, in a repetition of the fighting of December, 1887, flocked to us, advanced and formally tendered their submission, agreeing to supply us with food and supplies. The blood-brotherhood was entered into, the excitement made and a firm friendship established. The huts of our camp were built by natives, and food, fuel and water were brought to the expedition. A halting place was decided on. We heard no news of Emin until on the 16th, at a place called Kavalli, where messengers from Kavalli came with a packet of letters, with one letter from Emin, confirming the news in Jephson's letter. You can imagine the interest and surprise I felt while reading the letters by giving them to me in Jephson's own words:

DUFFILI, NOVEMBER

"DEAR SIR: I am writing to tell you the position of affairs here and I trust the letter will be delivered to you at Kavalli in due time. Be careful. On August 18th a rebellion broke out here and we were made prisoners. The Pasha is a complete prisoner, I



## ES OF THE DARK CON'

; were even for putting him  
r plans into execution, as the  
o lay a hand on him. Plans  
l and strip you of all you h  
e startled by the news that  
ree steamers and nine sand  
n the site of the old station.

dervishes with a letter to  
country. The rebel officers :  
on war. After a few days t  
five officers and numbers of  
soners, and all the stores and  
f this was a general stamp  
i, and Muggi, who fled with  
almost everything. At Kirri  
y natives. The Pasha reckon  
ficers and a large number of  
ake a stand against the Ma  
t, for since the rebellion all  
half a dozen conflicting orders  
el officers are wholly unabl  
the Mahdists. If they come

l frightened at what has take  
nd desire to leave the count  
at Khartoum has fallen and  
like rats in a trap. They w  
you come very soon, you wil  
rest of the garrisons of the  
Pasha could have kept the  
powerless to act. I would su  
a letter in Arabic to Shukri  
our arrival and telling him y  
to the Pasha or myself tel  
. It would perhaps be better  
ated. Neither the Pasha nor  
f any attempt to capture you  
have come from Egypt and  
alties. Still it would be wel  
not able to get out of the  
Yours faithfully,

ve letter was written a messe

to r  
e ha  
whi  
of  
pth  
SE c  
writ  
but  
sold  
'he  
ned  
s s  
to  
ime  
so  
day  
the  
ar  
ey c  
orce  
hen  
ir a  
m  
ecen

scri  
r, n  
over  
ays  
at  
Kl  
gthe  
our  
ovat  
is  
e fe  
car  
the  
hear  
at y  
Pas  
r or

## STANLEY'S LETTER IN REPLY TO JEPHSON

Stanley immediately returned a reply to Jephson's letter in which he wrote: "Be wise, be quick, and waste no time with your own Soudanese with you. I have read your letter over, but fail to grasp the situation thoroughly, because details one letter contradicts the other. In one you say I am a prisoner, while you are allowed a certain amount of liberty. You say you will come to me as soon as you hear of our arrival. You say, 'that the Pasha will be able to accompany me to the lake,' but you fail to see how you could leave Tunguru at all. All this is nonsense, us, who are fresh from the bush. If the Pasha can come to meet your arrival at your camp on the lake below here to meet you, I will send a strong detachment to escort him to the plateau if he needs it. I feel too exhausted after my 1300 miles journey parted from you last May to go down to the lake again. I must have some pity for me. Don't be alarmed or uneasy on account of the hostile can approach us within twelve miles without my protection. The thickest of a friendly population, and if I sound a trumpet for an hour I can have 2000 warriors to assist me to repel any violence, and if it is to be a war, why then I am ready to die an Arab alive. I have read your letter a half-dozen times, and you varies with each reading. Sometimes I fancy you are an Arabist, then Eminist. I shall be wiser when I see you. I am perverse, but obey and let my order to you be as a final one. And all, with God's gracious help, will end well. I want to win somehow, but he must also help me and credit me."

## FASCINATED BY THE SOUDAN.

"On January 16th," says Stanley, "I received with two notes from the Pasha himself, confirming the above. I was either Jephson or the Pasha indicating the Pasha's purpose, or was he at last resolved? With any man than the Pasha I would imagine that being a prisoner and a fierce enemy would give the *coup mortal*, he would gladly embrace the first chance of the country given up by his government. But there was no telling what course the Pasha would follow. These few hints only throw some light on my postscript, which here follows, and after reading these letters. I wrote a formal letter, which I sent to any person, Pasha, Jephson or any of the rebels, and added as requested, but on a separate sheet of paper, after we read a private postscript for Jephson's perusal, as follows:

KAVALLI,

"MY DEAR SIR:—I now send thirty rifles and Kaval lake with my letters, with my urgent instructions that a





ENT.

perhaps ten. I will do capturing the peace. es, and I notice that sources should he get this trouble, I am his n, I shall be plunged if they were willing to . to be sensible of his his own interest. Be ou be drawn into the fatal fascination the Soudan territory seems to have for all Europeans in late years. As they touch its ground they seem to be drawn into a whirlpool, which sucks them in and devours them with its waves. The only way to avoid it is to obey blindly, devotedly and unquestionably all orders from the outside. The committee said: 'Relieve Emin with this ammunition. If he wishes to come out, the ammunition will enable him to do so. If he elects the same thing, and could do so on their ng in clear, decided instalment of relief. I am ready to lend e must be no hesita-

"STANLEY."



## CHAPTER XXVIII.

### COVERIES THAT EXCITE THE WORLD'S AP

NSIDERING the trials, sufferings, and hardships through which Stanley had ] thropic mission to relieve Emin, whose s critical, with his power and influence dest ambitious and optimistic hopes could ha prospect, it is but natural that the great a sense of disappointment, if not disgust iffERENCE with which Emin received his s that this want of appreciation on the the mind of Stanley and cause him time ich he had endured, in his undertaking d unselfish service for one who, 'while aid that had been rendered. Says he in a that all the stretch of country between tely new country, except what may be mea there is that dead white of the map now that the region of earth confined between h latitude 29 degrees 45 minutes is one len forest with a growth of an untold n ervals with immense numbers of vicious sized men, who were unceasing in the : of grass land lying between it and A every mile of our advance with spirit, ar ans of some priceless treasure hidden in n Pasha and his thousands. Sir Percival ave met with hotter opposition. Three s to traverse these unholy regions with

REHEARSING THE PERILS OF THE MARCH the imprisonment of Emin, Stanley ther ch he had so heroically endured, and say hen crowded fast. Emin Pasha was a p rced companion, and it really appeared list. But there is virtue, you know, even ng the nerves and facing those overclinging heed to the reputed danger. One is assis other *coups*, and the danger, somehow,



forest region; the Awamba, the fine-featured Wazonira, the Wanyoro bandits, the Lake Albert Edward tribes and the shepherd races of the eastern uplands, then the Wanyankori, besides the Wanyaruwamba and the Wazinja, until at last we came to a church whose cross dominated a Christian settlement, and we knew that we had reached the outskirts of blessed civilization."

Continuing a report of his discoveries, written Sept. 8th, 1888, from a Batunda village on the Ituri, to Col. J. A. Grant, a member of the Relief Committee, he says:

"MY DEAR GRANT:—I have only been able to write scrappy letters hitherto, though I start them with a strong inclination to give our friends a complete

#### PUNISHMENT OF A TRAITOR.

story of our various marches and their incidents. But so far I have been compelled to hurriedly close lest I should miss the opportunity to send them. This one, for instance, I know not how to send at present, but an accidental arrival of a caravan or an accidental detention of the expedition may furnish the means. I will trust to chance and write, nevertheless.

"You, more than any of the committee, are interested in Lake Albert. Let us deal with that first. When on December 13th, 1887, we sighted the lake, the southern part lay at our feet almost like an immense map. We glanced rapidly

STANLEY'S AND RUIR PASERA'S FORCES ON THE MARCH TO THE COAST.

over the grosser details, the lofty plateau, the wall of that of Baregga to the west, rising nearly 3000 feet above between the hills the stretched out plains, seemingly everywhere and there a dark clump of brushwood, which, as westerly, became a thin forest. The south-west edge nine miles in a direct south-westerly line from this place terminus of the south-west corner 1 deg. and 17 min. magnetic compass, magnetic bearing; of the south-east number of falls 1 deg. 37 min. This will make it a sec. north latitude, magnetic bearing of 1 deg. 48 min. latitude 1 deg. 25 min. 30 sec., this exactly describes the line from the south-west corner of the lake to the south Baker fixed his position latitude 1 deg. 15 min. north. The centre of Mbakovia terrace bears 1 deg. 21 min. 30 sec. first point of observation. This will make his Vacovia 1 sec., allowing 10 deg. west variation.

"In trying to solve the problem of the infinity of 1 by Baker, and finding that the lake terminus is only for he stood to view it 'from a little hill' and on 'a beautiful feel almost justified in saying he had never seen the lake Vacovia proves that he actually was there, and the general of the east coast of Vacovia to Magungo also proves that

#### VIEWS ABOUT LAKE ALBERT AND MOUNT RU

"When we turn our faces north-east we say that Baker well; but when we turn them southward our senses in the mystery, because our eyes see not what Baker saw Mounteney Jephson, Surgeon Parke, Emin Pasha, and my own eyes upon the scene. I find Baker has made what surprised also at Baker's altitudes of Lake Albertains, and at the breadth attributed by him to the lake Vacovia is ten and a quarter miles distant, not forty or Mountains are nothing else but a vast upland, the high not above 6000 feet above the level of the sea. The by the aneroid and the boiling point will not exceed 2

"Last of all, away to the south-west, where he 1 stretch of the lake, there rises about forty miles from snowy mountain, a solid, square-browed mass with a between two lofty ridges. If it was a beautifully clear seen this, being nearer to it by thirteen geographical 1

"About the lake discovered by me in 1876 I can the natives. At the chief of Kavalli's I saw two natives with One of them hailed from Unyampaka and the other from said that the Albert Lake is much larger than that near





is the source of the Lowa, though I know nothing positive infer from the bold manner in which the Aruwimi trenches any one would have imagined that it belonged to the N minutes' march between the head of one of its streams to the whence we looked down upon Albert N'yanza. From the the head of this stream are 390 geographical miles in a strai to the Aruwimi in size is the Lowa river, and from the m the longitude of Ugampaka Post, in a direct line, it is only 24

"Yours, very sincerely,

"HENR'

#### DISAPPOINTMENTS CROWD FAST UPON ONE ANO

The next letter received from Stanley reads as follow:

"I reached the Albert N'yanza from Banalya for the

day

En

bo

sin

188

ter

ery

var

T1

Eq

rev

all

aft

vac

ful

firs

sta

pai

wh

anc

of

#### VIEW ON THE SEMLIKI RIVER.

seq

verses, and dispatched a steamer to Khartoum for re-enfor letter waiting for me near the Albert N'yanza exposing th of the survivors, and urging the immediate necessity of n end of December, otherwise it would be too late. I arriv of January for the third time."

Journeying thus back and forth with seemingly endl disappointment connected with every return to the lake



situation, for Emin's people were scattered over a large territory, and it would require months of time to collect them together in the event that they decided to leave the country. But Stanley's patience seems to be inexhaustible, and he concluded to wait, devoting the period of provoking delay to an examination of the country and to such sport as the great amount of game in the lake districts afforded.

#### A LION HUNT.

Stanley engaged the services of a half-dozen natives who were familiar with the region to act as beaters, and with Williams, who was an inveterate sportsman, he enjoyed a season of splendid hunting. Several species of antelopes were

#### BUFFALO SHOOTING ALONG THE SEMLIKI RIVER.

particularly numerous, as were also buffaloes, and these fell to his rifle in great number. But the hunters thirsted for something more exciting, a desire which was at length gratified. Lions are scarce on the west side of Lake Albert, but they are occasionally seen, and at the time of Stanley's visit some depredations had been committed which were known to be chargeable to one or more lions, as the skeletons of bullocks had been found, on the bones of which were unmistakable tooth-prints of the lordly beast. Accordingly, arrangements were made to go in pursuit of the game. The country which they were believed to infest was thoroughly examined, but to no avail, and, after beating a district more than twenty miles in diameter without seeing any evidences of a lion's presence, the hunters were much discouraged, and would probably have returned but for the alluring



prospect of the country, which they followed towards the mountain with continual delight at the new wonders that burst upon their enraptured vision, as will be presently described in letters.

At length a villager was met who gave the hunters information that two lions had visited the district on the night before, frightened from the carcass of a giraffe—quite as uncommon as the lion—which they had more than half devoured. They were indeed, as the lions were now not only located, but it might be upon that they would return to the feast sometime in the future. They accordingly followed a guide to the place where the remains were, and finding it on the edge of a wooded country, they had no better than a safe position in neighboring trees.

The moon did not rise until nearly midnight, so that the hunters placed a piece of paper on a stick near the carcass, to serve them in definitely locating the lions in case they made their visit to the body while it was dark. But this precaution was unnecessary, for the hunters spent a very comfortable four hours in their perches without hearing any sounds of game. At length the moon arose in great majesty, flooding the plain and the forest, presenting at once a magnificent and romantic view. A half hour afterwards the hunters were greeted with a yet more interesting sight, beheld the forms of no less than three lions, two of which were of great size. They made their approach slowly, as if expecting an interruption. Finding everything still, they came on with more confidence, though the one that appeared the most timid, evidently taking upon himself the role of chief watcher. The hunters reserved their fire until two of the lions had crouched upon the shoulders of the carcass and began devouring the body. At this instant two shots rang out almost simultaneously, followed quickly by others, and a roaring and growling from two wounded lions that was frightful to hear. The one that acted as sentry bounded off, but was hit in the hind quarters, from the manner in which he dragged his body another escaped unhurt, but the smallest of the three had been struck by two bullets and was unable to rise, but it rolled over in agony, clawing the ground in reach, and growling with a savageness that was appalling. The hunters poured shot after shot into its body, but with no effect, until at least twenty shots had been fired before it ceased to move violently. When at last death was certain, Stanley left his perch in the tree and approached the body, which he found to be bleeding from several wounds that the hide was considered useless, every shot, apparently, had had effect, and several had passed entirely through the body.

The hunt having terminated so favorably, Stanley and Williams returned to the camp, bearing as a trophy the head of the royal beast to serve as evidence of the truth of their story.

## CHAPTER XX

### EAT HUNT—PREPARATIONS FOR

success of Stanley's hunt induced others to attempt an imitation and the Abrab contingent started had escaped; but though they found a great deal of game, saw no signs of the lions, nor Stanley's successful hunt occurred to shooting hippopotami in several being killed and the car enjoy hippopotamus flesh.

In middle of February another hunt was made as for food, since a supply of buying goats of the natives at the buffaloes, which, fortunately, a party, carrying a Reilly rifle, one or more elephants after it was his good fortune to find the Ruwenzori mountains, sands, fairly teeming with game and ponds, which are not infrequent than in any other region of the Congo banks.

It was therefore a difficult matter for a venture among the vast herds of the country their favorite game.

#### A TERRIFYING SPECTACLE

A large troop of elephants discovered by the river, where the grass was so thick, so that the portions visible were like turtles swimming on the surface, the undulations produced by the dense pasturage appear like a forest the shore that lay miles behind Stanley and his gun-bearers, and to get on their flank, with

elephants would not be likely to run over the hunters, which is really one of the greatest dangers encountered in stalking these great animals. When in excellent range, Stanley selected a large tusker and gave it a mortal wound at the first fire, but the stricken elephant dashed away with the others, and ran nearly a mile before it halted from exhaustion. The herd made towards the jungle on the left, where it was easily followed by sight until all except the wounded elephant had disappeared in the dense growth. Stanley pushed on in the wake of the herd until he came near the stricken bull, and then reconnoitered for a position that would enable him to give it a final shot. But the

#### ANTELOPE SHOOTING IN THE SEMLIKI FOREST.

elephant was watchful, and while not able to exert itself as before, there was still sufficient vitality left to make it a dangerous foe. The beaters were called up, and as they moved forward the elephant again retreated, until it had gained the forest, where, in apparent exhaustion, it again stopped and trumpeted shrilly. A fairly close view showed that the great bull had been struck in the left temple, from which there was a copious flow of blood that left a well-marked trail over the two miles which it had now travelled. Stanley continued in pursuit until he again found his wounded quarry standing under a very large





tree and presenting a spectacle of extraordinary rage, tossing frothing at the mouth, waving its tail and roaring in a voice thing in the forest. To shoot at so large an elephant at long direction at one of its very few vital spots, would be a mere tion, so that Stanley gradually approached nearer and nearer a favorable shot; but this effort proved futile, for at a sight of the beast seemed to summon all its remaining strength for a fury it came plunging through the brush like a nameless might everything before it, marking a route like a cyclone and with such shrill trumpeting as pierced the ears and lent frenzy Stanley, being in its path, fired his heavy rifle at the monster no effect other than to bring its anger into yet greater emphasis an attack which the elephant made with an impetuosity true firing his gun Stanley made a quick retreat, but not so quick the animal from his track, for now he was viciously and unsued. The beaters had scattered in every direction, leaving their own wits and fortune, which most fortunately served him. The elephant was gaining rapidly and must surely overtake him in a moment Stanley leaped to one side and dodged behind a large tree. The mighty leviathan went thundering by, blinded with confusion. Another moment Stanley's rifle was to his shoulder, and another into the elephant, which now paused and quickly received a second ball in the side of the head near where he was first hit. This would certainly have proved fatal in a few hours, but it required to give the great bull his instant quietus. On receiving this the great elephant stood still for an instant, then raised his trunk and gradually sank down on his forelegs until he plunged heavily head, then rolled over on his left side quite dead. He was a monarch, who had stood nearly eleven feet in height and weighed nearly nine hundred pounds, which, after extraction, weighed ninety pounds each.

#### VAST ELEPHANT HERDS IN THE CONGO REGION

Although the district in which Stanley killed this uncounted elephant does not properly belong to the Congo basin, the region is a part of the immense grazing lands in which there are numerous herds. Commenting on the great number of elephants and Tipo Tib's enormous collections of ivory, Stanley says:

"Until recently we had heard a great deal about Tipo Tib's enormous possession. Ward and other officers of the expedition saw it; and some of them could have related terrible tales. There were tusks which told their own dark records, blackened by the burning villages from which they had been dragged by long burial in out-of-the-way places, and only unearthed by the owners for the ransoming of wives and children. There ma

and no doubt there were, which had been obtained in the way of legitimate trade; but, as a rule, the ivory of the Arab hunter is plunder. It constitutes a vast store, and of enormous value. There are said to be about 200,000 elephants, in about 15,000 herds, in the Congo basin. Each carrying on an average about fifty pounds of ivory in his head, these represent in the European market £5,000,000. But of yet greater value than the ivory of Central Africa is the rubber, palm oil, and orchilla weed which that region produces in most remarkable abundance. If every warrior living on the immediate banks of the Congo and its navigable affluents—which are of the aggregate length of 10,800 miles, within easy reach of the trader above Leopoldville—were to pick about a

#### TWO-HORNED AFRICAN RHINOCEROS.

third of a pound of rubber each day throughout the year, or to melt two-thirds of a pound weight of palm oil, and convey it to the trader for sale, £5,000,000 worth of vegetable produce could be obtained without exhaustion of the wild forest productions. At the same time, although limited as compared with other products, ivory remains a very valuable article of commerce. If 200 tusks arrived per week at Stanley Pool, or say 520,000 pounds of ivory per annum, it would still require twenty-five years to destroy the elephants in the Congo basin. This estimate will enable the reader to realize the value of Tipo Tib's store, numbering hundreds of tusks, averaging certainly not less than fifty pounds each in weight."

Mr. Johnston's experiences on his ascent of the reports of the "happy hunting ground." The elephant haughty possession of plain and forest. Canoeing you see, every morning, the previous night's devastation break and destroy much beautiful vegetation, and of eat. They are much more commonly seen during time, the smaller streams being exhausted, the elephants of the Congo for their bath and their drink. "Although frequently met with above Stanley Pool, still in certain river they are common, especially in the cataract region; site Isangila elephants were often shot by members of the expedition; and at the Livingstone mission station of Bahr el Jebel from the south bank of the Congo, elephants have been seen in procession past the door of the mission house, while the elephants shut themselves up securely within."

#### PREPARING TO RETURN TO ZANZIBAR

When the hunt was concluded with such magnificent bagged being twenty-one antelopes, five buffaloes, ten zebras, six pallahs and one elephant—Stanley returned to his camp, hoping to be able to speedily move with his expedition towards home. The enforced waiting had not been without its effects, for on Stanley's third entry into Kavalli his condition from sickness and ulcers, the result of their long expedition, was described. This interval of waiting was employed in the treatment of the intense sufferings of the afflicted. From the time he left Bodo he had attended an average of one hundred sick men. The effects of this rest and treatment were seen in the fact that when the expedition reached Kavalli there were less than 200 fit men. On the 1st of April there were 280 able-bodied men fit to start on the long march to the sea.

Stanley sent his men to assist the removal of the expedition rather to bring their effects that had been landed at the plateau camp above Kavalli, from which point the expedition to Selim Bey was sent up to Wadelai to muster the people of the plateau, and bring them by steamer to the Kavalli coast. The vexations began, because at the rate that Selim was moving the people, it would require three months to get them to the coast. If brought down from Wadelai and landed at Kavalli the expedition could not possibly be carried so great a distance as to the coast. Their effects the people did not want to move, and he was exhausted all the vast store of patience that he had. Emin Pasha had no influence whatever over his efforts to persuade him to remain, the prospects for

## ROES OF THE DA

or a time cheerless i  
o leave with Emin an  
s, after reflecting on t  
the Mahdi enemies w  
se was theirs while or  
OUS MEASURES FOR SU  
harassments from whi  
not think I should be  
ns some time before;  
at, after waiting forty  
nearly fourteen hundr  
t of the entire numb  
d that there had bee  
ri quarters had been  
stract the rifles. Thi

had been conspiracie  
at we had many rebel  
more than they feare  
re put into practice th  
o the Pasha to consul  
on—not but what the  
o the want of time, et  
from Wadelai which  
sness among Selim B

informed him that I  
f what this hidden da  
oliged if the Pasha w  
in the square of the  
is being sounded, and  
company of Zanzibaris  
r huts. Dismayed by  
ich was surrounded b  
estioned, they denied  
o fight, or to withsta  
those who desired to  
all hastened to one  
ha's people, having pa  
s, and brought to the  
and put under guard.  
' I said, 'will you be

these rebellious tricks of Wadelai and Duffili people :  
first move made by them I shall be obliged to exter

"On the Pasha translating, the Arabs bowed, an  
obey their father religiously.

"At the muster this curious result was returned  
men, 84 married women, 187 female domestics, 74 children above two years of  
age, 35 infants in arms; making a total of 514. I have reason to be  
the number was nearer 600, as many were not reported from a fear,  
that some would be taken prisoners."



in carrying the baggage of the Pasha's people, whose essentials for the march were very crude. On the 12th boni's; but in the night I was struck down with a severe fever which proved fatal.

"During my illness—of twenty-eight days—another several conspiracies were afloat, but only one was attempted, the ringleader of that one, a slave of Awash Effendi's, at Kavalli, was arrested, and after court-martial, which was executed.

#### THE LOFTY RUEWENZORI RANGE.

"The route I had adopted was one which skirted the coast at a distance of forty miles or thereabouts from the N'yanza, a fairish path, but the three following days tried our legs of the ups and downs and the breaks of cone-grass. On the end of these mountains we were made aware that our march was uninterrupted, for the King of Unyoro had made a bold advance to a respectable extent of country on the left side of the lake, embracing all the open grass-land between the Semliki region. Thus, without making an immense detour through the mountains, we would have been fatal to most of the Egyptians, we had on, despite Kabba Rega and his Warasura. This latter was known to Wanyoro by all natives who have come in contact with him.

"The first day's encounter was decidedly in our favour, cleared the territory as far as the Semliki river free of the Egyptians.

"Meantime we had become aware that we were on the edge of a range which promised to be very interesting, for daily, as we went forward, the great snowy range which had so suddenly aroused our intense interest (on May 1, 1888) grew larger. It extended a long distance to the south-west, which was some distance off our course unless a pass could be discovered to the countries south. At Buhobo, where we met with Kabba Rega's raiders, we stood on the summit of the range, the Semliki Valley on its north-west and south-east, opposite side rose Ruewenzori, the Snow Mountain, and the flank, which dipped down gradually until it fell into the lake, being joined with the table-land of Unyoro. The hump of the range dipped suddenly, as it seemed to us, into lands that we had never yet seen. Between these opposing barriers spread the Semliki at its eastern extremity that one of our officers exclaimed, and the female followers of the Egyptians set up a shout for their own lake, the Albert N'yanza, again. With the n'yanza like the lake, but a field-glass revealed that it was a lake with the ripeness of its grass. Those who have reached





were chased for some miles; but, fleet as greyhounds, they caused no casualties to report on either side.

"We entered the Awamba country on the eastern shore of Lake Tanganyika. Our marches for several days afterwards were through the forest which flourished in the clearings made in this truly African country. Then we struck the open again immediately under Ruwenzori. Ever, as we had flattered ourselves that we should see some day the Snow Mountain was very coy, and hard to distinguish. It loomed impending over us like a tropical storm-cloud, ready to bring rain and ruin on us. Near sunset a peak or two here, a crest there, white with snow, shot into view—jagged clouds whirling round them, and then the darkness of night. Often at sunrise the snow would appear fresh, clean, brightly pure; profound blue shadows around it; every line and dent, knoll and turret-like crag clearly visible. But presently all would be buried under a thick mist, until the immense mountain was no more visible than the sands of miles away. And then, also, the Snow Mountain, the range, the nearer we approached the base of the range the more it showed itself, for higher ridges obtruded themselves and barred the view. We obtained three remarkable views—one from the N'yanza Kavalli, and a third from the South Point.

#### SCALING THE MOUNTAIN.

"In altitude above the sea I should estimate it to be about 19,000 feet. We cannot trust our triangulations, for the mountain was hidden. When we were in positions to ascertain it correctly, the mountain gathered his cloudy blankets around him and hid himself. No clear view, from the loftiest summit down to the lowest valley, was obtained from a place called Karimi, makes me confident that the figures stated above.

"It took us nineteen marches to reach the south-west end of the Serengeti Valley being below us on our right, and where the mist had permitted, would have been exposed in every direction. The valley traversed by us is generally known under the name of the Serengeti. While the habitable portion of the range is principally covered by the forest. The huts of these natives, the Bakonju, are seen as high as the tops of the trees above the sea.

"Almost all our officers had at one time a keen desire to try themselves as the climbers of these African Alps, but, unfortunately, were in a very unfit condition for such a work. The Pasha was about 1000 feet higher than our camp, but Lieutenant Stairs reached 10,677 feet above the sea, but had the mortification to find that between him and the Snowy Mount proper. He brought,



by the reports of our good deeds in relieving the salt-the universally obnoxious Warasura.

#### THE CARAVAN STRICKEN WITH FEVER

"If you draw a straight line from the N'yanza to the Victoria Lake, it would represent pretty fairly our Karagwe, and Uhaiya to Uzinja. Ankori was open driven the Wayneyoro from the salt-lake. The story There also existed a wholesome fear of an expedition which all the power of Ankori could not have done. K because free-trade is the policy of the Wanyambu, and were too much engrossed with their civil war to inter Uhaiya admitted our entrance without cavil, out of re and because we were well introduced by the Wanyam guided us in like manner to be welcomed by the Wazin during the long journey from the Albert Lake to cause had taken this straight course; but we have suffered 1 number of fevers. We have had as many as 150 case is so beswept with cold winds that the expedition wil soned veterans like the Pasha and Captain Casati wer time, and both were reduced to excessive weakness like regardless of their tribes, tumbled headlong into the lo fever fits off. Some, after a short illness, died. The dail an ulcer, a fit of fever, a touch of bowel complaint, ca hide in any cover along the route; and, being unpercei of the expedition, were left to the doubtful treatmen language they were utterly ignorant. In the month their number in this manner.

"Out of respect to the first British prince, who ha African geography, we have named the southern N'y from the other two N'yanzas—the Albert Edward N'ya large lake. Compared to the Victoria, the Tanganyika small, but its importance and interest lie in the sole fac of all the streams at the extremity of the south-wester and discharges these waters by one river, the Semliki, in in like manner as Lake Victoria receives all streams fr south-eastern or right Nile basin, and pours these wate into the Albert N'yanza.

"These two Niles, amalgamating in Lake Albert, well-known name of White Nile.

#### A LAND DESOLATED BY PILLAGE.

"The southernmost stretch of the Ruwenzori rang montory between two broad extents of the ancient bed o formerly known as the Muta Nziga. To avoid the lon



the attention; while between each separate settlement the wild banana thrives luxuriantly, growing at as high an altitude as the summits of the highest spurs, whereon the Wakonju have constructed their villages.

"Though we were mutually hostile at first, and had several little skirmishes, we became at last acquainted with the Wakonju, and ver close friends. The common were the Warasura, and the f the Warasura upon hearing advance revealed to the Wakor they ought to be friends with a who were supposed to be ho their oppressors. Hence we 1 goats, bananas, and native h abundance; our loads were guides furnished us, and ev telligence of the movements Wanyoro brought us. In the to engage the foe a band o accompanied us across Usong Toro to the frontier of Uhaiy

#### DESCRIPTIONS OF THE TRIBES

"South-west of Awamba, the forest region of the Valley, begins Usongora. The try occupies the plains border north-west and north of Lake Edward. The people are a fi but in no way differing fr finer types of men seen i agwe and Ankori, and the W shepherds of Uganda. The consists of milk and me latter eaten raw or slightly w

"The Toro natives are a r of the higher class of negroes what like the Waganda. The become so amalgamated wit

#### A WAKONJU WOMAN.

lower Wanyoro that we can find nothing distinctive. The same may be : the Wahaiyana. What the royal families of those tribes may be we ca imagine from having seen the rightful prince of Usongora in Ankori, w as perfect a specimen of a pure Galla as could be found in Shoa. B need not conclude from this that only the royal families possess fine fe

**WALSH WILSON** 617-551-6677

WVF /

These Ethiopic types are thickly spread among the Western African uplands. Wherever we find a land that enjoys the Wahuma at home, with their herds, and in loofancy himself transported into the midst of Abyssinia.

"Ankori is a land which, because of its numbers and peace, enjoys long terms of uninterrupted peace; and more numerous than elsewhere. The royal family and all the wealthier and more important people are pure occupation, besides warring when necessary, is breeding. The agricultural class consists of slaves—at least such they are designated. The majority of the Wahuma can be as regular, fine and delicate as Europeans.

"The countries to the south of the Albert Edward and we have not heard much respecting them; but what much from that which you find illustrated by that it is called Muta Nziga in the 'Dark Continent' map.

"Ruanda bears the name of Unyavingi to the north, gora and Ankori, and is a large, compact country, lying between the Nile and the Congo water-shed to the west, and a day's long march to the Albert Edward. It also occupies the south-west side of that lake. The people are described as such and that no country, not even Uganda, could equal it in fertility. The late queen has been succeeded by her son, Kigeri,

#### REMARKABLE VICISSITUDES.

"Since the commencement of our march homeward from Kavalli, we have undergone remarkable vicissitudes of climate. The temperate and enjoyable climate of the region west of Lake Edward to the hot-house atmosphere of the Semliki Valley—a much lower level. Night and day were equally oppressive and one or two of us suffered greatly in consequence. The ascent from the Semliki Valley to the plains north of Lake Albert brought us to a hot land; the ground was baked hard, the grass was withered, and the everlasting thick haze, would have been intolerable if it had not been for the water, except that from the Ruwenzori streams charged with nitre and organic corruption. The ascent was marked by an increase of cold and many an evening colds, catarrhs, dysenteries and paralysis. Several times, at 6000 feet above the sea, to be punished with agues, and white by scores. In the early mornings, at this altitude, was common. Blackberries were plentiful along the path at 5200 feet above the sea-level.

"Yours obediently

"H. H. H."



## CHAPTER XXXI.

### END OF THE JOURNEY.

**INCLUDING** the story of Stanley's last expedition, we have now only to add descriptions to carry the narrative of travel from Albert Lake to Zanzibar. As decided in the preceding chapter, the route selected for travel was south from Albert Lake along the Nile and Semliki river, thence south-eastward to the shores of Victoria Nyanza. This route proved a most fortunate selection, not only because of the geographical and ethnological discoveries made, but also because the hostile Wanyoro tribes were thereby avoided. M'tesa, had he been allowed to, doubt have given substantial aid to Stanley, but his success was rendered utterly bitter by his hostility to Christians, and with the powerful force at his command he could have easily destroyed—as he certainly would have done had opportunity offered.

#### EXPERT TREE CLIMBERS.

The many tribes not previously met with by which Stanley came in contact with in the formerly unexplored regions of the Nile, lent a new interest to the expedition, and added to its value. Among other peoples whom Stanley describes in the preceding chapter, he found a tribe which added to their customs and habits a singular propensity for climbing the tall trees and building their temporary habitations thereon. This practice no doubt grew out of the conditions to which they were once subject by a more powerful tribe, which induced them to make their abode in the loftiest tree to be at an advantage in repelling attack. Another reason is the frequent inundations of the district, which rendered an altitudinous position a necessity. Neither of these reasons now forcing people no longer suffer from their cruel neighbors as they were formerly, but to a gradual filling in of what was formerly a very low valley, the floods are less frequent. But old habits, especially when transmitted from generation to generation, are not so easily abandoned, so that there are still to be occasionally seen the tree-dwellers, while the tribes continue to retain their expertness in climbing. Their means for ascending large and lofty trees is quite as simple as in former habitations. In scaling large trees the climber procures a strong vine, which he throws around the tree, and then, holding it in either hand he puts his feet against the body of the tree

the vine in a kind of twisting motion, fairly walks up by a sea. To see a native thus ascending a tree, one would think the feat but it requires much practice before it can be accomplished.

These people, though living between tribes that had no course with Arab traders, knew nothing of firearms, and exhibited

and alarm when a native came in their midst. When the Semliki Plain, an eagle in the sight of the natives, and instant scene ensued. Scarcely fallen to the ground, the men rushed to the tree, grimaces, as if half-afraid, they set to work, and the eagle of its quill feathers cut off the tail. The purpose of the ceremony is presently understood. The preter explained that the bird had been killed, and that possession of the tail parts would give influence of the air.

Further south, of the Ruwenzori mountains are more familiar with the natives, and many of them are a fact which is part of the Wahuma, who are clothed in loincloths and head-dresses ornamented with feathers. The Wahuma, however, are the being cone-shaped houses, constructed, and bearing resemblance to those of the American Indians.

Upon certain occasions, a person is designated as priest, and it is customary for the

#### A TREE CLIMBER.

their chief or king to circulate among her people, borne upon a palanquin, with a lusty servant, and scatter small gifts, generally beads, to the people who gather about her way. This ceremony is supposed to be a





reduction of the caravan from this cause, other more serious obstacles were encountered, which depleted the ranks by several scores. There were occasional stretches of dense growth to be penetrated, swamps to be passed, streams to be waded and fever districts to be covered. These entailed hardships which brought on disease from which many never rallied, and died even while being carried in hammocks. An accident also occurred by which one of the Soudanese boys had his eyesight destroyed, while another was so severely burned about the face and body as to require nursing over the remainder of the way. Three boys had obtained some brass shells, from which they attempted to remove the bullets by melting out the lead. They placed the shells in a fire one evening after camp had been made, and while blowing the coals on which the shells were laid the cartridges exploded, with the results mentioned.

Occasionally, as the caravan passed by villages, the natives would rush out with shouts, gesticulations and a display of their singular weapons; and wizards would indulge in devilish dances in their incantations to oppose the march,

#### THE WAHUMA KING.

but finding small attention paid to their actions they most frequently concluded their wild exhibitions by making overtures of friendship; some, however, were disdainful to the last, and sent imprecations upon the vanishing caravan after failing to exact a tribute for the privilege of crossing their territory.

1.

of  
in  
: s  
un  
a)  
eli  
on  
ill  
on  
ce  
rd  
ac  
in  
T  
mi  
to  
on  
he  
po  
an  
ur  
of  
to  
ga  
nc  
co  
tic  
re  
si  
M  
an  
nd  
rth  
pc  
at  
e  
ou  
al  
var  
arc

to  
an









the object of a mirth that echoed along the line from one end to the other, and which brought upon him so many good-natured jibes that he could not again be induced to mount a horse even after his own was recaptured.

#### ARRIVAL AT BAGAMOYO.

Aside from the mishap to Jephson, there was no trouble experienced with the horses so kindly provided by Wissmann, and a triumphal entry into Bagamoyo was made at eleven o'clock, Wednesday morning, December 4. The town was profusely decorated in expectation of their coming, carriers having gone on in advance; and as the cavalcade came in sight of the coast, the German man-of-war *Sperber* fired a salute of twelve guns. There were several vessels lying in the roadstead, and all of these were handsomely decked in flags, giving a beautiful appearance to the channel between Bagamoyo and Zanzibar Island.

At three o'clock Wissmann entertained Stanley and Emin at a luncheon, at which several Europeans were present, among others the captain of the *Sperber*, who welcomed Stanley, and then congratulated Emin on behalf of Emperor William. In the evening there was a champagne banquet, attended by several representatives of foreign powers, chiefly consuls. The German consul toasted the Queen, which was followed by a toast to Stanley by Wissmann, which brought forth a most eloquent reply from the great explorer. In the course of his remarks, he gave praise to God for all that had been accomplished, and most feelingly referred to those soldiers who had accompanied him and left their bones, as an evidence of their devotion, bleaching in the forest. His speech throughout was eloquently reverential and modest, and gave a new exhibition of his true greatness.

#### AN ACCIDENT TO EMIN PASHA.

The joyful festivities that were thus inaugurated to manifest a gladsome welcome to the returned explorers were continued to a late hour, and until they were suddenly interrupted by a most deplorable accident, which came very near ending the life of Emin Pasha, turning mirth into instant mourning. Considerable wine was consumed during the ceremonies of jollification, Emin Pasha indulging to an extent which rendered him nearly unconscious of his surroundings. He had taken lodging at a typical Zanzibarian caravansary, in which all the windows are so low that the sills are nearly on a level with the floor. They are thus made in order to allow a fuller sweep of air, so necessary in a tropical country, and also to serve as a doorway leading out onto the veranda which invariably surrounds the second stories of the large buildings. When Emin retired to his room it was after midnight, and being very warm, as well as confused by the potations he had indulged in, he walked out through the long open window and seated himself on the railing of the balcony to catch the fresh air for a few moments before taking his repose. While thus seated, receiving the cooling night breeze, he lost his balance and fell to the ground below, a distance of nearly twenty feet. He struck with such force upon his side that he lost consciousness, but his groans attracted the attention

## HEROES OF THE DARK CONTINENT

who were sitting on a porch on the first floor, The other members of the expedition were w moments tender hands carried the unconscious and Dr. Parke was hurriedly summoned, as were the English and German fleets in the harbor. he was very seriously, perhaps fatally, hurt except Dr. Parke, gave it as their opinion that 1. Blood was flowing from his mouth, nose and an equally dangerous body hurts. His physical strength by the long march and fevers from which he had suffered a few months before, so that his chances for recovery were nearly a week he remained unconscious, with a ringing all the while from his ears, and other symptoms manifest. In the mean time telegrams of sympathy came two and three times on each day, concluding with inquiries of Emin's condition. Anxiety was intense as it was felt the world would be deprived of a report of his secretarial Provinces, but at length reason regained and the doctor awoke from his death-like stupor. Hope revived the patient, and after four weeks he was pronounced that this time he could not be removed, and it was only before he was able to leave Bagamoyo for Zanzibar that he received the very best attention, his injuries mended and it was thought advisable to send him either to Cairo or Alexandria. In January he suffered a relapse that leaves him confined to bed, January 20th.

### HONORS TO STANLEY.

On the sixth of December Stanley crossed over to Zanzibar with loud acclamations and a hundred public telegrams while telegram after telegram from Queen Victoria, Khedive of Egypt, and great men of Europe, democratic and less sensible head would have been a wealth of applause and honor most frequently were a flutter with flags, bands serenaded him, decorations were bestowed upon him, governments and his service to convey him whither he wished, and the most flattering attentions for a month before he left England, specially appointed to carry him. Arriving at Cairo, a distinguished delegation of British officers and a magnificent banquet, conducted him to the palace where he received a no less hearty welcome at the banquet being given him at the palace on the third day. Three days later he was likewise honored by

while floods of invitations continued to pour in upon him from scientific and distinguished social bodies in London.

Owing to his long continuance in a tropical country, and his emergence in the winter season, Stanley wisely concluded to defer his return to England until some time in the early spring, thus having to disappoint for a while the expectations of his admirers, who had hoped to extend a hearty welcome to him during the social season.

During this interval he is actively engaged preparing his final reports, and conferring with the Khedive and representatives of other governments concerning the suppression of the slave trade in Central Africa, the overthrow of the Mahdi, extension of Khedival sovereignty in the Soudan, and the projecting of railroads from the coast to the lake regions. His labors, so heroically accomplished, are thus evidently but the beginning of others of yet greater importance, for Stanley is now moved by an ambition to reclaim the whole of Central Africa to civilization, in whose abilities the Christian world reposes the greatest confidence.

## APPENDIX.

### ADVANCE OF THE MAHDI, AND INSURRECTION OF THE PASHA'S TROOPS.

dy explained, Mr. Stanley, upon his first meeting with Emin, April 29th, 1889, made arrangements for returning to Fort Bodo to bring up the garrison that had been left there, but thought it wise to leave Mr. Jephson with the Pasha, who had to proceed back to Wadelai to confer with his people, and ascertain how they would consider Mr. Stanley's proposal to conduct them to the eastern coast.

Fort Bodo was only eleven days' march from Lake Albert N'yanza, but upon reaching the camp Stanley learned that no news had been received from the rear column, so he resolutely set out in search of them, as described in Stanley's letter in the preceding chapter. A long interval therefore elapsed before his return to the lake, during which time many stirring events took place in Emin's province to which Mr. Jephson was a witness, and who has given us some graphic pen pictures of the thrilling adventures which befell him.

Mr. Jephson was the only member of the expedition who actually reached the Egyptian stations held by Emin on the Nile north of Lake Albert N'yanza. It was he who, during many months there, witnessed and shared Emin Pasha's final struggles with the treachery of the faithless Egyptians and Arabs, and the mutiny of a large part of the Soudanese garrisons, left under his command. Mr. Jephson and Emin Pasha had their lives threatened by these rebels, and from August 20, 1888, to late in November were imprisoned at Duffili, in the utmost uncertainty about their fate—whether they were to be delivered over to the Mahdi, whose army was rapidly approaching, or to be put to death, or carried off into the wild and savage lands west of the Nile. No other European was then in the neighborhood, and they were quite out of reach of any direct help from Mr. Stanley.

Mr. Jephson's experiences are therefore unique in the history of these adventurous doings, and may be regarded as the last chapter of the Fall of the Soudan Government; as the concluding event of all those memorable conflicts and disasters that began in 1882 with the rise of the Mahdi's power, and which comprised the destruction of Hicks Pasha's army in Kordofan, the mission of General Gordon, the siege of Khartoum, Lord Wolseley's grand Nile Expedition, the capture of Khartoum and death of Gordon, in January, 1885; the repeated battles with Osman Digna near Souakim, and every other incident of the past eight years in those vast territories lost to Egyptian dominion, and now utterly

cut off from intercourse with the civilized world. Emin Pasha, in 1888, still remained in command of these stations, except Lado, which had been captured the Mahdi's forces, constantly advancing to the south.

#### HORRIBLE TORTURE OF THREE DERVISHES.

Soon after the news that the Mahdi's people had arrived at Lado, Omar Saleh, commanding the army from Dongola, sent a long letter to Emin Pasha, commanding him, in the name of the Prophet, to surrender and accompany him to Khartoum, where honors of all kinds were awaiting him at the Mahdi's hands. This letter was brought to Duffili by three "peacock" dervishes. They were fine-looking men, of the Arab type, with an extremely dignified and self-reliant bearing. Their dress was somewhat peculiar: a long calico shirt, patched all over with different-colored cloth—red, blue, green and yellow—with the edges unhemmed and ragged; a loin-cloth of the same description was round their waists, and a huge many-colored turban covered their close-shaven heads; while for arms each carried a double-edged sword of the old Crusader type and three enormous spears, with heads like an elongated ace of spades, with immensely long bamboo shafts. When these dervishes, messengers of the Mahdi's Lieutenant-General, arrived at Duffili, the garrison of that station had already revolted against the rule of Emin Pasha.

The rebel officers seized the letter, and after reading it, placed it in their divan. A large council was held, at which it was decided not to surrender, but to collect as many men from each station as could be conveniently spared, and dispatch a force to Rejaf to repel the invaders. Meanwhile the dervishes, after being closely questioned, were put in irons and thrown into prison. On hearing the news of the attack by the Mahdi's people, and the subsequent fall of Rejaf station, the rebel officers again sent for the dervishes, in the hope of getting some information from them concerning Omar Saleh's strength and position. Being unable to obtain any news from them, they resorted to the cruel torture of giving them plenty to eat, but absolutely nothing to drink. For two whole days the poor fellows bore it without murmuring, and the officers, getting impatient, determined to torture them by a method which is commonly used in the Soudan. They again brought the dervishes before them, fastened a piece of split bamboo round their heads, and had it twisted up so tightly by means of a tourniquet that the bamboo cut through the flesh to the very bone. With every nerve strained by the torture, and faint from loss of blood, not a groan escaped the lips of these brave men, so strongly were they upheld by their fanatical trust and faith in their Prophet. They could only say that God through His Prophet would avenge them. It was a disgusting sight to see the Egyptian officers and clerks delighting in the torture, and smiling and exulting when the pain became too intense for flesh and blood to bear, and the poor dervishes fell fainting to the ground. The Soudanese officers, with their low bestial faces, gazed at these sufferings with a sort of stolid indifference, but even that was better than the fiendish delight displayed by the cowardly Egyptians. The

black female slaves, who gathered round to see what was going on, were more soft-hearted than their masters, and sobbed audibly and wrung their hands, in very pity for the brave men who bore their sufferings with such indifference and courage. Surely their religion could not be a low one to support them under such fearful torture. No one deserving to be called a man could help a feeling of admiration and respect rising in his heart for these brave fanatics. It may be that some such feeling crossed the mind of Fadl el Mulla, the chief of the rebels, for he ordered the soldiers to unloose their bands and give them water, and they were carried back to the prison in a semi-unconscious state. In a couple of days they were able to move about again, though they were still heavily ironed. Though beaten down in body and mind, their bearing towards their captors was as dignified and self-reliant as ever, but their look of patient suffering was more pathetic than any words. For weeks they remained in prison, but no amount of suffering would induce them to betray their comrades and give information against them. At length, when the Mahdi's forces were before Duffili, the rebels decided to execute them. The soldiers had a superstition that bullets were powerless to kill them; they were therefore taken down to the river, and there beaten to death with clubs, and their bodies were thrown to the crocodiles. If ever men suffered martyrdom for their religion, it was those three brave dervishes whose fate is here described.

#### REBELLION OF EMIN'S SOLDIERS.

The scenes and incidents connected with the rebellion at Labore are graphically described by Mr. Jephson, to whose accounts I am indebted for the information here recorded. After leaving the northern stations of Kirri and Muggi, Emin Pasha and Mr. Jephson, on August 12, arrived at Labore. It had been Mr. Stanley's wish that Mr. Jephson should go round to all the stations in the province and read to the people at each station the letters which he had brought from his Highness the Khedive and Nubar Pasha in Egypt, and Mr. Stanley had also given Mr. Jephson a proclamation from himself to read to the soldiers. The chief of the station at Labore was one Surore Aga, a Soudanese slave who had risen to the rank of captain in the Egyptian army. He was a man on whom the Pasha had no reliance whatever, one of those ignorant, fanatical men who hated and distrusted any one who was not a Mohammedan. The event proved that the Pasha's want of trust in him was well founded.

On the afternoon of August 13, the soldiers, officers, clerks and officials of the station were drawn up ready to receive the Pasha and Mr. Jephson, and so hear the letters and proclamation which had been read at the other stations. It was noticeable that while Mr. Jephson was reading letters, and was afterwards speaking to the men, several of them were inattentive, and spoke in an undertone to one another; they appeared to be restless and incredulous. After the letters had been read, and while the Pasha was addressing a few words to them, a big burly Soudanese soldier, with a sort of bull-dog face, stepped from the ranks, and exclaimed in a loud tone, "All you are telling us is false: these

people have not come from Egypt; and those letters you have brought are forgeries. There is but one road to Egypt, and that is by Khartoum, and we only know that road; we will go by that road, or we will live and die in this country." He went on to say that the Pasha and Mr. Jephson had been spreading lies in the province, for had the letter which had just been read come from the Khedive, it would have given the soldiers a command to go to Egypt, instead of saying they might stay where they were if they liked.

The Pasha promptly seized the man by the collar, and tried to wrench his gun from his hands, at the same time calling to his three orderlies to arrest this man and put him in prison. Then arose a scene of confusion which baffles all description. The soldiers, with loud cries and execrations, surrounded the Pasha and Mr. Jephson, and, loading their rifles, pointed the weapons at them. The noise and shouting were tremendous; and for a few minutes there was no knowing how it might end. Some of the soldiers made a rush at the Pasha, hurled him on one side, and bore off their companion, with loud shouts of derision. The Pasha drew his sword to defend himself, but the officers dashed in between him and the soldiers, and struck up their rifles. At this moment a voice was heard crying out that the Pasha's and Mr. Jephson's orderlies were attempting to seize the ammunition in the storehouse. There was at once a general stampede to the powder-magazine, and the Pasha was left alone. Mr. Jephson followed the soldiers, who at first greeted him with howls and yells, but on his saying, "You see I am not afraid of you; I am alone, because I know you are soldiers, and not savages," they lowered their guns, and said, "No, we will not harm you." The officers had done what they could to calm them, but had been powerless to make any impression on the infuriated soldiers. If one of the guns which the soldiers were brandishing about, loaded and cocked, had gone off, a general massacre would have been the result, for when one shot was fired there would have been no stopping the tumult that would have followed.

The behavior of some of the Pasha's people during the first few risky minutes was peculiar. Rajab Effendi, the Pasha's secretary, hid behind a tree, where he was found afterwards in a state of collapse. Araf Effendi, a clerk, a queer-looking little Circassian, ran off screaming into Selim Bey's hut, where he hid himself under an angareb (bedstead), crying out that the Pasha and Mr. Jephson were murdered; while the black women of the household kept up a running chorus of screams. But Vita Hassan, the Pasha's apothecary, a Jew of Tunis, immediately on seeing what was happening, rushed off to the Pasha's house, and brought him his revolver. The Pasha's and Mr. Jephson's orderlies, and his boy Binza, also behaved with much courage, and were a great help in quieting down the people. It afterwards transpired that the soldier who started the mutiny was an orderly of Suree Aga, and had been instigated by his master to create this disturbance.

This was the beginning of the rebellion. A week later, on August 20, at



Pasha and Mr. Jephson, on their arrival from the northern stations, prisoners by order of Fadl el Mulla Aga, who had usurped authority there. They were accused of conspiring against the Khedive and his treating his officers with injustice; and they suffered an irksome confinement of three months.

#### A DANGEROUS SITUATION.

After arriving at Chor Ayu, on the day of their departure for Khartoum, the Pasha received a letter from Hawashi Effendi, the senior of all his chiefs at Duffili Station, saying that a rebellion had broken out in which he was made a prisoner in his own house.

He said that Fadl el Mulla Haga, chief of Fabbo Station, with two of his sixty soldiers, had arrived in Duffili. They had told the people that he was conspiring with Stanley to betray them, and that Fadl el Mulla had been asked by certain officers, Egyptian and Soudanese, to take the Government. He had removed the sentries from the storehouses, and had replaced them by sentries from his own soldiers, and had put Hawashi Effendi under arrest in his own house, with orders to the effect that no one to enter or leave the compound.

The Pasha and Mr. Jephson, ever ready to believe ill against the existing Government, were excited by the stories and rumors spread abroad by the Egyptian officials, had quietly given in, and Fadl el Mulla Aga had established himself as chief of the station, and from that time was practically the ruler of the province. He had then liberated all the prisoners in the station.

The Pasha and Mr. Jephson were now indeed in a trap. The rebels of Khartoum bore were to the north, the rebellion in Duffili to the south, to the Nile with its dangerous rapids, and a hostile population occurred to the west. The Pasha, however, had some hopes of putting down the rebellion in Duffili; so after considerable discussion, it was decided that the next day the Pasha, with Mr. Jephson and a few followers, should start for Duffili, which was some sixteen miles distant.

On August 20, the Mussulman feast of Ed-el-Kebir; a bad time to break out, as it was a four days' holiday throughout the country. A great deal of drinking was going on, which would naturally make the people more excitable, and ready to do mischief. However, nothing was to be done but to stay at Chor Ayu; and the only chance that the Pasha had of putting down the rebellion was to proceed at once to the scene of the trouble, and endeavor to prevent its spreading to the southern stations, whose

garrisons were supposed to be loyal.

On the road couriers were met, with another letter from Hawashi Effendi, entreating the Pasha to come as quickly as possible, or it would be too late to do any good. The messengers were eagerly questioned as to what had taken place at Duffili, and they gave it as their opinion that things were in a very bad way. The Pasha was in great anxiety, depressed and saddened by the

thought that the people with whom he had been living so long, and for whom he had done so much, and was willing to do so much more, should have turned against him, especially when help and relief were at last near.

A SULLEN SILENCE.

About three o'clock, the Pasha's party arrived at a hill, a mile and a half from the station; here a halt was called, to enable the rear of the column to come up. The party consisted of Emin Pasha and Mounteney-Jephson; Vita Hassan, a Tunisian Jew, who had been an apothecary in the Egyptian service, and six years before came up to take charge of the hospital in Lado; the Pasha's two clerks, Rajab and Araf Effendi; and Sultan Aga, a Lieutenant from Wadelai Station, who was in charge of the native porters carrying the baggage.

They could see the station in the distance, with the Pasha's flag flying at the flagstaff, and large numbers of people grouped about the outside of the station and in the square in front of the postern-gate, which was at once a guard-room and the chief entrance to the station. As they neared the station people might be seen massing in great numbers, and forming up on each side of the path along which the Pasha and Mr. Jephson were to pass. No salutes were fired, as is the usual custom on the Governor's entering the station; nor were the troops drawn up in line to salute the Pasha as he passed. It had always been his custom, when the trumpeters had played the Khedivial Hymn and had given three cheers for the Khedive, to inspect his troops, and to speak a few kindly words to them before entering his house. On this occasion there was no sign or token of respect or greeting; and as the party entered the station an order was given by an Egyptian officer, and ten soldiers took their places in front of the Pasha and Mr. Jephson, while the same number followed in their rear, cutting them off from their own people.

The whole station was alive with people, who all—men, women and children—seemed to have turned out to see the entry, and to witness their Governor's humiliation. At a glance the Pasha saw it was hopeless to speak to his people, or to endeavor to bring them round to his side. Every one pressed forward to see the prisoners, and to point at them with scorn. The clerks and officers kept somewhat in the background, as if ashamed to meet the Pasha's eye; while a party of soldiers, more or less excited by drink, began singing and shouting out insulting words as he passed; they finally made a rush at the Pasha's immediate followers, whom they disarmed and marched off to prison.

Meanwhile, the twenty sentries, followed by the shouting rabble, conducted the Pasha and Mr. Jephson through the station, every road and path to which was blocked by the crowds that came to look at them as they passed. Their entry on this day was a great contrast to their entry into the same station little more than a month before. Then, the Pasha was received by his troops paying all honor to their Governor; and Mr. Jephson was received with accla-

mations, as a welcome guest, who had brought them good tidings from his great chief, Mr. Stanley, one known to all the world; and the people had thronged to offer their salutations and to thank him for coming to help them. Now, on every face was to be seen indifference or scorn and derision. The Egyptian incendiaries had done their work, and all were against the Pasha.

#### THE PASHA MADE A PRISONER.

A large concourse of people had gathered in the square, which forms the centre of the station, and on one side of which is the Pasha's compound. An officer came forward and told the Pasha that he would now be a prisoner in his own house, there to await his trial by a tribunal of officers, taken from all parts of the province. The crimes of which he was accused were those of treachery to the Khedive and his people, and of injustice to his officers. The Pasha and Mr. Jephson were then conducted into their compound amid the jeers and shouts of the people. Sentries were posted at the gate and all round the thick boma which surrounded their quarters, and they were allowed to hold no communication with the outside world.

The mutineers had sent for some of the rebel officers of Rejaf, Bedden, Makraka, Kiri, Muggi, Labore, and the southern stations, to meet at Duffili to consider the Pasha's case. On the arrival of all these officers, a large council was held in the divan, and various witnesses were called to give evidence against the Pasha. Mr. Jephson's three orderlies were called and questioned by the rebels, who threatened to put them in chains if they did not tell the truth. They gave their evidence in a straightforward manner, telling the rebels they had come out with Mr. Stanley's Expedition by the order of Effendina (the Khedive), and showed the officers their rifles, marked with the Crescent and Star, to prove that they were Egyptian soldiers. The officers asked, "Where, then, are your uniforms?" They answered, "They were worn out on the road." The officers then made them go through a portion of their drill, to see if they were really soldiers. Fortunately, Abdullah, the sergeant, knew his drill, and acquitted himself well. The orderlies were then dismissed, and an officer went over to Mr. Jephson's house to request his attendance before the council.

At this time the greatest excitement prevailed in the station to hear the result of the first sitting of the council, and an immense crowd was collected to see the witnesses as they were conducted across the square by the sentries. Fadl el Mulla Aga and Ali Aga Djabar, the latter Chief of Rejaf, who had also rebelled, were elected Presidents of the Council. This man had, some months before, tried to take the Pasha prisoner, and had for three years been in rebellion against his authority. He had established himself in Makraka, and lived like a bandit chief, making himself feared and dreaded by his deeds of violence.

On entering the divan, all the officers and clerks rose and greeted Mr. Jephson, and Fadl el Mulla introduced him to the different officers and clerks,

and to Sheik Mooragan, the chief priest, the biggest scoundrel in the province; he was eventually the first man who went over to the Mahdists. Mr. Jephson was then questioned closely about the expedition, its origin and aims, and was made to go over the whole story from beginning to end, but he was constantly interrupted by questions from different officers and by exclamations of incredulity. The story was disbelieved, for the officers all said that had the expedition come from Egypt the Khedive would have sent some Egyptian officers with it; moreover, their relatives in Egypt would certainly have written to them, and sent their letters by Mr. Stanley.

Mr. Jephson then produced the Khedive's letter, and handed it to Fadl el Mulla; and the clerk of the station read it aloud before all the officers. After various comments had been made on the letter, all of a doubting character, certain brevets bearing the Khedive's signature were sent for, and the signatures of the letter and brevets were examined by the clerks and compared one with the other. For a minute or two they seemed uncertain, and then the head clerk, rising from his mat, threw the letter at Mr. Jephson's feet, exclaiming: "The letter is a forgery, and you and your master are impostors!" A confusion of voices followed, everyone talking at the top of his voice; and a plan was then and there made, in Mr. Jephson's presence, to entrap Mr. Stanley on his return to the lake, and rob him of all his guns, ammunition and stores, and then to turn him adrift to perish. Mr. Jephson was then conducted back to his house, and so ended the first day's sitting of the council.

#### HARDSHIPS OF THEIR IMPRISONMENT.

The life of Emin Pasha and Mr. Jephson during their imprisonment was not a pleasant one. The rebel officers who began the revolution had behaved with some kind of decency at first, but as time went on quarrels among themselves began to be of everyday occurrence. The mornings were devoted to dealing with the affairs of the province, and the afternoons were given up to drunkenness and debauchery. All sorts of rumors concerning their fate from time to time reached the prisoners' ears, and it was finally settled that they were to be taken down in chains to Rejaf. Nobody known to be friendly to the Pasha was spared, but was either imprisoned or his house was looted.

The two European prisoners were shut up in a small compound, some ninety feet square, surrounded by a high thick boma or fence. There were six huts in the compound—one occupied by the Pasha, one by Mr. Jephson, one by Vita Hassan, two for kitchen and servants, and a storehouse. The prisoners had a few books, perhaps half a dozen, which were read and re-read half a dozen times over. From morning to night there was nothing to do except to talk over the different rumors and reports which occasionally reached their ears. Clerks sometimes were sent over by the rebel forces with different letters they wished the Pasha to sign, all relating to his deposition. Mr. Jephson was allowed to go about the station, but was always followed by two sentries, who closely watched his movements, and reported them to the rebels. It was a

pleasure he seldom availed himself of, as the people in the station were often exceedingly insulting. He was, however, obliged to go out to buy and arrange for getting food, as the rebels cut off nearly all their supplies, and only allowed them occasionally a little corn. Their servants were insulted and abused, and humiliations were heaped on the prisoners on every occasion.

The Pasha was very low in spirits, and depressed; it seemed almost impossible at times to rouse him from his melancholy. And so the weary days dragged on, until the Duffili people were electrified by the news that the Mahdi's troops were again upon them, this time burning to avenge their former defeat. The position of the prisoners seemed hopeless; accounts of the disasters experienced by the Pasha's people were constantly reported to them. They were unable to fight, and were not allowed to retire. The only thing left for them to do seemed to be to wait with what patience they might for the final blow. The rebel officers, in despair, at last appealed to the Pasha for advice! but in the struggle to retake Rejaf, Ali Aga Djabor and some of the Pasha's worst enemies were killed; and the remaining officers, being alarmed at what had happened, sent Emin and Mr. Jephson as prisoners to Wadelai. They had been just three months imprisoned at Duffili.

#### A JOYFUL LIBERATION.

In December, 1888, Emin Pasha and Mr. Jephson, having been released had left Wadelai, on the Nile, for Tunguru, one of the Egyptian stations on Lake Albert N'yanza, where Mr. Jephson could write to Mr. Stanley at Kavalli, explaining the situation of affairs, and on February 6th Mr. Jephson came to report in person, telling Mr. Stanley plainly that the only remaining obstacle was a sentimental feeling in Emin Pasha's own mind—a conscientious reluctance to leave the Soudanese people, so long entrusted to his care. This feeling, which was shared by his only European assistant, Captain Casati, is worthy of respect; and we know enough of Emin Pasha's character and conduct to ensure for him a degree of personal esteem and sympathy hardly less merited than that which public opinion has bestowed on General Gordon. Though not a soldier, he had bravely and skilfully defended the Egyptian stations against the attacks of the Mahdi's forces and their native allies, while he had, during ten lonely years, administered the domestic government of a large province with the best results, maintaining orderly rule, promoting useful cultivation, improving the condition of the country and the happiness of its natives; and he trusted in the loyalty of the Soudanese black troops, whose gratitude and devotion he had amply deserved. The traitors who conspired against him were some of the Egyptians and Copts employed in the Civil Service, and some of the Arab military officers—the same class of men who proved traitors to Gordon; and it is considered, by those who should be well acquainted with these transactions, that Emin Pasha ought to have dealt sternly and severely with those ringleaders of the revolt while he had the power; and that by an undue leniency, a passive toleration of their mutinous insolence, he brought him-

self into a helpless position. A man of single-minded integrity, of unassuming modesty and simplicity, of humane benevolence, a philanthropist, a philosopher, a student of the natural and moral sciences, Emin Pasha was not well qualified for a despotic commander who should put down rebellion with the hand of iron; nor had he been trained in the school of military or strictly governmental service.

#### A MAN OF NOBLE QUALITIES.

When Mr. Jephson accompanied Emin to Wadelai, in April, 1888, he found that "the 1st Battalion of troops, about 700 men, had long been in rebellion against the Pasha's authority, and had twice attempted to take him prisoner; the 2d Battalion, 650 rifles, though professedly loyal, was insubordinate, and almost unmanageable; the Pasha possessed only a semblance, a mere rag of authority; and if he required anything of importance to be done, he could no longer order, he was obliged to beg his officers to do it." The events in August and the following months, which have been fully narrated, were the natural consequence of this false position; but we know not whether to admire or to reprove the amazing tenderness of Emin Pasha, after the manner in which he was treated, for the rebellious soldiery who had been so far misled, and his forgiveness of the Arab and Egyptian traitors. He never thought of himself, but of saving those people and their families, whom he would not leave behind. Perhaps it was more of the innocent women and children that he thought; for most of the black soldiers had married and settled, with plots of land, houses and cattle, in the province under his gentle rule. We suppose that they, being heathen, were in danger of being carried off into slavery by the Mahdi's army; while the few Egyptians would have been put to death without mercy, and some of the Arab officers, having fought against the Mahdi, were perhaps in equal danger. Altogether, the number of people for whose fate Emin Pasha was so painfully anxious was estimated at ten thousand, mostly women and children. With rare generosity and humanity, whatever may be thought of the equity of his views, this remarkable man—Jew, Mohammedan, Christian or philosopher—declined to accept the immediate rescue of himself and his personal attendants unless he could take the people with him, and all their portable goods and chattels, under Mr. Stanley's escort to the east coast, a condition which Mr. Stanley finally consented to, and the removal was made, as was described in a previous chapter.

## ADDENDA—AN EPILOGUE

FROM AN EPIC TO A TRAGEDY.

**T**HE story of Stanley's journeys through Africa, and particularly that of his trip to relieve Emin Pasha, is a tragic one, and has compelled the startled interest and profound sympathy of the whole civilized world. The sequel, however, is more distressing, though less dramatic, and from an epic the theme must now change to an elegy if not a jeremiade.

The world delights in honoring a hero with adulation that approaches worship, and will pour out libations upon his grave, but the same ready spirit to glorify the great is no less prompt to pull down an idol when discovery is made that it does not honestly possess the virtue which it was once falsely supposed to embody. Mr. Stanley has not only led expeditions, but he has also been the historian of his deeds; the world has believed in him, and his reputation has grown amazingly upon each return he has made from the wilds of Africa, for every ear has been eagerly open to the astounding stories of perils, heroism and discovery which he had to relate. When he returned from his successful expedition in search of Livingstone the people of two continents bowed their heads in grateful admiration for his deeds; when he crossed the dark region of Africa applause burst afresh and praise for his heroism was on every lip. The tale of his hardships, though told by his own pen, was received with unquestioned faith, and all the earlier explorers of Africa's barbarous tropics were obscured by the splendor with which his own name shone. People forgot to ask if there were any means of confirming his statements, nor did they cease their applause long enough to even wonder why none of the white men who accompanied him returned to civilization; the spirit of vulgar adulation suppressed inquiry why one after another of the brave Englishmen who set out with him on his transcontinental journey fell by the wayside, not victims of attack by hostile natives, but by accidents, as described in an earlier part of this book.

ASTOUNDING revelations now being made, as to the real purposes of Mr. Stanley's last expedition, and the true story of the fatal misfortunes which nearly annihilated the Rear Column, have at last hushed the voice of doxology, and reason has now stepped to the front with a demand for investigation. If the hero of three expeditions passes the ordeal of honest inquiry, he will emerge with honors not only unsullied, but his character will appear the more glorious by a removal of the ugly doubts which now disfigure it.

If the meed of unqualified praise which I have given to Mr. Stanley in previous chapters shows disagreement with the imputations which I now make, I beg that the reader will not charge such disunion to any sudden enmity, but justly to revelations which have caused in me, as in nearly every one who has heretofore admired him, a revulsion of feeling which only his vindication after severe investigation can restore.

#### THE REAL PURPOSES OF THE EXPEDITION.

It is now openly charged, and with a basis of seemingly conclusive evidence, that the so-called Emin Pasha Relief Expedition, instead of being a philanthropic enterprise, was in reality a mercenary, if not a piratical undertaking. Let us hope, for the sake of England and America that this claim is untrue. But nothing at this time will justify suppression of the alleged facts upon which this terrible charge has been made. It is maintained that information reached the Khedive of Egypt, and was thence communicated to certain influential persons in England, that during the Pasha's service as governor of Equatorial Africa he had collected a vast quantity of ivory, the estimated value of which was \$4,000,000. Upon receipt of this report a scheme was conceived by certain Englishmen to acquire possession of this vast and precious store. In pursuance of this design, headed by members of the British East Africa Company, Mr. Stanley was engaged to command an expedition, which was to be despatched, however, for the ostensible purpose of relieving Emin, who was represented as being a prisoner in the hands of the false prophet of the Soudan, generally called the Mahdi. In fact, it is said, the expedition was expected to perform a double service, both of which were calculated to enrich those embarking in the undertaking, for besides acquiring the ivory which Emin had amassed by trade with the natives, it was the intention to open and secure additional territory in the richest region of Africa, and an extent that would give the British Company not only possession of the lake region, but a strip of marvelously rich land extending from the Atlantic on the west to Zanzibar on the east. The value of such a landed possession, with exclusive control of the Congo and lake navigation, can hardly be estimated, and shows the scheme for its acquisition to have been probably the most gigantic one ever projected.

It is further asserted by the English press, and corroborated by statements reported to have been made by Emin himself, that when Stanley, after a march of eighteen months from Yambuya, found the object of his search, he was greatly disconcerted and sorely disappointed when he learned that the immense quantity of ivory was at the bottom of Lake Victoria, having been thrown there by Emin to prevent its capture by the Mahdi. Having thus been defeated in his prime object, in order that the ostensible purpose of his expedition might be preserved, Stanley requested Emin to accompany him to Zanzibar, but to this Emin objected, stating in reply that he was in no need of relief; that there was no present danger from the Mahdi, who had retired to the north: that he



felt perfectly secure in his position among so many of his loyal subjects; and that, since great difficulty and hardships would attend a removal of his people from their homes, he preferred to remain with them and to share whatever fate might befall them. But Stanley insisted, until finding persuasive words unavailing he finally used coercive means, and by threats forced Emin to proceed with him (practically as a prisoner) to Zanzibar, that he might give evidence of having *rescued* the Pasha. Whether these charges be true or false, we have no present means of knowing; possibly the facts have been exaggerated, but it is true that Emin did not return to civilization, beyond Zanzibar; but on the other hand, as soon as he recovered from the injuries sustained by his fall, he immediately returned to his former station on Lake Victoria, where he is at this writing.

#### IS TRAVELLING IN AFRICA DANGEROUS?

It is human nature to like sensation. A ghost story is sure to have more readers than the relation of a scientific fact. Newspaper writers understand this so well that the press, like books of fiction, pander to this morbid desire, for it is an axiom that what is wanted enterprise will supply. Mr. Stanley was a correspondent before he became an explorer, and those who read his correspondence in the *New York Tribune*, sent while travelling with the Hancock expedition against the Indians, and the Peace Commission, in 1867, and who afterwards learned of the unreliability of his statements, will better know how to appreciate the stories which he has related about his experiences in Africa. But inaccuracy of statement may be pardoned for the sake of a good tale, especially when it occurs in a newspaper, which is rarely long preserved.

Mr. Stanley went to Africa for pleasure and profit, and he was not disappointed. Pleasure he found in the elegant ease and lordship which travel in that country affords, and profit came in immense measure from the books which he wrote. This leads us to inquire: "Is travel in Africa accompanied by great danger?" Readers of "*HEROES OF THE DARK CONTINENT*" are pretty well able to answer this question. It is curious that Stanley is about the only explorer of modern times that met with any great perils. Cameron, one of the earliest travellers in east Africa, found very few; Mungo Park was only harassed by Arabs; Burton, Speke, and Grant, who went to central Africa long before Stanley, met with little or no hostility from the natives. Sir Samuel Baker, who is nothing if not sensational, made two trips into the lake region, accompanied by his wife. Livingstone spent twenty-six years visiting all parts of southern and central Africa, and his wife, the daughter of Missionary Moffat, was in the country for thirty years, and both finally died there a natural death; Du Chaillu, Cumming, Anderson, Cavilham, Barth, Swinefurth, Wissmann, Long, and hundreds of others spent many years roaming over African tropics in pursuit of game, and in their books record no dangers save such as they experienced with wild animals. Instead of perils, a white

man of good intelligence has greater security in Africa than in Asia. The natives accept white men as their superiors, and minister to their comfort in every way; instead of painful journeys on foot, the white man is carried by slaves, and at every village he visits chiefs are sure to receive him cordially and to send him several of his choice wives to entertain him during his stay. Africa is, therefore, the paradise of the hunter, the adventurer, the ambitious, and the sensualist. No one can read the history of the most distinguished travellers in Africa without arriving at the irresistible conclusion that, aside from a few dangers from fevers in certain malarial districts, and very rare attacks of wild animals, a journey through central Africa is accompanied by no more perils than a trip over-land to California. No better proof of this fact can be afforded than is presented by the desire of every one who goes into Africa to make repeated visits to its wilds. A few have been killed there, just as a great many pioneers lost their lives on the frontier of our own country, but hostility of the Africans cannot be compared with the savage cruelty and murderous propensities of our western Indians. Indeed, Sir Samuel Baker asserts that a man may travel in perfect security through any part of Africa with no other weapon than a hand-organ.

#### MY TRIP THROUGH SIBERIA.

In 1882 I made an extensive journey through Siberia, going east as far as Irkoutsk, and north on the Yenesei river to Yeniseisk, visiting many mines, for the purpose of investigating the condition of exiles. On this trip I experienced no hardships beyond those caused by a journey of 5000 miles in a wagon, generally met with kindly treatment, enjoyed myself as never before or since shooting wolves on the borders of the tundra, and chasing Siberian wild sheep over the plains. I saw a few pitiable sights, but my individual experience, aside from this, was intensely delightful. The reader may imagine my surprise when I perused the articles contributed by Geo. Kennan to the *Century*, and read his harrowing details of suffering from unexampled hardships, though he went over the same route that I had travelled. But he made a more readable story than I did, because I confined myself to the drier details of fact, having no thought of dealing in fiction. By his tales of privations endured, he excited the sympathy of his readers and established himself as a hero—of the Munchausen tribe. Thousands of people read his papers in the *Century*, and other thousands paid their dollars to hear him lecture, so that he worked up a sensation and received an immense reward for his services in the very productive field of fiction.

Mr. Stanley may in this respect be compared with Kennan, since both exhibit identical instincts and a correct appreciation of public desires. But they are not wholly blameworthy, no more than the shop-keeper who sells gaudy wares which people eagerly buy because they are pretty and cheap; no more indeed than the novel-writer who tells a story to amuse a languid, milk-and-

water reader. True, the motive is different but the returns are the same, for there is profit in neither, though good entertainment.

It is iconoclasm to destroy cherished fancies, and Mr. Stanley shrewdly avoids such vandalism. He, like Du Chaillu, went out to discover a race of dwarfs, and of course he found them; they are doubtless as unreal as are many of the other monstrosities which have long been supposed to have their haunts in African wilds, but we dearly love to have our fancy tickled, and if to the dwarf tale he told he had added that he witnessed a battle between the pigmies and a flock of cranes, and after the contest was over his sight was gladdened by a fair view of a roc carrying away three elephants in its beak and talons, the measure of our gratitude would be overflowing. In this only are we disappointed.

#### DEATH FROM STARVATION.

Readers of "HEROES OF THE DARK CONTINENT" will remember, and those who hear Mr. Stanley lecture will listen to him tell, the sad story of the indescribable sufferings endured on his trip from Yambuya to Kavalli, and pity follows fast on a description of the horrors of Camp Starvation, where so many natives died, and from which Nelson was barely rescued. Since the revelations made concerning the misfortunes of the Rear Column, and the bandying of charges in violent cross-fire between Stanley and his officers, many doubts have been excited in me which had no place in my mind before. Like everybody else, I was carried away by enthusiasm and lent my voice to swell the cry of praise for the great African hero. But calm examination has succeeded, and I now discover many things which quite obscure the halo which I once saw resting like a crown on Stanley's head. The inquiry presents itself with remarkable persistence: How can the statement be explained, that Stanley lost two-thirds of his entire force by starvation, while among those who thus perished there was not a single one of his lieutenants? In performing his memorable march to Kavalli and back again to the Aruwimi, as already described, he was piloted by native guides who must have known the country, or if he had no guides then his trust was certainly largely imposed in his native carriers. The natives, even though they may not have been familiar with the territory traversed, were undoubtedly better prepared for the hardships encountered than was Stanley, or any of his white men. Africans are natural hunters, they live like our Indians, providing only for the day, and are accustomed to abstinence; in addition to this they are great hunters, and in the absence of game they know how to get sustenance out of berries, roots, and insects, so that a native can grow fat where a white man will starve.

These well known facts emphasize the importance of the question that has occurred to me with such force. Was it Stanley's brutalities that destroyed so many of his native carriers, or is the story of starvation as he relates it, with accompaniments most harrowing, only a fiction calculated to catch the sympathy of his readers and thus exaggerate his heroism? The most cruel

innuendoes have been thrown out against Stanley respecting the loss of the Englishmen who set out with him upon a passage of the Continent (in 1875), but these imputations are iniquitous, they are loathsome, and could only emanate from insane jealousy united to total depravity. I could no more believe that Mr. Stanley is brutish, a wanton or a poisoner, than I can believe the equally damnable story that Barttelot tortured his people to death and that Jameson purchased a little black girl and gave her over to be killed to gratify an inhuman desire to see her eaten. At this the soul of humanity revolts. The most depraved nature would stop short of this, and people who believe in God and in civilization will cry shame at such a libel, by whomsoever uttered. I likewise discredit, because of its apparent unreasonableness, the story of so many of Stanley's carriers and soldiers dying of starvation, because reason tells me that the lieutenants who accompanied him would have been the first to succumb to privations of any kind.

While the casual reader may, without reflection, think I do Mr. Stanley injustice, it is certainly not my purpose, for no one has been a more sincere admirer, as those who are familiar with the praise I have given him in "WORLD'S WONDERS," and in previous chapters of "HEROES OF THE DARK CONTINENT," know. The serious reflections cast upon him, and the doubts which reason at this late day has forced me to cast upon many of his statements, cause me a grief like that which Laban felt when he lost his idols. And my sincerest wishes now are that Mr. Stanley will be able, after a thorough investigation is made, to substantiate the charges which he has preferred against the officers of the Rear Column, and to relieve himself of the counter accusations brought against him. When this is done and verification is received of many astonishing statements which he has made in the face of improbability, I will lift my hat in grateful acknowledgment, and renew all the admiration which I formerly felt for him, as will tens of thousands of others whose faith is just now like my own.

The charges against Officers of the Rear Column, and the counter accusations of the survivors intimated in the foregoing, and out of which have grown revelations so discreditable to those concerned in the expedition, may be thus described:

#### STANLEY'S CHARGES AGAINST BARTTELOT.

Readers of "HEROES OF THE DARK CONTINENT" will recall the harsh language used by Mr. Stanley in his letter to Mr. M'Kinnon, chairman of the relief Committee, printed on pages 479-80, where he ascribes the sad condition of the Rear Column—as he found the remnants at Banalya—to the irresoluteness of Major Barttelot, and to the refusal of that officer to obey the instructions given him when he (Stanley) started from Yambuya for the Albert Lake. These reflections on the loyalty of the Commander of the Rear Column were cast as well upon Ward, Troup and Jameson, whom he indirectly charged with insubordination, if not cowardice and desertion. These insinuations Mr.

## ADDENDA—AN EPILOGUE

ved and more explicitly declared in his blot to a public denial of the charge and other's diary in refutation of the imputation support of his denials, Sir Walter preferred is supported by the testimony of Mr. T the advance for Albert Lake he took with expedition, leaving the Rear Column with and with such loads that it would have been greatly disposed the officers of the Colu

rt of the charges of indecision and disobeyed to make against his lieutenants left in irritated by the denials of the officers substantiate his accusations by preferring minations, such as strike not only at the e intended to impeach the honor of the d arraignment.

### STANLEY'S ARRAIGNMENT OF BARTTEL

uley's specific complaints are pointed charge gave their lives as sacrifices to the reality tion and whose lips may not now make accusations. Against Barttelot Mr. Stanley met, a negro-hater, an insanely vindictive nor-neaded scapegrace. He charges that Barttelot, as Column, spent his time grimacing at the native carriers forms of refined cruelty to the blacks in his services. are to the effect that Barttelot experimented with some power of administering a fatal dose to Tipo Tib's nephew, a young against whom he conceived a violent antipathy. On an in a moment of uncontrollable passion, flew at a native and fastened his teeth in her cheek. At other times, maddened officer went about the camp indiscriminately with a steel pointed staff, and that these cruel acts were countenance of provocation. But his depravity and fiendish o injuries thus committed, for on the day before his own o have kicked his little servant boy, named Soudi, in severity that the poor lad died two weeks later from his l however, it is charged that Barttelot ordered a mission who had acted as his interpreter in conferences with T hundred lashes, the penalty of death having been remitted at the entreaty of Bonny. The crime for which the la the theft of Barttelot's revolver which he sold for food. so severe that mortification of the flesh quickly followe

twenty-four hours. On the evening of the fatal kicking of Soudi, it is alleged that Barttelot prodded a Manyuema man at least thirty times, and ended his fiendish attack by beating the man's brains out, giving as his excuse that the victim had attempted his life a week before. This murder greatly inflamed the natives, who would have dealt summary justice to Barttelot had not Bonny knocked the murderer down, and thus given them to understand that he would be justly punished. On the following morning, July 19th, Barttelot was greatly incensed by a noise made by the natives in their ceremonies of greeting the rising sun. He sent two messengers to order a cessation of the pandemonium, but his commands being disobeyed, in great irritation he went himself, as Stanley maintains, armed with his steel pointed staff, and receiving only a grin of defiance from a woman who was beating a drum, he violently assaulted her. Her screams attracted the attention of her husband, a Manyuema named Sanga, who thrust his rifle through a crack in his hut near by, and shot Barttelot dead.

In all of these accusations Mr. Stanley is sustained by Mr. Bonny, with only slight and unimportant correction of details.

#### TESTIMONY CONCERNING THE KILLING AND EATING OF A GIRL.

The charges brought against Jameson are a hundred fold worse than those under which Major Barttelot has received condemnation. As Mr. Stanley could only learn of the cruelties of Barttelot through information supplied by those with the Rear Column, so is he confined to the same sources in the testimony which he has to offer for the revolting accusation he makes against Jameson. His charge is, that to gratify a fiendish curiosity Jameson purchased a slave girl and gave her over to the cannibals to be eaten, exacting no other reward than permission to witness the killing and the feasting and to make sketches of the sacrifice and bloody orgies.

Mr. Stanley introduces the testimony of his Zanzibari servant, Saleh Ben Osman, in proof of this terrible charge, whose statement is as follows:

Jameson was visiting Stanley Falls for the purpose of urging Tipu Tib to provide the carriers which he had promised to Stanley. Upon passing through the village of Wakumwa, Jameson asked the head man of the Zanzibaris, Hamadi Ben Dowd, whether it was really true that the natives were cannibals, and ate each other. "Of course it is perfectly true," replied the other. Thereupon Jameson gave the man Hamadi some cloth to buy a young slave. Presently he (Hamadi) came back, bringing with him a young girl whom he had bought. Jameson then ordered him to hand her over to the natives, and told them to kill, cook and eat her. The Zanzibaris flatly refused to do this, and expressed their disgust by going away, but Jameson himself took the girl by the wrist and handed her to her savage executioners. She was stabbed with a knife, and whilst the body was still quivering the natives cut off the flesh from the bones, and having toasted it on sticks over the fire, they ate it. During the whole of the ghastly performance Jameson sat down and made sketches of it. Jameson was accompanied by Maftwa, his boy, Hamadi Ben Dowd and seven Zanzibaris. Tipu Tib, who heard of this upon Jameson's arrival at the Falls, refused to see him for two days, being too disgusted to speak with him."

#### ASAAD FARRAN DESCRIBES THE CANNIBAL FEAST.

Osman evidently speaks as one retailing reports, but notwithstanding such inadmissible evidence, great stress is laid upon his declarations. But this hear-

COPY OF SKETCHES MADE BY JAMESON, ILLUSTRATING THE KILLING AND CUTTING UP OF A SLAVE GIRL.

(599)

say testimony is supplemented by the statement of another of Mr. Stanley's servants, an Assyrian named Asaad Ferran, who was with the Rear Column, acting as interpreter to Jameson when the latter went to Stanley Falls to solicit from Tipo Tib the services of several carriers that would enable the expedition to move from Yambuya towards the central lakes. The statement, which is sworn to, reads as follows :

Mr. Jameson went to the chief's house, Mohammed Ben Chamese, to visit him. There he saw Tipo Tib and Muni Somoai, chief and leader of the 400 men. Many others were present.

After talking on different matters through Selim Masondi, Tipo Tib's interpreter, Mr. Jameson said that he was very anxious to see a man killed and eaten by the cannibals, because, he said, "In England we hear much about cannibals who eat people, but being myself in the place, I would like to see it done."

That was interpreted by Selim Masondi to Tipo Tib and the other chiefs, whereupon, after consulting each other, they told Mr. Jameson if he wants to see a thing like this he should buy a slave, which he can present to the cannibals, and they will eat him. Mr. Jameson asked how much was the price of a slave, and was told half a piece of a handkerchief. This is six single pieces. He told them to pay the price, and went to the house where he lodged and brought half a piece of handkerchief. He came back with this and handed it to the man, who then went away. In a few minutes he came back, leading a girl about ten years old.

The girl was led by the order of Tipo Tib and other chiefs, at the request of Mr. Jameson, to the native huts to be eaten. Mr. Jameson, myself, Selim Masondi and Farhani, Mr. Jameson's servant, presented to him by Tipo Tib, and many others, followed. On reaching the native huts the girl, who was led by the man who had brought her, was presented to the cannibals.

The man told them: "This is a present from the white man. He wants to see how you do with her when you eat her."

The girl was taken and tied by the hands to a tree. About five natives were sharpening knives. Then a man came and stabbed her with a knife twice in the belly. The girl did not scream, but she knew what was going on. She was looking right and left, as if looking for help. When she was stabbed she fell down dead. The natives then came and began cutting her in pieces. One was cutting a leg, another an arm, another the head and breast, and another took the inner parts of the belly.

After the meat was divided, some took it to the river to wash it, and others went straight to their house. During the time Mr. Jameson had a book and pencil in his hand, making rough sketches of the scene. After this was over we also went back. I went to the chief's house. Mr. Jameson went to his house. On my return Mr. Jameson had the sketches already finished, painted with water colors. There are six small sketches, neatly done. The first, when the girl was led by the man; the second, when she was tied to the tree and stabbed in the belly, with the blood gushing out. Another, when she was cut in pieces. The fourth is the man carrying the leg in one hand and the knife in the other. The fifth is a man with a native axe and the head and breast. The last is a man with the inward parts of the belly. Mr. Jameson, when he finished these sketches, took them to the chief's house and showed them to the people there, with many other sketches.

#### A RETRACTION.

The gruesomeness of this statement, made by one who is confessedly too ignorant to write an intelligent report in any language, certainly bears signs of having been prepared by a practised hand. Its conclusiveness as competent evidence is, however, far from being complete, by reason of the fact that when an investigation of the horrible charge was begun by Belgian officers, this



same Asaad Farran voluntarily made the following retraction of his former statement, also under oath :

SEPTEMBER 25, 1888.

I, Asaad Farran, lately interpreter with the Emin Pasha Relief Expedition, declare most solemnly that the story of Mr. Jameson buying a girl is altogether misunderstood at Lutel. The story is entirely untrue. Such a charge against Mr. Jameson I declare to be unfounded. The six handkerchiefs given by Mr. Jameson were a present, and had no reference whatever to the occurrence with which, through the above misunderstanding, they have been erroneously connected.

ASAAD FARRAN.

Witness :—*P. L. McDermot,*  
*W. Burdett Coutts.*

Subsequently, through whose influence the reader must be left to decide, Asaad Farran subscribed to his first statement, which was signed at Cairo, March 4th, 1890, during Mr. Stanley's sojourn in that place.

It will be observed that there is a striking discrepancy between the statements of Osman and Farran, the former declaring that Tipo Tib was so incensed at Jameson's fiendishness that he refused to hold any intercourse with him, while the latter states that Tipo Tib actually ordered the girl to be prepared for the feast.

#### JAMESON'S REPLY TO THE CHARGES.

The report of Jameson's purchase of the slave girl, to be sacrificed to the ghoulish appetite of cannibals, was first circulated by Farran sometime in June, 1888, and coming to the ears of Jameson, that gentleman wrote a letter, from which a portion referring to the cannibal story is thus quoted :

STANLEY FALLS, August 3, 1888.

WILLIAM MACKINNON, ESQ.,

President of the Committee of the Emin Pasha Relief Expedition.

SIR :—As you will see by Maj. Barttelot's letter, Asaad Farran, the dismissed Arabic interpreter, has written the most false and cruel statements about me after leaving Yambuya camp. As an officer of this expedition, it is my bounden duty to you to clear my character from such statements. I will tell now the simple narrative of the whole matter, which, much as it shocked me at the time, I little dreamed could be turned to such use against me. My whole time since my arrival here has been taken up with the affairs of the expedition, and I have not had a moment to get the necessary papers signed by the witnesses of everything mentioned by Asaad Farran before a Belgian officer, as I mean to do, and forward them to you. The facts of the case are these :

On my return journey from Kasongo, the day after our arrival at Riba Riba, the chief sent for me. On arriving at his house I witnessed a very curious dance, performed by some Wacasu slaves. He informed me that these people, having had a number of deaths among them, had gone away into the bush for two months, where no one had seen them, and returned to-day, having finished their medicine meeting. Tipo Tib, who was at the house, said : "This dance is generally followed by a lot of people being eaten," and he told me a lot of cannibal stories. I laughed, saying : "Since I have been in the country I have heard many such stories, but I do not believe them."

Another Arab present, who had been very kind to me on my way to Kasongo, told me another horrible story, which I told him flatly I did not believe could happen in any country in the world. He laughingly said : "Give me a bit of cloth and see." I only thought this was another of their plans for getting something out of me, and having some cloth of my own, I sent

my boy for a small piece of six handkerchiefs, which I gave him. Then came the most horrible scene I ever witnessed in my life. Asaad Farran even here cannot help lying. The whole thing happened so quickly that had I wished I could not have sketched it. I had nothing to sketch with, they all being in my house. The girl never looked for help. She seemed to know what was her fate, and never stirred hand or foot or head, except when she had to move to the place of execution. How the girl was obtained I do not know, but I will send you all particulars, signed by the witnesses, as promised.

Jameson died two weeks after writing this letter, and was thus prevented from supplying the statements and witnesses which he promised to do, but in the absence of these, which may yet be obtained if the investigation is pushed, the following warm commendation of Jameson, written by Mr. Wilson, Stanley's secretary, and presumably at the latter's direction, if not dictation, was sent to the widow of Mr. Jameson, under date of February 28, 1890:

Mr. Stanley further begs me to inform you that, at a fitting time and in a proper place, he will endeavor to prove the chivalrous feelings which animated the young gentleman, the noble energy which characterized him, and his high merits as a man and gentleman; and that no one, not even his dearest relative, can regret the irreparable loss which not only the expedition sustained in him, but science and the whole world, more than himself.

Approved:

HENRY STANLEY.

Long before this letter was written, Mr. Stanley had the particulars of the cannibal story from Farran's own lips, and which he evidently discredited until brought before the bar of public opinion by counter charges preferred against him by officers of the Rear Column, and the friends and relatives of those who had died in the discharge of their duties at Yambuya camp.

#### THE POSITION OF JAMESON EXPLAINED.

A reasonable explanation of the cruel, shocking declarations made by Osman, Farran, Bonny and Stanley against Jameson, especially in the light of Jameson's own letter, is not difficult to conceive: The Manyema have always been regarded as cannibals, but being also the bravest and best soldiers of all the native tribes, the Arabs have employed them, as Tipo Tib does now; and though their customs may have been horrible, the Arabs have never sought to interfere with them, as it would have opposed their interest to do so.

On the occasion referred to, as Tipo Tib stated, having returned from a successful raid, or in celebration of some particular date or event, the Manyema were about to make their customary offering of human victims, which fact coming to the ears of Jameson, he sought the opportunity thus presented to witness acts of cannibalism. While feasting off the bodies of human victims is by no means a rare custom with the Manyema, they shrink from the practice before the eyes of those who they know regard such acts with horror; hence, to become a witness to their orgies, Jameson was required to pay what may be called an admission fee of six handkerchiefs, the greed of these cannibals being even greater for bright cloths than it is for human flesh. We may condemn the revolting desire thus manifested by Jameson; but while doing so, let us

not be unmindful of the fact that he was powerless to avert the sacrifice, and that, in seeking a view of the horrible execution and cannibalism, he was only betraying such a morbid desire as is found in ninety-nine of every one hundred persons, as is evidenced by the immense crowds attracted to the public hanging of a criminal. Another extenuating cause may be found in the fact that Mr. Jameson was a scientist, who accompanied the expedition solely for the advantages it offered him to make a study of the insect, animal, vegetable and native life to be found in Central Africa. He was a very rich man, highly esteemed by all the members of the several scientific bodies in England with which he was connected, and who would have profited by his experiences in Africa had he lived to publish them, as was his intention.

The fact that Jameson made sketches of the killing and eating of the slave girl is no evidence that he was instrumental in bringing about her death for that purpose, otherwise a like charge might be made against Ward, who made similar sketches, printed on page 441, representing acts which he himself witnessed. And if he preserved and sent to England the head of a negro who had been shot by an Arab, as Bonny relates, this fact can hardly be urged in proof of Jameson's barbarity, since the many dried human heads to be seen in nearly all the European museums are contributions made by ethnologists and other scientists, who must have been equally as barbarous, though they have not fallen under like condemnation.

#### A BELGIAN OFFICER CONTRADICTS STANLEY.

Mr. Stanley, when first referring to the killing of Barttelot, attributed the cause not only to cruelties which that impetuous officer practised towards the natives, but imputed the murder to immoralities on the part of Barttelot towards the negro women, thus intensifying the disgrace which he has sought to heap upon the character of the dead officer. In answer to this charge, Lieutenant Baert, a Belgian officer who was private secretary to Tipo Tib, and present at the court martial at Stanley Falls summoned to try Sanga, Barttelot's murderer, makes the following statement:

Stanley's statement that any English jury would have acquitted Sanga seems to be an impeachment of the court-martial's fairness. The real fact is that during the trial Sanga himself alleged no other motive for murdering Barttelot than that Barttelot, being disturbed during the night of July 17 by Manyuema musical revels—which he had strictly forbidden—issued from his tent, where Bonny also slept, and discovered that the noise was made by Sanga's wife. He raised a stick against her, whereupon Sanga, in unpremeditated anger, thrust a gun against Barttelot's breast and fired. He was so close that Barttelot's clothes were found burned on his body. This was the version of all the eye witnesses, corroborated by Sanga himself.

The savage needed no stronger motive than the aforesaid slight provocation to murder Barttelot, because he expected that, according to Manyuema customs, he would not be sentenced to more than a pecuniary penalty for taking another man's life. This impression was so much ingrained in Sanga's mind that when he learned he was really going to be shot he shrieked and swooned. This is a truthful account of the trial as recorded by my fellow judges, Captains Hancuse and Bodson, and myself and embodied in an official report, which can be found in the Congo State's archives.

Stanley's insinuations that Sanga was impelled by greater and fouler provocations may rest upon secret reports, which he probably believed true, but which are shown to be false by Sanga's own confession.

In addition to this statement of Lieutenant Baert, the log-book written by Bonny himself, detailing the circumstance of the murder, has been published and reads as follows :

**BONNY'S LOG-BOOK DESCRIBING THE MURDER OF BARTTELOT.**

July 17, 1888.—Maj. Barttelot arrived from Stanley Falls. Two men deserted on the road, taking his bag. He brings letter from Tipo Tib to Minivi, cautioning him against disobedience and reluctance about moving his people forward when ordered by the white man. He also had a letter from Abdullah ordering him to let the Major have 60 slaves, for whom he had brought chains from Stanley Falls. Major Barttelot told me that Tipo Tib had given him power of life and death over these people, and had written to that effect to Somai. Soon after this the Manyuema began firing guns, about 100 going off in five minutes. The Major and I tried our best to stop this waste of powder. Somai said he could not stop them. A Manyuema, who had discharged one of the guns, was caught by the Soudanese, and the Major flogged him very severely. No gun was fired after this during the night. [Signed] W. BONNY.

July 19.—The Major sent his boy Soudi to tell the Manyumas to stop beating their drums about 9 o'clock p. m. It stopped. Just before daybreak the Major again sent his boy Soudi to tell the Manyumas to stop beating drums and singing. The boy went. When he told them the message loud murmurs were heard and there followed two shots.

"I will stop this, and I'll shoot the first man I catch firing," said the Major.

I told him not to go out, but to leave them alone; it was their daily morning custom to sing. I said, "They will soon be quiet." He now called Amaris and three men to go and find the men who were firing. When he dressed he got his revolver and went out with it in his hand. When he came to where the Soudanese were, they said to him: "We cannot find the man who fired." The Major then approached Somai's people, where a woman was beating a drum and singing. While in this attitude a shot was fired through a loop-hole in the house and the bullet passed through him, burying itself in a post supporting the house. He fell dead. The Soudanese who were with him at once began running away. I went out as soon as I heard the Major had been shot, but none of the Soudanese would follow me. I believe they were hiding in their houses because they had no guns to protect themselves.

When I got outside there was a stampede, a screaming, shouting, firing, yelling, something fearful. With the help of Somai and the Soudanese I got the Major's body brought to my hut. Then I proceeded to quiet the people. When I met Sardi, one of the head men of the Manyumas, leading his men to attack me, I asked him if he had come to fight. He said "no," and then I told him to go quietly to his house with his men. He did so. I offered a big reward for the man who shot the Major, and at once dispatched two messengers to Stanley Falls with a letter to Sir Walter Barttelot, reading:

"SIR—I regret to inform you of the death of your son, Major Barttelot, who was shot through the chest this morning by a Manyuema. The gun used was an old Tower 62, large bore. He was shot dead. I buried him just within the forest, sewing him in his blanket and placing green leaves at the bottom of his grave, covering his body with the same. I read the church services over his body and ordered a wooden cross to be put over his grave. I am, sir, your obedient servant,  
WILLIAM BONNY."

To Jameson I wrote:

"DEAR JAMESON—The Major was shot dead early this morning. Push on quickly. Have written S. Falls.  
Yours, "BONNY."

I had now housed 300 loads, buried the Major, quieted the people, opened communication with Stanley, written Sir Walter Barttelot and Jameson, all of which brought this trying day to a close.  
[Signed] "WM. BONNY."

July 20.—Discovered the man who shot the Major. He is named Sanga.

[Signed] "WM. BONNY."

August 10.—Still at Unaria. Released 13 slaves from chains to-day—six men, seven women—then handed them over to the Soudanese to cook for them. Raided Zanzibaris' houses, which resulted in my getting 10 pieces of cloth. Gave a Zanzibari 60 lashes for being in possession of four pieces of handkerchiefs.

"WILLIAM BONNY."

Aug. 17.—Stanley arrived about 11 o'clock in the morning in good health, but thin. He came by water in about 30 canoes, accompanied by 200 followers, some of whom were natives belonging to Emin Pasha. I briefly told Stanley the news, handed him 11 letters addressed to him, and four addressed to Emin Pasha.

"W. BONNY."

#### HERBERT WARD'S CHARGES AGAINST STANLEY.

Before this, the reader has no doubt formed his opinion as to the culpability of the officers of this unfortunate expedition, but before concluding I beg to submit the statement of Herbert Ward in answer to Stanley's charges, and to add that Mr. Ward is sustained by Mr. Troup, who as I write is replying to Stanley's imputations from the public platform in England:

I have always been loyal to Mr. Stanley. By loyalty I mean that where praise was possible it has been given; where censure might have been indulged in it was withheld. I had hoped to maintain this attitude towards the leader of the expedition, but recent events make it necessary for me to depart from this position and deal with matters frankly and fully. It is obvious that in anything I say there is no malice, no sudden expression of ill-feeling. The controversy regarding the rear guard has drifted altogether away from the main point at issue, the question of responsibility for the disasters of the rear guard. Personal matters have been thrust into prominence and side issues have been raised, so that the vital question is altogether obscured. Despite whether or not Jameson bought a slave girl, and a hundred other matters which have been introduced may be useful in assisting Stanley to form public opinion in his favor, the matter in regard to which the whole controversy has arisen is quite distinct, and must not be ignored.

Mr. Stanley's contention is that the rear guard was wrecked by the irresolution of its officers, and their disregard of written instructions. Stanley may or may not be a scrupulous man; he undoubtedly is a far-seeing one, and it is impossible for any one, calmly regarding this matter, to avoid coming to the conclusion that a man of Stanley's character must have had a purpose in making such a charge. It would appear as if he feared one day he might have to answer the charge that has since been made, that he himself was responsible for the disaster. Excepting for Stanley's personal apprehension, there was not any reason why the details of Yambuya camp should not have been left untold. The story of Barttelot's death was unknown to his relatives, his comrades and employers, until Stanley thrust it before the public. There was a generous conspiracy of silence, but Stanley's vanity was alarmed, and lest it should happen that some one should say: "No doubt he did a fine thing, but how about his rear guard?" he collected all the tittle-tattle of the tale-bearers, all the passing trifles of petty individual impatience, and thus equipped he attacked the characters of his subordinates.

#### STANLEY HIMSELF RESPONSIBLE.

Yet all this time he knew that he himself was in part responsible for the catastrophe of Yambuya. Stanley would have us believe that his statement of the natives was above suspicion. In every respect the keynote of the expedition was struck by Stanley, when, after disembarking, he started through the cataract region of the Lower Congo, and left it to officers then inexperienced in African travel, to drive the load-bearers along as best they could, when his peremptory orders could only be carried out by the exercise of great severity. Stanley now talks in a very exalted way of indifference of the officers of the rear guard, but as a matter of fact he himself left the dead and sick behind him from the first day's march. I, who came up a few days afterward, had to

bury some of the dead he had left in his track. Stanley says Barttelot and the rest of us are responsible for the disasters, but who appointed Barttelot to the command of the camp? It is now stated on all sides that Stanley was informed beforehand that Barttelot was a thoroughly unsuitable man for the work before him; yet he took him out, and actually, at the supreme crisis of the expedition, selected this man for a position of momentous responsibility. This is all the more surprising because of the fact that it was a matter of common notoriety that Stanley disliked Barttelot just as much as Barttelot disliked him.

What can be thought of Stanley under these circumstances when he turned his back upon Yambuya, assuring Barttelot he had made a wise choice in selecting him to guard the interests of the expedition during his absence? It was a wise choice in one sense, for Barttelot was a true British soldier, inasmuch as with splendid loyalty to the best traditions of his service, he held sacred every instruction of Stanley's to the last.

Nevertheless, Barttelot was only thirty years of age, hot tempered to a degree, and he frequently publicly confessed to abhorring everything in the shape of a black man. So careful was Barttelot to observe his orders, that in the face of starvation he refused to open the stores of food which Stanley warned him were essential to the expedition. With disease and death around him, he refused to open the cases which meant relief and life. Yet Stanley accuses this man of disloyalty.

#### BARTTELOT OBSERVED ORDERS.

Barttelot obeyed his orders to the letter, and would not give us the stores. He would not touch the medicines because he had been told by his superior officer they were essential to the advance column. There was no other reason for it but the man's stolid sense of discipline.

People will argue that we should have taken the law in our own hands under the circumstances. This, however, would have been mutiny. It assuredly would have led to general bloodshed, for it must be remembered that fifty of our Soudanese, who were the soldiers of the expedition, and were the only armed force in the camp, were under Barttelot's sole command. He had served in Egypt with them, and their feelings towards him were those of extreme loyalty.

If Stanley will come back to the original question which he started, to apportion the blame of the disasters of the rear guard as it should be apportioned, he must take at least a fair share of blame, if blame there be, by his example. On the march up he initiated his staff, in indifference to human suffering of his load-bearers, to a fatalistic acceptance of their lot as mere beasts of burden. By the appointment of Major Barttelot, under all existing circumstances, he deliberately risked disaster, to use no stronger word. By the vague instructions he left he placed Barttelot in a position of bewildering alternatives, and by the alleged agreement with Tipo Tib he put Barttelot more or less at the Arab's mercy.

Let Stanley give up publishing affidavits from negro valets regarding the merits of bad men. Let him answer for himself whether he should not bear some of the responsibility for the disasters of the rear guard. Whatever he may have said or may know in regard to the conduct of individual officers does not affect the main question of responsibility.

HERBERT WARD.

I consider this one of the most valuable books that has been published. The subject is one that interests every human being, and I am glad to find it so interestingly and entertainingly treated by a pen so able as Mr. Buell's. My book will be judiciously and wisely invested.—Hon. WM. E. GLADSTONE

# THE STORY OF MAN

## A HISTORY OF THE HUMAN RACE.

BEING A FULL ACCOUNT OF ALL THE RACES AND TRIBES OF MANKIND, ANCIENT AND MODERN, WITH DESCRIPTIONS OF THEIR MANNERS AND CUSTOMS, DOMESTIC LIFE, RELIGION AND CEREMONIES, AND MANY WILD ADVENTURES AMONG WILD PEOPLE, TRIBES AND BARBARIANS. A BOOK OF THRILLING FACTS, STARTLING REVELATIONS, AND ROMANTIC INCIDENTS IN ALL AGES OF THE WORLD.

BY J. W. BUELL.

The Famous Author of "The Beautiful Story," "The Living World," "Sea and Land," "The World's Wonders," &c.

This is truly a book of wonders, relating the most remarkable events that have occurred in the history of all races, from the earliest ages down to the present time. It tells how people lived thousands of years ago. It gives a history of the origin of races, and shows how they have developed on the earth. It tells of vast continents, thickly populated, which disappeared in a single night, leaving down their precious burdens of human beings. It tells how nations arose and flourished, and then relapsed into barbarism, and no longer filled a place in the world's history. It tells of the Cave Man, the Mysterious Mound Builders, the Cave, Lake and Cliff Dwellers, the nomadic people who live in trees and burrow in the ground. It tells about the Giants and describes the Fierce Races of Cannibals that inhabit various parts of the world. It tells of the wonderful and curious incidents common to men in all ages of the world, showing that the history of all races and peoples there has run a continuous thread of thought and feeling, a common nature that makes the whole world kin.

Illustrating and beautifying all these marvellous wonders and singular facts, there are over 600 splendid engravings and colored plates, giving a Pictorial History of the World and its people, such as was never seen in one volume before. These illustrations more than double the price of the book.

## THE RICH FEAST PROVIDED

This splendid volume contains over 700 elegant double size pages, or to over 1400 pages of the usual size, illustrated with over 600 engravings and colored plates representing nations and races of people, and many of the most wonderful and curious incidents in the history of mankind. It is printed from new plates, on very fine paper made specially for this book in the most beautiful styles. We make our own books, in our own manufactory, and use the proceeds to pay to outside manufacturers in perfecting the excellence and beauty of the bindings as our books are noted for their superior finish and cheapness.

We sell directly to the people, through our authorized agents, so that purchasers get the full men's profits to pay; and, as we manufacture in large quantities, at actual cost we sell to subscribers at Wholesale Prices. The prices for "The Story of Man" are:

- No. 1. CLOTH—Best Imp. Silk Cloth, Emblematic Designs, full side and back stamped in Gold.
- No. 2. HALF MOROCCO—Marbled edges, Gold side and back stamp, a Beautiful Edition.
- No. 3. FULL MOROCCO—Gold edges and sides, a Grand, Beautiful and Artistic Edition.

—This great and valuable book will never be for sale in the book stores, or purchased from the Agents.

# TALMAGE'S LIFE OF CHRIST, ENTITLED "FROM MANGER TO THRONE"

BY "THE WORLD'S PULPIT SOVEREIGN,"

**REV. T. DEWITT TALMAGE, D. D.**

EMBRACING A NEW LIFE OF JESUS THE CHRIST,

AND A HISTORY OF PALESTINE AND ITS PEOPLE, INCLUDING DR. TALMAGE'S ACCOUNT OF HIS JOURNEY TO, THROUGH, AND FROM THE CHRIST-LAND.

**I**LLUSTRATED with more than 400 superb engravings of the people, places and scenery of the Holy Land, by distinguished artists, and forming a beautiful and complete PICTURESQUE BIBLE LANDS.

Among the other illustrations are accurate copies of nearly two hundred of the FAMOUS PAINTINGS of the OLD MASTERS which have so long enriched the Galleries and Cathedrals of Europe, but were never before published in America. Also a GRAND PANORAMA OF THE CRUCIFIXION, in twelve colors, and ten feet in length, showing the city of Jerusalem, the surrounding country, and the people and their costumes as they were on the day of the world's greatest tragedy.

## AGENTS WANTED

in every town and township, to whom we give exclusive control and territory. Write for full particulars at once, or, to secure preference and guarantee of territory, better act now, before territory is taken up.

Rev. T. DeWitt Talmage.

## PUBLISHERS' ANNOUNCEMENT.

"FROM MANGER TO THRONE" will be published in one large quarto volume of over 600 pages, size  $8\frac{1}{2} \times 10\frac{3}{4}$  inches, equal to 1200 pages of the usual size.

## STYLES OF BINDING AND PRICES.

It would be impossible to sell this magnificent volume at the very low prices given below, except for the assurance of enormous sales. ORDERS FOR OVER 415,000 COPIES were placed with the publishers before the first form was printed, and it is probable from present indications that not less than ONE MILLION copies will be sold the first year. There has never been so great and universal a demand for any other book. This fact enables us to fix the prices so low as to bring them within the reach of every person, and thus insure the introduction of this splendid, beautiful and good book in every household.

|                                                                                                       |        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Style A—Fine Silk Cloth, full side and back stamped in gold and colors, . . . . .                     | \$3.75 |
| Style B—Half Morocco, combed edges, full gold sides and back stamps, . . . . .                        | 4.50   |
| Style C—Turkey Morocco, gold edges and sides, silk headbands, elegant presentation edition, . . . . . | 5.50   |
| Style D—Special Edition de Luxe, Levant Morocco Binding, extra superfine finish, . . . . .            | 10.00  |

Sold only by subscription. Agents wanted. Send for beautifully illustrated circular and full particulars about an agency.

**SEE TITLE PAGE FOR ADDRESS OF PUBLISHERS.**



